

IBM TS3000 and TS4500 System Console

*Maintenance Information*

*PN 2727230 EC M13056A 16 MAY 2014*



**Note**

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in "Safety and environmental notices" on page xi and "Notices" on page 225.

This 33rd edition applies to version 7.3 of the IBM TS3000 and TS4500 System Console and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

This edition replaces the 32nd edition.

© **Copyright IBM Corporation 2014.**

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

---

# Contents

<b>Figures</b> . . . . .	<b>v</b>
--------------------------	----------

<b>Tables</b> . . . . .	<b>ix</b>
-------------------------	-----------

<b>Safety and environmental notices</b> . . . .	<b>xi</b>
-------------------------------------------------	-----------

Safety notices . . . . .	xi
Environmental notices. . . . .	xii

<b>About this book</b> . . . . .	<b>xiii</b>
----------------------------------	-------------

Who should use this book . . . . .	xiii
Summary of changes . . . . .	xiii
Publications and related information. . . . .	xiii
Ordering IBM publications . . . . .	xv
Sending comments. . . . .	xvi

<b>Chapter 1. Maintenance Starting Point.</b> . .	<b>1</b>
---------------------------------------------------	----------

Quick Reference Table . . . . .	3
Console Configuration Utility Screen Menu Tree . . . . .	3

<b>Chapter 2. Installation.</b> . . . . .	<b>5</b>
-------------------------------------------	----------

Introduction . . . . .	5
Overview . . . . .	6
TSSC overview . . . . .	6
IMC overview . . . . .	6
Feature Codes . . . . .	7
Installing the TSSC . . . . .	14
Tape System Call Home Setup for TS7700	
Virtualization Engine . . . . .	19
Setting Up Autonomic Ownership Takeover	
Manager . . . . .	22
Testing Autonomic Ownership Takeover	
Connectivity To A Remote Cluster. . . . .	25
Tape System Call Home Setup for VTS, VTC, and	
Tape Controllers. . . . .	27
Tape System Setup for 3494 ATL (Library	
Manager) or 3953 Enterprise Library Controller . . . . .	32
Using 3494 ATL or 3953 Enterprise Library	
Controller Web Specialist to Change TSSC	
Settings. . . . .	35
Tape System Call Home Setup for 3584 Tape Library	40
Using CETool to configure for Call Home . . . . .	40
Using the TS4500 management GUI to configure	
for Call Home . . . . .	42
Configuration . . . . .	43
User Login . . . . .	43
Adding Attached System Information . . . . .	45
Adding a Complex System . . . . .	47
Adding a 3584 Model SC1 Complex System . . . . .	49
Installing the DS6000 Graphical User Interface. . . . .	58
Installing the Storage Manager Graphical User	
Interface . . . . .	59
Installing the ProtecTIER Manager Graphical	
User Interface . . . . .	62

Upgrading the ProtecTIER Manager Graphical	
User Interface . . . . .	64
Console Settings. . . . .	66
Roles Management . . . . .	76
Authentication Service Users/Groups. . . . .	77
Customizing Firewall Settings . . . . .	79
Configuring Call Home Settings Electronic	
Customer Care . . . . .	81
Initializing the TSSC Serial Port for connection to	
local devices . . . . .	88
Backing Up Configuration Data . . . . .	90
Scheduling Configuration Backups . . . . .	92
Restoring Configuration Data . . . . .	93
Setting the Console Date and Time . . . . .	95
Test RETAIN Connection - During Installation. . . . .	96
Test Electronic Customer Care (ECC)	
Connectivity . . . . .	98
Logging Out of the System Console . . . . .	99
Test Call Home for 3494 VTS, VTC, 3590 A60,	
3592 J70, and 3592 C06 . . . . .	99
Test Call Home Notification for 3494 ATL or	
3953 Enterprise Library Controller . . . . .	100
Setup for Remote Data Monitoring (VTS, VTC,	
A60, J70, C06) . . . . .	101
Setup for Remote Data Monitoring (3494 ATL or	
3953 Enterprise Library Controller) . . . . .	105

<b>Chapter 3. Procedures</b> . . . . .	<b>107</b>
----------------------------------------	------------

Service Tools . . . . .	107
Connect to Attached Tape System . . . . .	107
Telnet to Grid TSSC . . . . .	108
Tape System Service Information (VTS, VTC,	
A60, J70, C06) - [Code Level Below V5.3] . . . . .	109
Creating Attached Subsystems List . . . . .	112
Remote Code Broadcast By Using the Web	
Interface . . . . .	113
Tape Drive Service Information . . . . .	117
Tape Drive Code Broadcast From Web Interface	121
Remote Access Using NetTerm . . . . .	124
Call Home Queue Management . . . . .	128
Failed Queue Management . . . . .	131
Call Home Event Log . . . . .	134
Offloading User Files. . . . .	135
Starting and Stopping Automated Log Collector	137
Configuring Assist On-Site . . . . .	147
Offloading User Files to Call Home Database	
(For Remote Users) . . . . .	152
Console PE Package . . . . .	154
Retrieving Subsystem Logs. . . . .	155
Console Status . . . . .	159
RAS Menus . . . . .	162
Taking Console Screenshots . . . . .	165
System Console Code Upgrade . . . . .	165
System Console Code Load/Hard Drive Rebuild	166
Disk Rebuild and Restore Configuration . . . . .	167

System Console Code Update . . . . .	169
Updating TS7700 Virtualization Engine Microcode . . . . .	170
Updating TS7700 Cache Controller Microcode . . . . .	172
System Console Specialist . . . . .	174
Customer Access to System Console via Specialist . . . . .	174
Tape Drive Code Update via Specialist . . . . .	174
Launching Specialists. . . . .	177
Administer Users . . . . .	177
I Remote Customer Access to TSSC . . . . .	178
Error or Defer Matrix Updates. . . . .	178
Launching the DS6000 Graphical User Interface . . . . .	181
Launching the Storage Manager Graphical User Interface . . . . .	183
Launching the ProtecTIER Manager Graphical User Interface . . . . .	185
Accessing Subsystem Interfaces . . . . .	185
Managing the InfoCenter from Web Interface. . . . .	186
Importing InfoCenter From CD-ROM . . . . .	188
Launching InfoCenter . . . . .	188
Delete InfoCenter . . . . .	189
Resetting Modem . . . . .	189
Opening SSH Tunnel . . . . .	190
Sending User Feedback . . . . .	191
Adding PFE Execs from Web Interface . . . . .	191
Applying a PE Package Patch . . . . .	193
Applying a patch locally using a CD-ROM . . . . .	193
Applying a patch locally using a USB drive . . . . .	193
Applying a patch remotely . . . . .	194
Setting 3958 and 3592 SNMP Trap Forwarding . . . . .	194
Tape System Reporter . . . . .	195
Fix Acquisition . . . . .	195
VTD Downloads . . . . .	197
Installed VTD_EXECS . . . . .	197
Fix Acquisitions General Settings. . . . .	198
Fix Acquisition Report . . . . .	198
Mount/Unmount USB or CD-ROM . . . . .	199
Mount/Unmount USB or CD-ROM Remotely . . . . .	199
<b>Chapter 4. Repair/Troubleshooting . . . . .</b>	<b>201</b>
System Console Repair . . . . .	201

Troubleshooting the System Console. . . . .	202
---------------------------------------------	-----

## **Chapter 5. Parts Listings . . . . . 205**

Model M93p FRU List . . . . .	206
Model x3250 (M4) Type 2583 FRU List . . . . .	207
Model x3250 (M3) Type 4252 Model PCJ FRU List . . . . .	209
Model x3550 (M2) Type 7946 FRU List . . . . .	211
Model x3550 (type 7978) FRU List . . . . .	214
Model x3200 FRU List . . . . .	216
Model 306m FRU List . . . . .	218
Model 206m FRU List . . . . .	220

## **Accessibility . . . . . 223**

## **Notices . . . . . 225**

Trademarks . . . . .	226
Homologation statement . . . . .	227
Electronic emission notices . . . . .	227
Federal Communications Commission Statement . . . . .	227
Industry Canada Compliance Statement . . . . .	227
Australia and New Zealand Class A Statement . . . . .	228
European Union Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive . . . . .	228
Germany Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive . . . . .	228
People's Republic of China Class A Statement . . . . .	229
Taiwan Class A Statement . . . . .	229
Taiwan Contact Information . . . . .	229
Japan Voluntary Control Council for Interference Class A Statement . . . . .	230
Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association Statement . . . . .	230
Korean Communications Commission Class A Statement . . . . .	230
Russia Electromagnetic Interference Class A Statement . . . . .	230

## **Glossary . . . . . 233**

## **Index . . . . . 241**



# Figures

1. System Console Login screens. . . . .	2
2. TSSC Connection Diagram . . . . .	6
3. Network Connection Diagram – x3250 M4, Type 2583 (FC 2704, FC 2724). . . . .	7
4. Network Connection Diagram – x3250 M3, Type 4252 Model PCJ (FC 2722, FC 2732). . . . .	7
5. Network Connection Diagram – x3550 M2, Type 7946-PAR (FC 2722, FC 2732). . . . .	8
6. Network Connection Diagram – x3550 M2, Type 7946-PAR (FC 2722, FC 2732). . . . .	8
7. Network Connection Diagram – Type M93p tiny PC (TS4500 IMC). . . . .	9
8. Network Connection Diagram – 8836 (3953 Only) (FC 2718, FC 2719). . . . .	11
9. Network Connection Diagram – 8849 (FC 2719, FC 2721). . . . .	11
10. Network Connection Diagram – 7978 (FC 2719, FC 2721). . . . .	12
11. Network Connection Diagram – 8482, 8485 (FC 2719, FC 2720). . . . .	12
12. Network Connection Diagram – 4362 (FC 2719, FC 2720). . . . .	13
13. Cables plugged into the TSSC server . . . . .	18
14. Securing the USB modem to the frame. . . . .	18
15. Call Home / Remote Services Menu – Virtualization Engine Maintenance. . . . .	19
16. Subsystem Configuration Menus . . . . .	19
17. Call Home / Remote Services Menu – TCP/IP Configuration. . . . .	20
18. Set Service Console (TSSC) Customer Network Configuration Menu . . . . .	20
19. Change / Show Call Home / Remote Services Menu . . . . .	21
20. Call Home – Remote Data Monitoring Menu . . . . .	21
21. Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager (AOTM) Layout . . . . .	22
22. Setting Local Grid TSSC IP Address . . . . .	23
23. Selecting a Remote Cluster . . . . .	23
24. Configuring AOTM To Remote Cluster . . . . .	23
25. Warning Message for Processing AOTM To a Remote Cluster . . . . .	24
26. Processing AOTM To a Remote Cluster . . . . .	24
27. TSSC Firewall Settings . . . . .	25
28. Initiating Remote AOTM Cluster Test . . . . .	25
29. Testing AOTM Connectivity To Remote Cluster . . . . .	26
30. Verifying AOTM Change . . . . .	26
31. Processing AOTM Changes . . . . .	26
32. VTS,VTC, A60 , J70 & C06 Call Home / Remote Services Menu – Switch Call Home Selection . . . . .	27
33. Switch Call Home/Remote Services to/from System Console . . . . .	28
34. Change / Show Modem Configuration . . . . .	28
35. 3592-C07 - Subsystem Configuration Menus - Show / Change TSSC Connection . . . . .	29
36. Enable Call Home . . . . .	29
37. 3592-C07 Subsystem Configuration Menus -> Call Home / Remote Services Menu . . . . .	30
38. Models VTS, VTC, A60 , J70 & C06 - Switch Call Home / Remote Services to/from System Console – IP Address . . . . .	30
39. Call Home / Remote Services Menu . . . . .	31
40. Minimum Configuration and Startup Menu . . . . .	31
41. Plug Ethernet cable here (3494). . . . .	33
42. Command Process Window List – Example . . . . .	33
43. Manage System Console Dialog Box . . . . .	34
44. 3494 ATL or 3953 Specialist Settings . . . . .	35
45. 3494 ATL or 3953 Web Specialist - Welcome Page . . . . .	36
46. 3494 ATL Web Specialist - Test Interface . . . . .	37
47. 3494 ATL Web Specialist - Configure Settings . . . . .	37
48. 3494 ATL Web Specialist - Flush Queue . . . . .	38
49. 3494 ATL Web Specialist - Set Heartbeat . . . . .	39
50. 3494 ATL Web Specialist - Configure Interface Parameters. . . . .	40
51. Remote Serviceability via System Console . . . . .	41
52. TS4500 IMC Call Home configuration menu . . . . .	42
53. Console Login screen – example . . . . .	43
54. Authentication Menu – Sample . . . . .	44
55. System Console Main Menu . . . . .	45
56. Login Username and Password Screen . . . . .	46
57. Console Configuration Utility Screen . . . . .	46
58. Add System Screen . . . . .	47
59. Complex System Screen . . . . .	48
60. Add New Complex System Screen - 1. . . . .	48
61. Add New Complex System Screen - 2. . . . .	48
62. 3584 Complex Screen . . . . .	49
63. Add Complex Screen . . . . .	49
64. 3584 Complex Added . . . . .	50
65. Add Library . . . . .	50
66. Add Library to 3584 Complex . . . . .	51
67. Add Library . . . . .	51
68. Add Second Library in Shuttle Span . . . . .	52
69. Discover Connections . . . . .	52
70. Select System Where Car Located . . . . .	53
71. Select Station . . . . .	53
72. Execute Select Station . . . . .	53
73. Distribute Connections - Select Next Library in Shuttle String . . . . .	54
74. Select Station . . . . .	54
75. Select Station - Execute. . . . .	55
76. Web UI Shuttle View . . . . .	55
77. Web UI Shuttle View . . . . .	56
78. Connection Verify . . . . .	56
79. View/Set Connection Serial . . . . .	57
80. Connection Serial Number . . . . .	57
81. Install DS6000 GUI . . . . .	58
82. Welcome Screen . . . . .	59
83. Introduction Screen . . . . .	59
84. Copyright Statement . . . . .	60
85. License Agreement . . . . .	60
86. Overwrite Warning . . . . .	60

87.	Select Custom Installation Type . . . . .	60
88.	Support Monitor entry is <b>NOT</b> . . . . .	61
89.	Support Monitor entry not shown. . . . .	61
90.	Pre-Installation Summary . . . . .	62
91.	Installing the GUI . . . . .	62
92.	Install Complete . . . . .	62
93.	Introduction to ProtecTIER Manager InstallAnywhere Screen . . . . .	63
94.	Pre-Installation Summary Screen . . . . .	63
95.	Uninstall ProtecTIER Manager Window . . . . .	64
96.	Introduction Screen . . . . .	65
97.	Pre-Installation Summary Screen . . . . .	65
98.	Console Settings . . . . .	67
99.	Policy Scope . . . . .	70
100.	Security Settings . . . . .	70
101.	Creating Storage Authentication Policy . . . . .	71
102.	Creating LDAP Policy . . . . .	72
103.	Policies Panel . . . . .	73
104.	Test Policy . . . . .	73
105.	SSL Certificates Page . . . . .	75
106.	Role Management . . . . .	76
107.	Customize Role . . . . .	77
108.	Authentication Service Users-Groups . . . . .	78
109.	Manage Authentication Service Users-Groups . . . . .	79
110.	Customize Firewall Settings . . . . .	80
111.	General Settings Screen (Call Home and Heartbeat) . . . . .	81
112.	Unlock Call Home . . . . .	82
113.	Site Location Settings Screen . . . . .	84
114.	Call Home Phone Settings Screen . . . . .	84
115.	Machine Settings Screen . . . . .	86
116.	Disposition Settings Screen . . . . .	86
117.	SNMP Settings screen . . . . .	87
118.	AOS Settings Screen . . . . .	88
119.	Serial Port Selection on TSSC Screen . . . . .	89
120.	Baud Rate Screen - From TSSC . . . . .	89
121.	Baud Rate Screen - From Remote Connection . . . . .	90
122.	Backup Configuration Data Screen . . . . .	91
123.	Offload Schedule Screen . . . . .	92
124.	Restore Configuration Data Screen . . . . .	94
125.	Restore Remote Host . . . . .	94
126.	Console Time and Date . . . . .	95
127.	Stop NTP Server Screen . . . . .	96
128.	Start NTP Server Screen . . . . .	96
129.	Test RETAIN Connection Request Screen - During Installation . . . . .	97
130.	Test RETAIN Connection Results Screen - During Installation . . . . .	97
131.	Test ECC Connectivity Screen . . . . .	98
132.	ECC Test in progress showing successful connections being made . . . . .	98
133.	Sample output showing ECC IP addresses and ports . . . . .	99
134.	Call Home / Remote Services Menu – Send Test Notification Menu. . . . .	99
135.	Send Test Notification Menu – Service Notification . . . . .	100
136.	Send Notification Test Result Menu – Waiting . . . . .	100
137.	Call Home Dialog Box . . . . .	101
138.	Subsystem Configuration Menu – Call Home / Remote Services Menu. . . . .	101
139.	Call Home / Remote Services Menu – Remote Data Monitoring. . . . .	102
140.	Remote Data Monitoring Menu – Change / Show Call Home Heartbeat Interval . . . . .	102
141.	Remote Data Monitoring Menu . . . . .	103
142.	Remote Data Monitoring Menu – Error Initiated Call Home Data Gathering Disabled . . . . .	103
143.	Remote Data Monitoring Menu – Error Initiated Call Home Data Gathering Results . . . . .	104
144.	Remote Data Monitoring Menu – Error Initiated Call Home Data Gathering Enabled . . . . .	104
145.	COMMAND STATUS Screen – Running . . . . .	105
146.	COMMAND STATUS Screen – OK . . . . .	105
147.	Connect to Attached Tape System – Selecting . . . . .	107
148.	Connect to Attached Tape System – Connection Successful . . . . .	107
149.	Telnet to Grid TSSC . . . . .	108
150.	Attached Systems List . . . . .	109
151.	Tape System Service Information – Main Screen . . . . .	110
152.	Tape System Service Information – Events . . . . .	111
153.	Tape System Service Information – Event Detail . . . . .	111
154.	Attached Subsystems List Screen . . . . .	112
155.	Health and Events Report Screen Example . . . . .	113
156.	Remote Code Broadcast Options . . . . .	114
157.	Choose Systems for Code Broadcast . . . . .	115
158.	Remote Code Broadcast Log File . . . . .	116
159.	Tape Drive Service Information – Main Screen . . . . .	117
160.	Tape Drive Service Information – Tape Drive Error Log Details Screen . . . . .	118
161.	Tape Drive Service Information – Tape Drive Status Screen. . . . .	119
162.	View Tape Drive Service Information – Code Level V3.1.0 or Above. . . . .	120
163.	File Viewer Showing a File Generated by Tape Drive Service Information – Code Level V3.1.0 or Above. . . . .	120
164.	Drive Code Broadcast Web Interface . . . . .	121
165.	Drive code listing . . . . .	122
166.	The broadcast screen will display all available code images and valid broadcast targets. . . . .	123
167.	Display showing tape drive information for a selected system . . . . .	124
168.	Enter Password Screen . . . . .	126
169.	Connect to System Console Modem Screen . . . . .	126
170.	Userid Screen . . . . .	127
171.	Enter Password Screen . . . . .	127
172.	Choose System Prompt . . . . .	128
173.	Logout. . . . .	128
174.	Call Home Queue Management - Main Screen . . . . .	129
175.	Call Home Queue Management – Call Home Queue Entry Details . . . . .	130
176.	Call Home Queue Management – Offload Queue Entry to CD . . . . .	131
177.	Call Home Queue Screen . . . . .	131
178.	Call Home Queue Management . . . . .	132
179.	Call Home Queue Management . . . . .	133
180.	Failed Queue Log File . . . . .	133
181.	Call Home Event Log. . . . .	134

182. Call Home Event Log entries showing the Detail link . . . . .	134	231. DVD Copy for Mksysb Broadcast . . . . .	171
183. Detailed Event Log Information . . . . .	135	232. Choose Systems for Code Broadcast . . . . .	172
184. Offload User Files Menu Example . . . . .	136	233. Select Save Location Screen . . . . .	173
185. Subsystem Log Retrieval. . . . .	137	234. TS7700 Cache Microcode Copy Complete Screen . . . . .	173
186. Select Logs . . . . .	137	235. VTS, VTC, or Tape Controller Error or Defer Matrix Update Menu . . . . .	179
187. Select Attached System . . . . .	138	236. Error or Defer Matrix Update Menu . . . . .	179
188. Successfully Started ALC. . . . .	139	237. Error or Defer Matrix Menu - Apply Update	180
189. Subsystem Log Retrieval. . . . .	139	238. Error or Defer Matrix Menu - Compatible Systems . . . . .	180
190. Select Logs . . . . .	140	239. Error or Defer Matrix Menu - Systems Selection Broadcast. . . . .	180
191. Select Attached System . . . . .	140	240. Error or Defer Matrix Menu - Available Updates . . . . .	181
192. Successfully Stopped ALC . . . . .	141	241. DS6000 GUI Login Username and Password Screen . . . . .	181
193. Start an ALC Process . . . . .	142	242. Reset DS6000 GUI Password Screen . . . . .	182
194. Start an ALC Process . . . . .	142	243. Storage Manager Welcome Screen. . . . .	182
195. Start an ALC Process . . . . .	143	244. Storage Complexes : Real-time Screen	183
196. Start an ALC Process . . . . .	143	245. Add Storage Complex Screen . . . . .	183
197. Start an ALC Process . . . . .	144	246. Storage Manager GUI Initial Screen . . . . .	184
198. Start an ALC Process . . . . .	144	247. Main Configuration Screen . . . . .	186
199. Start an ALC Process . . . . .	145	248. System Selection Screen . . . . .	186
200. Start an ALC Process . . . . .	145	249. Manage InfoCenter from Web Interface	187
201. Stop an ALC Process . . . . .	146	250. Different InfoCenter levels installed . . . . .	187
202. Stop an ALC Process . . . . .	146	251. Insert InfoCenter CD Screen . . . . .	188
203. Stop an ALC Process . . . . .	147	252. Launching InfoCenter Window . . . . .	189
204. AOS Manager Functions. . . . .	148	253. Modem Reset Settings . . . . .	190
205. AOS Manager Functions. . . . .	149	254. SSH Tunnel Settings . . . . .	191
206. Manage Port Forwarding Interface . . . . .	150	255. Adding PFE Exec from Web Interface	192
207. Proxy Example . . . . .	151	256. PFE Exec Patch . . . . .	192
208. Port Forwarding Target List. . . . .	152	257. Multiple patch options . . . . .	193
209. Offload Files to Call Home . . . . .	153	258. Enabling ProtecTIER SNMP Trap Forwarding	194
210. Data ID Sample. . . . .	153	259. Enabling Control Unit SNMP Trap Forwarding . . . . .	195
211. Create Console PE Package Menu. . . . .	155	260. Fix Acquisition Main Menu . . . . .	196
212. Create Console PE Package Menu. . . . .	156	261. Fix Acquisition Updates . . . . .	196
213. Subsystem Log Retrieval Menu . . . . .	156	262. Fix Acquisition Success . . . . .	197
214. Retrieve Log - 3957 Menu . . . . .	157	263. Fix Acquisition VTD Downloads . . . . .	197
215. Retrieve Log - 3592 Menu . . . . .	157	264. Installed VTD_EXECS. . . . .	198
216. Retrieve Log - Library Manager . . . . .	158	265. Fix Acquisition General Settings . . . . .	198
217. Retrieve Log - 3584 . . . . .	158	266. Fix Acquisition Report . . . . .	199
218. Retrieve Log - 3958 . . . . .	159	267. M93p front view . . . . .	206
219. Console Message File Screen . . . . .	160	268. M93p rear view. . . . .	206
220. Message File Screen . . . . .	160	269. x3250 M4, type 2583 FRUs . . . . .	208
221. Test RETAIN Connection Request Screen - As a Service Procedure . . . . .	161	270. x3250 M3, 4252 Model PCJ FRUs . . . . .	210
222. Test RETAIN Connection Results Screen - As a Service Procedure . . . . .	161	271. Model x3550 M2 type 7946 FRUs . . . . .	213
223. Console VPD Screen . . . . .	162	272. Model x3550 (type 7978) FRUs. . . . .	215
224. The top-level menu as displayed in a terminal window . . . . .	162	273. Model x3200 FRUs. . . . .	217
225. Pre-Installation Menu . . . . .	166	274. Model 306m FRUs . . . . .	219
226. Pre-Installation Menu . . . . .	166	275. Model 206m FRUs . . . . .	221
227. Insert Disc 2 screen . . . . .	167		
228. Prompt for TSSC Product Recovery CD	168		
229. Mksysb Broadcast Screen . . . . .	170		
230. Mksysb Broadcast Screen - DVD Copy OK	171		



---

## Tables

1. TS3000 and TS4500 system console related websites . . . . .	xv	13. "Offload User Files" Options . . . . .	136
2. Maintenance Starting Point - Quick Reference Table . . . . .	3	14. Assist On-Site Table . . . . .	147
3. Console Configuration Utility Screen Menu Items . . . . .	3	15. Console Status Tool Function . . . . .	160
4. TSSC Components . . . . .	6	16. System Console Code Upgrade Table . . . . .	169
5. Current TSSC and IMC feature codes . . . . .	7	17. Control Unit Error Codes . . . . .	175
6. Installation prerequisites . . . . .	14	18. Single Drive Error Codes . . . . .	176
7. Console Configuration Sheet – Sample . . . . .	15	19. TSSC IP Addresses. . . . .	185
8. Console Configuration Sheet – Actual. . . . .	16	20. Troubleshooting. . . . .	202
9. URL Table . . . . .	83	21. TS4500 IMC model M93p FRU list . . . . .	206
10. Color Indications for Health Check . . . . .	112	22. Model x3250 M4 FRU list . . . . .	207
11. Code Load Status Messages - From Web Interface . . . . .	116	23. Model x3250 M3 FRU list . . . . .	209
12. Call Home Record Types. . . . .	129	24. Model x3550 M2 FRU list . . . . .	211
		25. Model x3550 (type 7978) FRU list . . . . .	214
		26. Model x3200 FRU list . . . . .	216
		27. Model 306m FRU list . . . . .	218
		28. Model 206m FRU list . . . . .	220



---

## Safety and environmental notices

Review the safety notices, environmental notices, and electronic emission notices for the IBM® TS3000 and TS4500 system consoles before you install and use the products.

---

### Safety notices

Observe the safety notices when using this product. These safety notices contain danger and caution notices. These notices are sometimes accompanied by symbols that represent the severity of the safety condition.

Most danger or caution notices contain a reference number (Dxxx or Cxxx). Use the reference number to check the translation in the *IBM Systems Safety Notices, G229-9054* manual.

The sections that follow define each type of safety notice and give examples.

#### Danger notice




A danger notice calls attention to a situation that is potentially lethal or extremely hazardous to people. A lightning bolt symbol always accompanies a danger notice to represent a dangerous electrical condition. A sample danger notice follows:




**DANGER:** An electrical outlet that is not correctly wired could place hazardous voltage on metal parts of the system or the devices that attach to the system. It is the responsibility of the customer to ensure that the outlet is correctly wired and grounded to prevent an electrical shock. (D004)

#### Caution notice

A caution notice calls attention to a situation that is potentially hazardous to people because of some existing condition, or to a potentially dangerous situation that might develop because of some unsafe practice. A caution notice can be accompanied by one of several symbols:

If the symbol is...	It means...
	A generally hazardous condition not represented by other safety symbols.
	This product contains a Class II laser. Do not stare into the beam. (C029) Laser symbols are always accompanied by the classification of the laser as defined by the U. S. Department of Health and Human Services (for example, Class I, Class II, and so forth).
	A hazardous condition due to mechanical movement in or around the product.

If the symbol is...	It means...
	<p>This part or unit is heavy but has a weight smaller than 18 kg (39.7 lb). Use care when lifting, removing, or installing this part or unit. (C008)</p>

Sample caution notices follow:

**Caution**

The battery is a lithium ion battery. To avoid possible explosion, do not burn. Exchange only with the IBM-approved part. Recycle or discard the battery as instructed by local regulations. In the United States, IBM has a process for the collection of this battery. For information, call 1-800-426-4333. Have the IBM part number for the battery unit available when you call. (C007)

**Caution**

The system contains circuit cards, assemblies, or both that contain lead solder. To avoid the release of lead (Pb) into the environment, do not burn. Discard the circuit card as instructed by local regulations. (C014)

**Caution**

When removing the Modular Refrigeration Unit (MRU), immediately remove any oil residue from the MRU support shelf, floor, and any other area to prevent injuries because of slips or falls. Do not use refrigerant lines or connectors to lift, move, or remove the MRU. Use handholds as instructed by service procedures. (C016)

**Caution**

Do not connect an IBM control unit directly to a public optical network. The customer must use an additional connectivity device between an IBM control unit optical adapter (that is, Fibre, ESCON®, FICON®) and an external public network . Use a device such as a patch panel, a router, or a switch. You do not need an additional connectivity device for optical fibre connectivity that does not pass through a public network.

---

## Environmental notices

This publication contains all the required environmental notices for IBM Systems products in English and other languages.

The *IBM Systems Environmental Notices and User Guide* ([ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/systems/support/warranty/envnotices/environmental\\_notices\\_and\\_user\\_guide.pdf](ftp://public.dhe.ibm.com/systems/support/warranty/envnotices/environmental_notices_and_user_guide.pdf)), Z125-5823 document includes statements on limitations, product information, product recycling and disposal, battery information, flat panel display, refrigeration, and water-cooling systems, external power supplies, and safety data sheets.

To view a PDF file, you need Adobe Reader. You can download it at no charge from the Adobe web site ([get.adobe.com/reader/](http://get.adobe.com/reader/)).



---

## About this book

This document provides maintenance information for the TS3000 system console (TSSC) and the TS4500 integrated management console (IMC).

---

## Who should use this book

This publication is for IBM service personnel who intend to install, remove, diagnose, repair, or test the TS3000 or TS4500 system console. This publication is intended for use by IBM service personnel only.

---

## Summary of changes

Technical changes occurring in this edition are identified with a vertical bar ( | ) in the left margin of the page. This release supports version 7.3.

Changes include:

- Remote Customer Access, see “Remote Customer Access to TSSC” on page 178.
- RAS Menu tree added, see “RAS Menus” on page 162 for more information.
- Parts Listings added, see Chapter 5, “Parts Listings,” on page 205 for more information.
- Integrated management console in the TS4500 tape library, see “Introduction” on page 5 and Figure 7 on page 9 for more information.
- Miscellaneous editorial changes.

Changes in version 7.2:

- Updated menu items on the System Console menu, see Figure 55 on page 45 for more information.
- List of current feature codes, see “Feature Codes” on page 7 for more information.
- Procedures for applying a PE package patch, see “Applying a PE Package Patch” on page 193 for more information.

---

## Publications and related information

Product guides, other IBM publications, and websites that contain information that relates to the IBM TS3000 and TS4500 system console.

To ensure that you have the latest publications, visit the IBM Publications Center (<http://www.ibm.com/e-business/linkweb/publications/servlet/pbi.wss>).

## IBM Virtualization Engine TS7700 information

Additional information related to the IBM TS7700 is available in the following publications:

- All online product documentation is now available in IBM Knowledge Center (<http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter>).
- *IBM Virtualization Engine TS7720 Installation Roadmap*
- *IBM Virtualization Engine TS7740 Installation Roadmap*
- *Systems Safety Notices, G229-9054*

## IBM TS4500 information

Additional information related to the IBM TS4500 tape library is available in the following publications:

- All online product documentation is now available in IBM Knowledge Center (<http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter>).

## **IBM TS3500 information**

Additional information related to the IBM TS3500 Tape Library is available in the following publications:

- All online product documentation is now available in IBM Knowledge Center (<http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter>).
- *IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library with ALMS Introduction and Planning Guide*, GA32-0593
- *IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library with ALMS Operator Guide*, GA32-0594
- *IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library SCSI Reference*, GA32-0561
- *IBM System Storage TS3500 Tape Library (3584) Maintenance Information*

## **IBM 3494 Automated Tape Library information**

Additional information related to the IBM 3494 Automated Tape Library is available in the following publications:

- *IBM 3494 Tape Library Operator's Guide*, GA32-0449
- *IBM 3494 Tape Library Operator's Quick Reference*, GX35-5049
- *IBM 3494 Tape Library Operator's Introduction and Planning Guide*, GA32-0448
- *IBM 3494 Tape Library Maintenance Information*

## **IBM 3953 information**

Additional information related to the IBM 3953 is available in the following publications:

- *IBM System Storage 3953 Tape System Introduction and Planning Guide*, GA32-0557
- *IBM System Storage 3953 Library Manager L05 Operator Guide*, GA32-0558
- *IBM 3953 Installation Road Map*

## **IBM 3592-C07 Tape Controller**

Additional information related to the IBM 3592-C07 Tape Controller is available in the following publications:

- All online product documentation is now available in IBM Knowledge Center (<http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter>).
- *IBM TotalStorage 3592-C07 Installation Roadmap Guide*, GA32-0557

## **IBM 3592-C06 Tape Controller**

Additional information related to the IBM 3592-C06 Tape Controller is available in the following publications:

- *IBM System Storage TS1120 Tape Controller, 3592 C06 Maintenance Information, IBM 3592 Model C06 (MI)*
- *IBM System Storage 3592 Tape Drives and TS1120 Controller Operator Guide 3592 Models J1A, E05, E06, EU6, E07, J70 and C06 (Op Guide)*
- *IBM System Storage 3592 Tape Drives and TS1120 Controller Introduction and Planning Guide 3592 Models J1A, E05, E06, EU6, E07, J70 and C06 (IPG)*

## **IBM System Storage TS1120, TS1130, and TS1140 Tape Drives**

Additional information related to the IBM System Storage TS1120, TS1130, and TS1140 is available in the following publications:

- All online product documentation is now available in IBM Knowledge Center (<http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter>).
- *IBM System Storage 3592 Tape Drives and TS1120 Controller Introduction and Planning Guide 3592 Models J1A, E05, E06, EU6, E07, J70 and C06 (IPG)*

## IBM System p (AIX) information

See “Related websites” for access to the latest System p information and publications.

## IBM 7133 SSA Disk Subsystem information

Additional information related to the 7133 SSA Disk Subsystem and software is available in the following publications:

- *7133 SSA Disk Subsystem: Operator Guide, GA33-3259*
- *7133 SSA Disk Subsystem: Service Guide, SY33-0185*
- *7133 Models D40 and T40 Serial Disk Systems: Service Guide, GY33-0192*
- *7133 Models D40 and T40 Serial Disk Systems: D40 Installation Guide, GA33-3279*
- *7133 Models 010 and 020 SSA Disk Subsystem Installation Guide, GA33-3260*
- *Adapters, Devices, and Cable Information for Micro Channel Bus Systems, SA23-2764*
- *SSA Adapters: User's Guide and Maintenance Information, SA33-3272*

## Device Drivers information

Additional information related to device drivers is available in the following publication:

- *IBM Tape Device Drivers Installation and User's Guide, GC27-2130*

## Related websites

View these websites to get more information about the TS3000 and TS4500 system console.

*Table 1. TS3000 and TS4500 system console related websites*

Title	Description
IBM website ( <a href="http://www.ibm.com">ibm.com</a> )	Find more information about IBM products and services.
IBM Support Portal website ( <a href="http://www.ibm.com/storage/support">www.ibm.com/storage/support</a> )	Find support-related information such as downloads, documentation, troubleshooting, and service requests and PMRs.
IBM Directory of Worldwide Contacts website ( <a href="http://www.ibm.com/planetwide">www.ibm.com/planetwide</a> )	Find contact information for general inquiries, technical support, and hardware and software support by country.

## Ordering IBM publications

The IBM Publications Center is a worldwide central repository for IBM product publications and marketing material.

The IBM Publications Center website (<http://www.ibm.com/shop/publications/order/>) offers customized search functions to help you find the publications that you need. Some publications are available for you to view or download at no charge. You can also order publications. The IBM Publications Center website displays prices in your local currency.

---

## **Sending comments**

Your feedback is important in helping to provide the most accurate and highest quality information.

To submit any comments about this publication or any other IBM storage product documentation:

Send your comments by email to [starpubs@us.ibm.com](mailto:starpubs@us.ibm.com). Be sure to include the following information:

- Exact publication title and version
- Publication form number (for example, GA32-1234-00)
- Page, table, or illustration numbers that you are commenting on
- A detailed description of any information that should be changed

---

## Chapter 1. Maintenance Starting Point

Complete this task before starting any maintenance activity.

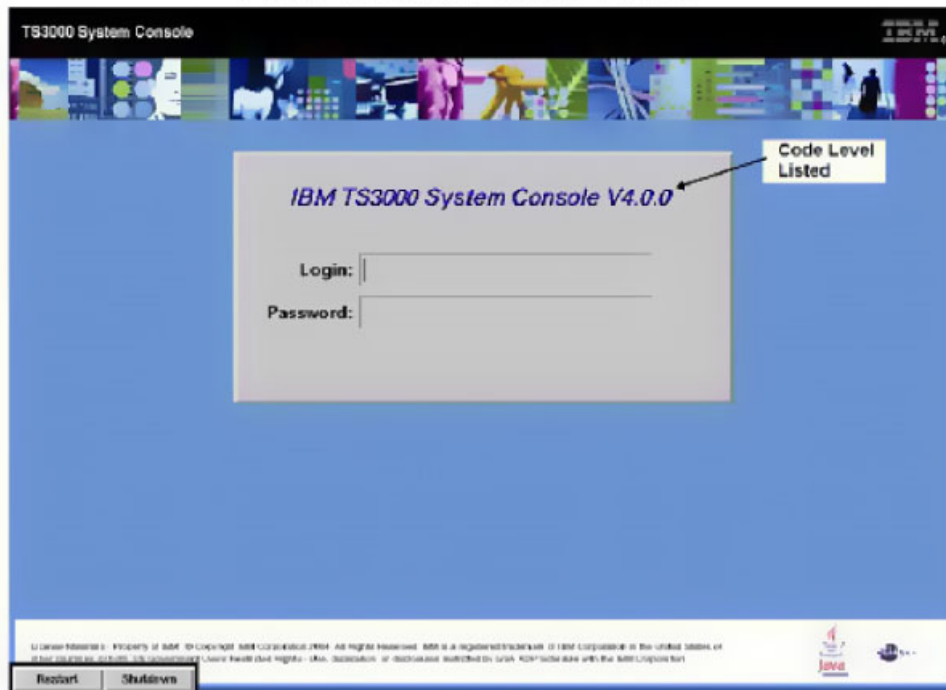
**Attention:** Some system console keyboards include an integral USB port. Do not use this USB port while using the system console.

This document provides maintenance information for the TS3000 system console (TSSC) and the TS4500 integrated management console (IMC). The TSSC is orderable as a rackmount feature of several products while the IMC comes standard with a TS4500 tape library (integrated under the tape library end cover). Hereafter, the term “system console” will be used generically to cover either of these two packaging options.

Before beginning any maintenance activity using the system console, you must determine the proper microcode (code) level of the system console.

1. Go to the System Console Login screen and determine the system console code level. See Figure 1 on page 2.
2. Refer to the system console documentation for your symptom or reason.

## Prior to code level 7.1.x



## Code level 7.1.x or higher

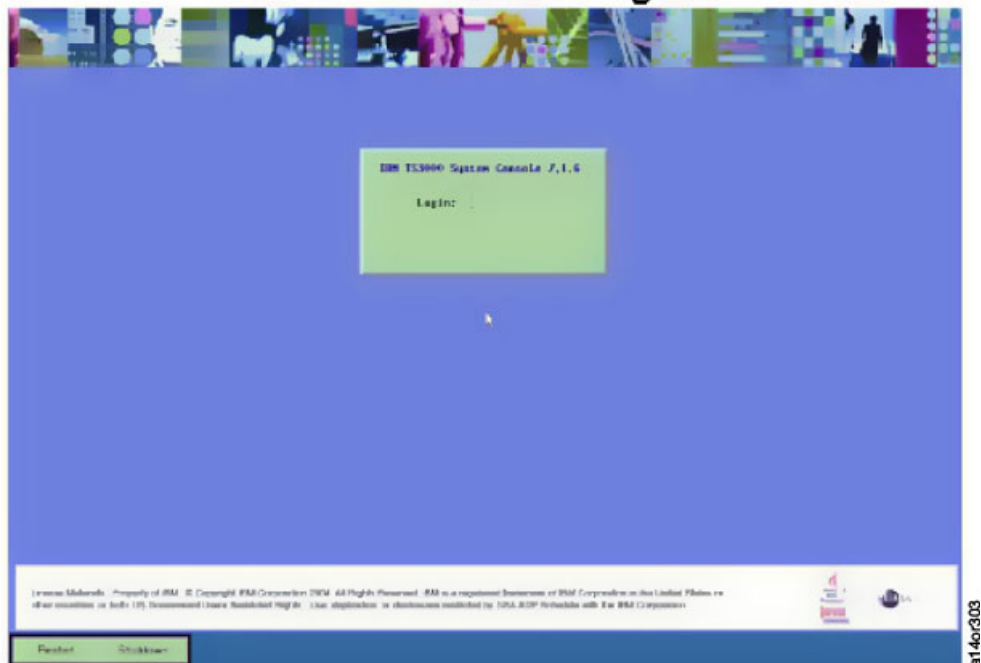


Figure 1. System Console Login screens

## Quick Reference Table

Table 2. Maintenance Starting Point - Quick Reference Table. For code level V3.0.0 and above.

If you are here to . . .	. . . then go to this section:
Install new TSSC	"Installing the TSSC" on page 14
Configure remote system	"Tape System Call Home Setup for VTS, VTC, and Tape Controllers" on page 27 "Tape System Setup for 3494 ATL (Library Manager) or 3953 Enterprise Library Controller" on page 32
Configure system console	"Configuration" on page 43
Authenticate login (password broadcast)	"Login Options" on page 43
Load code	"System Console Code Load/Hard Drive Rebuild" on page 166
Rebuild hard drive	"System Console Code Load/Hard Drive Rebuild" on page 166
Repair the system console	"System Console Repair" on page 201
Restore configuration data	"Restoring Configuration Data" on page 93
Setup for remote data monitoring	"Setup for Remote Data Monitoring (VTS, VTC, A60, J70, C06)" on page 101 -- OR -- "Setup for Remote Data Monitoring (3494 ATL or 3953 Enterprise Library Controller)" on page 105
Connect to an attached tape system	"Connect to Attached Tape System" on page 107
Access system remotely	"Remote Access Using NetTerm" on page 124
Broadcast control unit code	"Remote Code Broadcast By Using the Web Interface" on page 113 -- OR -- "Updating TS7700 Virtualization Engine Microcode" on page 170
Broadcast tape drive code	"Tape Drive Code Broadcast From Web Interface" on page 121
Set date and time	"Setting the Console Date and Time" on page 95
<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If you are here to isolate or repair a PC problem, refer to the Maintenance Information (MI) for your PC. A softcopy of the IBM MI for the PC can be found on the Documents CD which shipped with the system console.</li><li>• For the latest system console information, go to the PFE website at: <a href="http://snj1nt02.sanjose.ibm.com/tape/tapetec.nsf/pages/TSSCinfo">http://snj1nt02.sanjose.ibm.com/tape/tapetec.nsf/pages/TSSCinfo</a></li></ul>	

## Console Configuration Utility Screen Menu Tree

Table 3 provides a graphic view of the relationship of Console Configuration Utility screen menu items. These items appear on the screen shown in Figure 57 on page 46.

Table 3. Console Configuration Utility Screen Menu Items

Function Name	Screen Selection and Location
Attached Systems	Figure 58 on page 47
Backup/Restore <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Backup Console Configuration Data</li><li>• Restore Console Configuration Data</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Figure 122 on page 91</li><li>• Figure 124 on page 94</li></ul>
Call Home Queue	Figure 174 on page 129

Table 3. Console Configuration Utility Screen Menu Items (continued)

Function Name	Screen Selection and Location
Call Home Settings <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• General Settings</li> <li>• Location Settings</li> <li>• Phone Settings</li> <li>• Machine Settings</li> <li>• Disposition Settings</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Figure 111 on page 81</li> <li>• Figure 113 on page 84</li> <li>• Figure 114 on page 84</li> <li>• Figure 115 on page 86</li> <li>• Figure 116 on page 86</li> </ul>
Console Settings <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP Settings</li> <li>• Custom Firewall Settings</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Figure 98 on page 67</li> <li>• Figure 110 on page 80</li> </ul>
Console Status <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Console Message File</li> <li>• Test RETAIN Connection</li> <li>• Console VPD</li> <li>• Test ECC Connectivity</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Figure 219 on page 160</li> <li>• Figure 129 on page 97</li> <li>• Figure 223 on page 162</li> <li>• Figure 131 on page 98</li> </ul>
Console Time	Figure 126 on page 95
Fix Acquisition	"Fix Acquisition" on page 195
Modem Transmission	Query Modem Transmission (not shown)
Network Information	(Not shown)
Offload User Files	Figure 184 on page 136
PE Packages <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System Console PE Package</li> <li>• Subsystem Log Retrieval</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Figure 211 on page 155</li> <li>• Figure 213 on page 156</li> </ul>
System Interfaces	Figure 248 on page 186
System tools	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "Remote Code Broadcast By Using the Web Interface" on page 113</li> <li>• "Tape Drive Code Broadcast From Web Interface" on page 121</li> <li>• "Managing the InfoCenter from Web Interface" on page 186</li> <li>• "Adding PFE Execs from Web Interface" on page 191</li> </ul>



---

## Chapter 2. Installation

---

### Introduction

The system console can provide remote support for as many as 43 attached tape systems. Remote support capabilities of the system console, in conjunction with tape systems, include:

- Call Home problem reporting capability with staged, error-specific Data Gathering for support
- Call-in capability with authenticated access (via modem) including file transfer and multiple connections with attached systems
- Simultaneous call home and call-in capability using dual modems (not available with IBM 3953 models)
- Automatic wellness checking for attached systems
- Ability to defer certain types of call home activity to specific business hours
- Automatic archival of log files for most attached tape systems for subsequent support reference
- Automatic download and storage of new tape drive code images via modem connection with IBM Remote Technical Assistance Information Network (RETAIN)

The data that is gathered during the call home process is available for IBM support personnel on the RMSS Call Home database at:

<https://callhomedata.tucson.ibm.com>

Additionally, the system console provides a convenient focal point for local service activities within the data center. The system console is attached via 100 Mbps Ethernet to each tape system. Many tape system service functions can be performed at the console. The system console provides the following local service tool applications:

- Ability to connect to multiple tape systems and simultaneously perform multiple service tasks from the system console
- Graphical user interface for tape system and tape drive service diagnostic utilities
- Ability to broadcast control unit and tape drive code images to tape systems for subsequent activation from the system console
- Diagnostic tools for verifying communications with IBM RETAIN
- Graphical user interface for configuring, backing up, and restoring system console settings

The TSSC is available as feature code 2724 for use with the 3592-C07, 3952-F05, 3584 L23/L53, and 3958 AP1/DD5.

The system console in the TS4500 tape library is part of the integrated management console (IMC). Similar in function to the TSSC, the IMC comes preinstalled with the system console code. The system console code enables the IMC to provide service capabilities, such as broadband call home.

## Overview

The following sections provide an overview of the TSSC and IMC.

### TSSC overview

Use Figure 2 with Table 4 as a representation of a potential connection scheme for the TSSC.

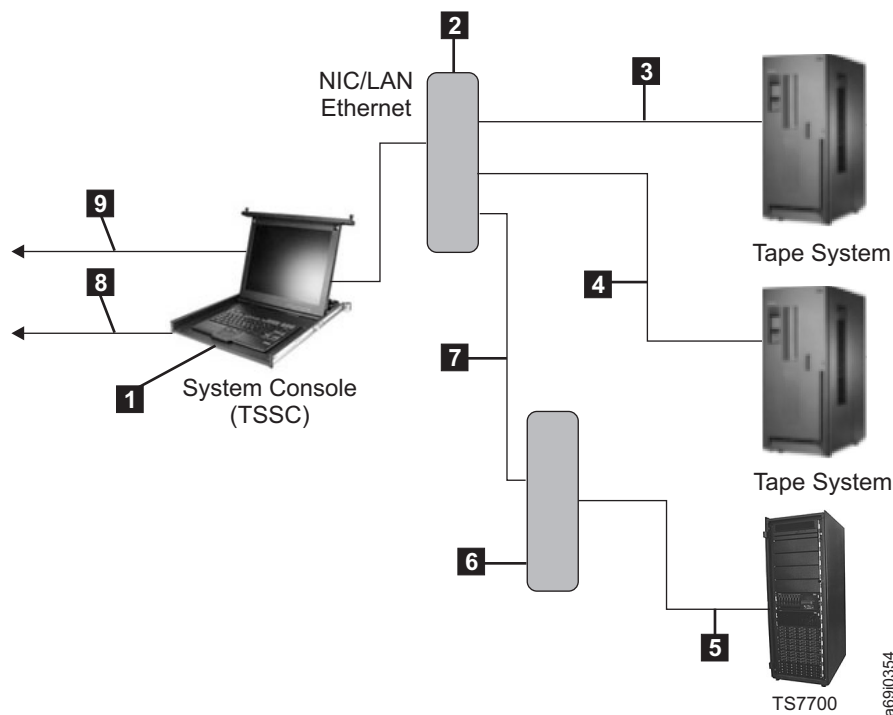


Figure 2. TSSC Connection Diagram. Use with Table 4

Table 4. TSSC Components. Use with Figure 2.

1	Serial connector	6	Ethernet expansion FC 2714
2	Ethernet switch FC 2704/2722/2732	7	Cable supplied with FC 2714
3	Cable supplied with FC 2704/2722/2732	8	Second modem FC 2716 (not on all RMSS products)
4	Cable supplied with FC 2715	9	Customer supplied Ethernet connection
5	Cable supplied with FC 2714		1Gb/s can use CAT 5e or CAT 6, 10Gb/s will need CAT 6.

**Note:** Outbound modems can be replaced with high-speed internet connections.

### IMC overview

The integrated management console (IMC) is a built-in platform for tools that are used to manage the TS4500 tape library.

The IMC, which includes an LCD screen, keyboard with touchpad, and a tiny PC, can be mounted on either end of the TS4500 tape library. A library controller card and power source is required within that end frame or within the adjacent frame.

The TS4500 management GUI runs on a web browser in kiosk mode on the IMC. Kiosk mode means that the menu bar, address bar, and stop and reload buttons of the browser are disabled. In addition, it is not possible to use bookmarks or multiple browser windows.

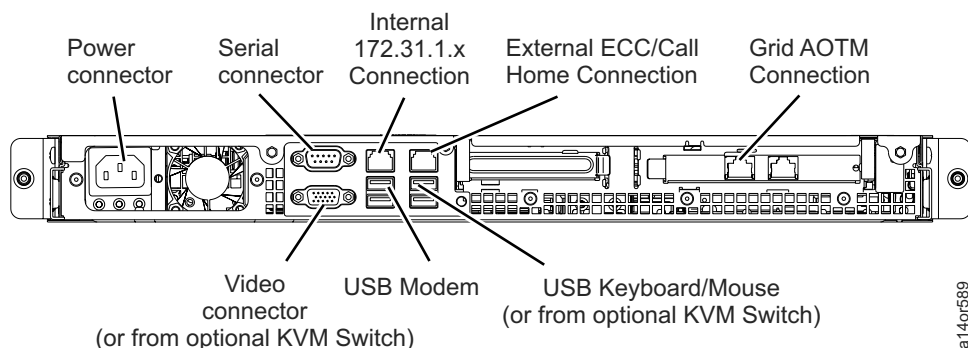
## Feature Codes

Table 5 shows the current TSSC and IMC feature codes for each supported product.

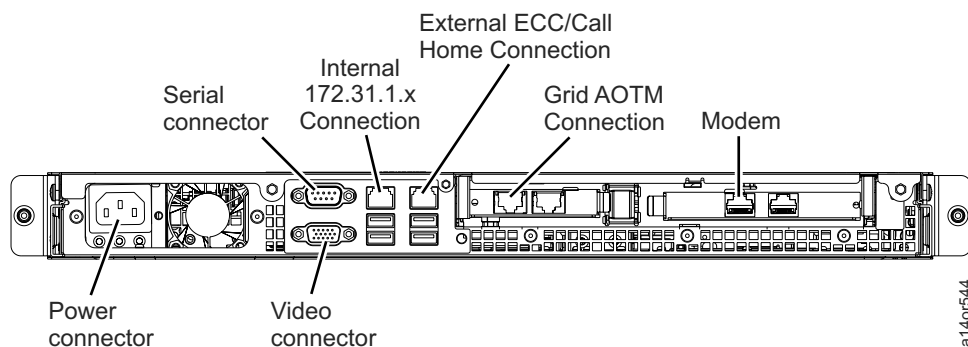
*Table 5. Current TSSC and IMC feature codes*

3958 DD5	3958 AP1	3592 C07	3952 F05	3584 Lxx	3584 Lx5
FC 2704 26-port switch	FC 2702 16-port switch	FC 2704 26-port switch	FC 2704 26-port switch	FC 2704 26-port switch	FC 2735 IMC non-broadband Call Home
FC 2724 TSSC M4 server	FC 2724 TSSC M4 server	FC 2724 TSSC M4 server	FC 2724 TSSC M4 server	FC 2724 TSSC M4 server	FC 9735 IMC broadband Call Home
FC 2734 External USB Modem	FC 2734 External USB Modem	FC 2734 External USB Modem	FC 2734 External USB Modem	FC 2734 External USB Modem	
FC 5512 Display/Keybd/Mouse	FC 5512 Display/Keybd/Mouse	FC 5512 Display/Keybd/Mouse	FC 5512 Display/Keybd/Mouse	FC 5512 Display/Keybd/Mouse	

For system console network connections, refer to the following figures. The server that you received might be one of the following types.



*Figure 3. Network Connection Diagram – x3250 M4, Type 2583 (FC 2704, FC 2724)*



*Figure 4. Network Connection Diagram – x3250 M3, Type 4252 Model PCJ (FC 2722, FC 2732)*

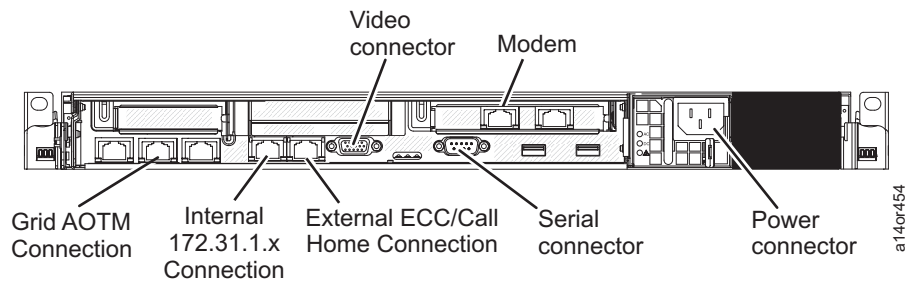


Figure 5. Network Connection Diagram – x3550 M2, Type 7946-PAR (FC 2722, FC 2732)

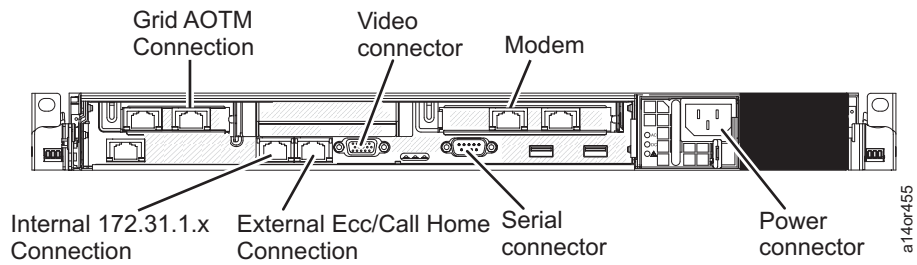


Figure 6. Network Connection Diagram – x3550 M2, Type 7946-PAR (FC 2722, FC 2732)

**Note:** The M93p tiny PC is part of the TS4500 integrated management console (IMC) and does not have a feature code.

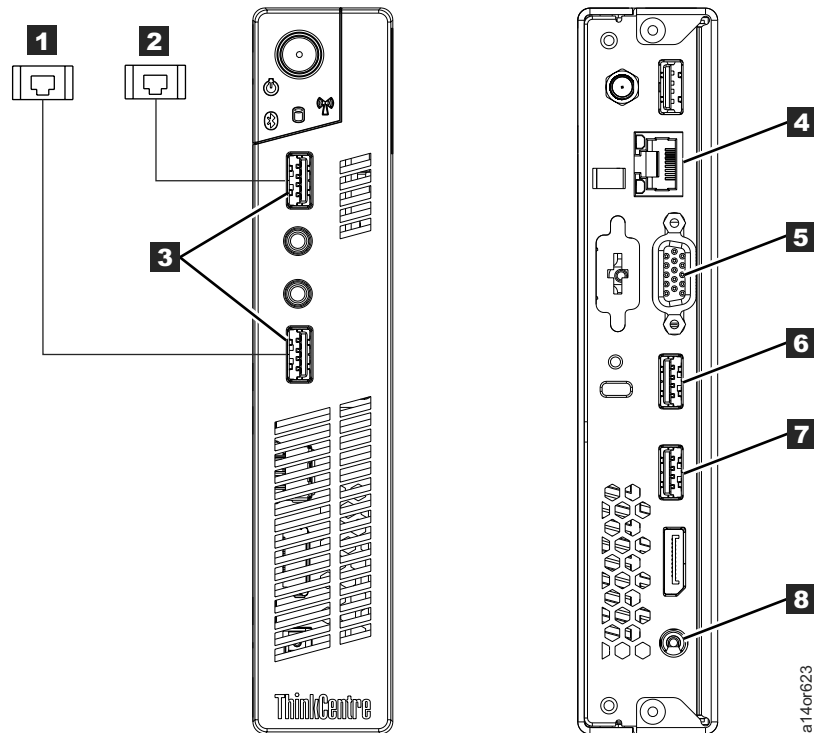


Figure 7. Network Connection Diagram – Type M93p tiny PC (TS4500 IMC)

- |                                                             |                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Ethernet for broadband call home/remote support    | <b>5</b> Video connector                           |
| <b>2</b> Ethernet for attached subsystem (direct or switch) | <b>6</b> USB Keyboard/mouse                        |
| <b>3</b> USB to Ethernet adapter                            | <b>7</b> Optional USB modem or temporary DVD drive |
| <b>4</b> Ethernet for local kiosk                           | <b>8</b> Power connector to power adapter          |

#### FC 2704 (26-port Ethernet switch/rackmount)

This feature provides a 26-port Ethernet switch and attachment cable for connection to a TS3000 system console (TSSC).

#### FC 2715 (Cable Attachment/Console Attachment)

This cable attachment (console attachment) feature drives a single 15.2 m (50 ft) Ethernet cable for downstream-attached tape systems.

For an IBM 7588, you will be shipped a 4-port card and an Ethernet cable.

#### FC 2724, TS3000 System Console Rackmount

This feature provides the enhanced rack-mountable TS3000 system console and an Ethernet cable for connection of one machine to an IBM supplied modem.

**Note:** The external Ethernet network cable is provided by the customer. 1Gb/s can use CAT 5e or CAT 6, 10Gb/s will need CAT 6.

#### FC 2734, TS3000 System Console USB modem

This feature provides a USB modem for use with FC 2724.

#### FC 2735, IMC non-broadband Call Home

This feature is required when the customer will not allow broadband Call Home to be configured for the library. FC 2735 provides a USB modem and optical drive for use with the integrated management console (IMC).

**FC 5512, KVM Display/Keyboard/Mouse**

This feature provides a KVM Display/Keyboard/Mouse and mounting hardware to be plant installed in the frame or delivered for installation in a rack.

**FC 9735, IMC broadband Call Home**

This feature indicates the customer will allow broadband Call Home, so no additional remote service tools are required.

**\*\* Feature Codes (Withdrawn) \*\*****FC 2714 (LAN Attachment Expansion / Console Expansion)**

The LAN Attachment Expansion (Console Expansion) feature is required when additional LAN ports are required. Uplink ports are used to connect the network switches.

**Note:** This feature also can be used on a 3953 Enterprise Library Controller, so you can use an existing FC 2720 as the system console.

**FC 2716 (Second Modem) (not available for 3953)**

The Second Modem feature enables simultaneous, inbound and outbound communication (when two analog lines are provided) with the system console. The feature includes an MT5600 BA external modem and a serial cable.

**Notes:**

- The Second Modem feature requires two analog telephone lines for simultaneous inbound and outbound communication. The system can be configured to operate with one modem.
- When two modems are installed, the modem on COM1 can be configured to be the inbound modem, and the modem on COM2 can be configured to be the outbound modem. If only one modem is installed, it must be installed on COM1. It will be used for inbound and outbound communication.

**FC 2717 (3592 A60 Attachment)**

This feature enables the system console to be attached to one or more A60s via a Net Interface Card added to the A60.

**Note:** The A60 must be at code level 1.16.x.xx or above in order to attach to the system console.

**FC 2718**

This feature has been replaced by FC 2721.

**FC 2719 (Console Upgrade)**

This feature provides a memory upgrade to 2.14 GB (2 GiB) of total RAM and a second Ethernet card for the system console to allow redundant connections into the service network, and to allow broadband call home capability. This feature only applies to system consoles shipped with FCs 2718, 2720, and 2721.

**Note:** This feature code is required for TS7700 attachment.

**FC 2720 (System Console)**

This feature includes the listed hardware that is required to support the system console (see FC 2721 for 3953 Enterprise Library Controller).

**Note:** An existing FC 2720 can be used with the 3953 Enterprise Library Controller, if you select FC 2714 for the 3953.

- IBM System Console
  - A PC, complete with an Ethernet port. One MT5600 BA external modem, serial cables, and a color monitor are packaged separately. The system console is preloaded with software, and it is tested prior to shipment.

- LAN Switch Attachment
  - This is a 16-port unit. One switch is included with FC 2720, and as many as two additional switches can be attached downstream, with cascading, using uplink ports. This allows a maximum of 43 connections to each system console.
- LAN Cabling
  - Two 15.2 m (50 ft) Ethernet cables are supplied with FC 2720. One cable is used to connect the system console controller to the internal port on the Ethernet switch. The second cable is used to connect the external port to the first downstream tape system. Additional cables are supplied with FC 2714 or FC 2715, depending on expansion port requirements.
- System Console Product Recovery CD-ROM
  - FC 2720 includes a Product Recovery CD-ROM that will serve as the basis for rebuilding the hard disk in the event of a failure. The code image CD is boot-able and is self-extracting. The CD-ROM includes:
    - Factory default hard drive image
    - System Console dynamic update capability
    - IBM PC Hardware Maintenance Information in PDF format, which may be viewed by placing the CD in a computer with Adobe Acrobat Reader (Version 4.0 or later)
  - IBM Enhanced Diagnostics CD-ROM

**FC 2721 (System Console - for 3953 Enterprise Library Controller only)**

This feature code is similar to feature code 2720, but is for the 3953 Enterprise Library Controller. Use the Ethernet port that is identified as 'Internal Ethernet Connector' in the following figures.

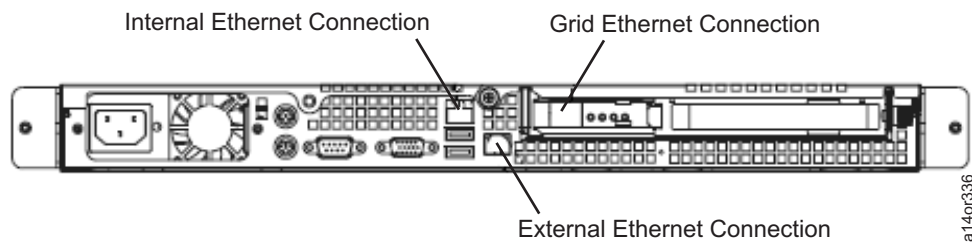


Figure 8. Network Connection Diagram – 8836 (3953 Only) (FC 2718, FC 2719)

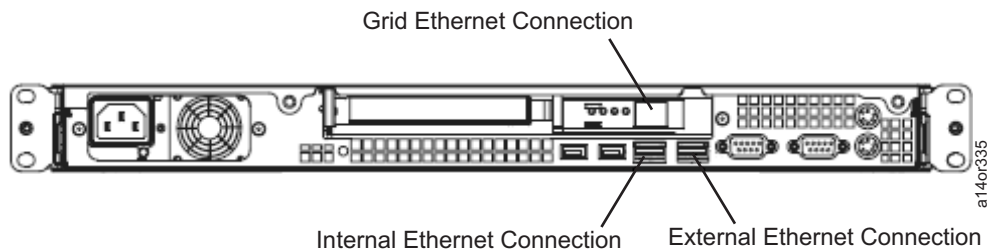


Figure 9. Network Connection Diagram – 8849 (FC 2719, FC 2721)

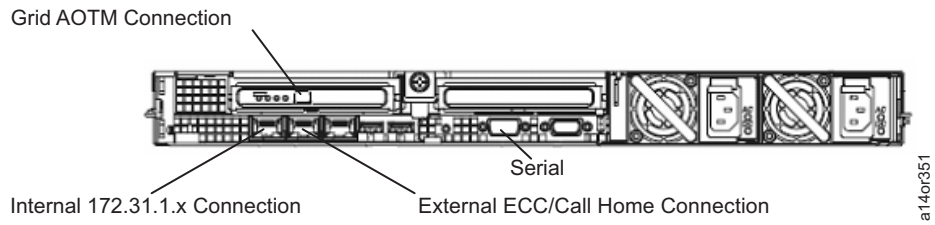


Figure 10. Network Connection Diagram – 7978 (FC 2719, FC 2721)

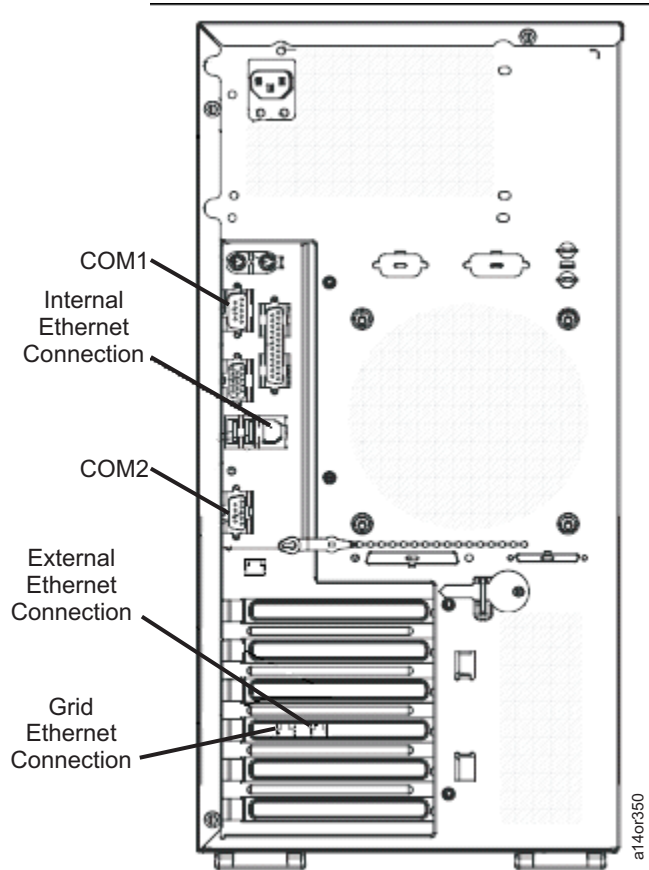


Figure 11. Network Connection Diagram – 8482, 8485 (FC 2719, FC 2720)



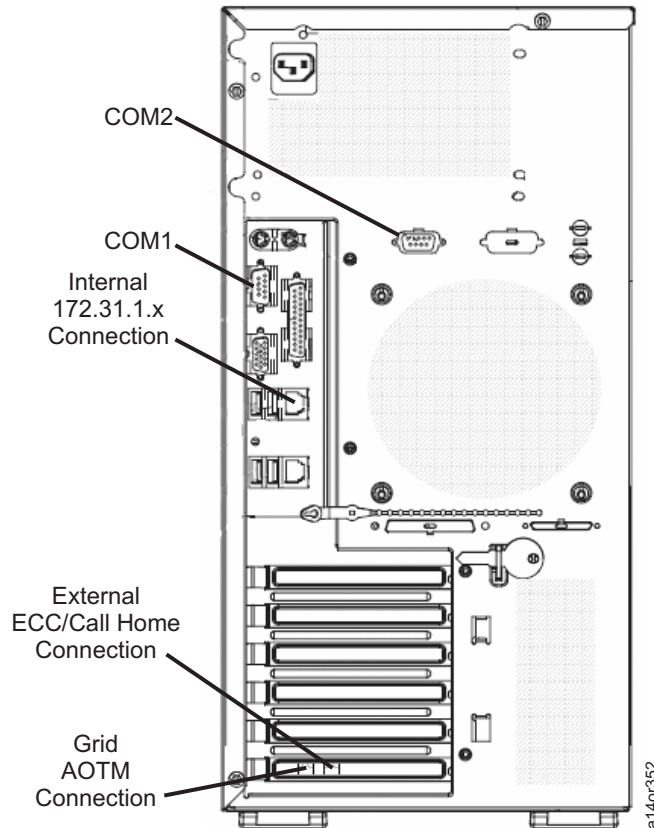


Figure 12. Network Connection Diagram – 4362 (FC 2719, FC 2720)

**FC 2722 (Rack Mount TS3000 System Console. Available via Factory or MES)**

This feature provides the enhanced rack-mountable TS3000 system console, an Ethernet switch, an Ethernet cable, KVM cable, and connectors for connection of one machine to an IBM supplied internal modem to enable remote enhanced service. This feature is an enhanced replacement of the IBM TS3000 System Console for Service (FC 2721). Includes console upgrade previously provided as FC 2719 (Memory upgrade to 4 GB total RAM and a second Ethernet card for the system console to allow redundant connections into the service network). This feature applies to 3958, 3593, and 3592 machine types.

**Note:** The external Ethernet network cable is provided by the customer. 1Gb/s can use CAT 5e or CAT 6, 10Gb/s will need CAT 6.

**FC 2732 (Rack Mount TS3000 System Console. Available via Factory or MES)**

This feature provides the enhanced rack-mountable TS3000 system console, an Ethernet switch, an Ethernet cable, KVM cables, console kit, and connectors for connection of one machine to an IBM supplied internal or USB modem to enable remote enhanced service. This feature is an enhanced replacement of the IBM TS3000 System Console for Service (FC 2730). It includes console upgrade previously provided as FC 2719 (Memory upgrade to 4 GB total RAM and a second Ethernet card for the Service Console to allow redundant connections into the service network). This feature applies to 3958, 3593, and 3592 machine types.

**Note:** The external Ethernet network cable is provided by the customer. 1Gb/s can use CAT 5e or CAT 6, 10Gb/s will need CAT 6.

**FC 2733 (TS3000 System Console Internal Modem)**

This feature provides an internal modem and customer phone line (wall) adapter based on country order.

---

## Installing the TSSC

**Attention:** These installation instructions are for installing a TSSC. The IMC comes preinstalled in a TS4500 tape library (integrated under the tape library end cover).

Ensure that the prerequisites in Table 6 have been met before you begin the installation.

### Notes:

- This connection is used for high speed call home functionality. This connection is not required if a modem is being used.
- See “Feature Codes” on page 7 for details about feature code content.

*Table 6. Installation prerequisites*

Prerequisites	Notes
Analog telephone lines - two preferred, one minimum (3953 allows only one)	Note the modem telephone numbers for the Console Configuration Sheet
One Ethernet connection	This connection is used for high-speed, call home functionality, and is not required if a modem exists
One floppy diskette, a USB storage device, or a CD (model dependent)	For activities such as, backing up configuration files, offloading user files (recommended, but not required)
Completed Console Configuration Sheet	See Table 8 on page 16
Accessible area for installation and placement	Adequate space and location for installation, access, and operation

Here is a **summary** of the steps you take in this section to install the TSSC.

### Notes:

- If you are performing an MES for FC 2724 and FC 2734, or if you are installing the FC 2724 and FC 2734 into a customer's rack, see the installation instructions provided with the TSSC server.
- If the TSSC server FC 2724 and the TSSC modem FC 2734 are provided with the 3952-F05 frame, the TSSC server is already installed in the 3952-F05 and the modem must be installed on the cable routing bracket as shown in Figure 14 on page 18.

**Important:** If you encounter a problem with the System Console DVD during installation, the internal red sata cable might not be seated correctly on the system board.

### TSSC Setup

1. Unpack and assemble the TSSC.
2. Install the Ethernet switch and connect to the TSSC.
3. Power on the TSSC.

### Tape System Setup and Configuration.

1. Complete network connection to tape system for TSSC attachment.
2. Perform software configuration on tape systems for TSSC attachment.

### TSSC Configuration

1. Login to the TSSC.
2. Add information for attached systems.
3. Configure call home settings.
4. Backup configuration settings (recommended, but not required).
5. Set console date and time.

6. Test network connection to tape systems.
7. Test modem connection to RETAIN.
8. Log out of the TSSC.

### Test Tape System Configuration

1. Perform test call home notification.

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the code level.

### Completing Installation

1. Proceed with the physical layout and installation of the TSSC in a central location at the customer's site. Power cords are supplied in the ship group with the feature to satisfy the various country power requirements. Ensure that power feeds are available for the following components (basic, wall-outlet power is sufficient). One of each of these items is provided:
  - TSSC
  - Monitor \*
  - Modem1 \*
  - Modem2
  - LAN Switch 1
  - LAN Switch 2
  - LAN Switch 3

**Note:** \* These items are integrated into the 3953 Enterprise Library Controller.

2. Before you configure any attached systems at the TSSC, ensure that you have:
  - Chosen subsystem IP addresses
  - Completed a Console Configuration Sheet (see Table 8 on page 16)

Keep the completed Console Configuration Sheet near the TSSC. Table 7 provides a sample of a completed Console Configuration Sheet.

*Table 7. Console Configuration Sheet – Sample*

IP Address	Attached System Type/Model	Serial No.	Host Name	Modem Tel. No.
172.31.1.1	TSSC	N/A	tssnet1	202-555-1111
172.31.1.2	3494 B20	13AAA10	VTS1	202-555-1111
172.31.1.3	3494 B20	13ABC11	VTS2	202-555-1112
172.31.1.45	3592 J70	13ABC12	3592CU40	202-555-1113
...	...	...	...	...

IP addresses in the form 172.31.1.x (where 'x' is 2 - 253) can be assigned to tape subsystems. The IP address choice must conform to the following guidelines:

- Assign IP addresses by using the subnet 172.31.1.x; otherwise TCP/IP communication with the console will not work.
- IP addresses must be unique and must not be duplicated between subsystems. Entry fields on subsystems might be pre-filled with suggested, default values. You must change these values when more than one library complex is connected to the System Console.
- When connecting multiple subsystems with default IP address settings to the TSSC network, connect and configure the systems one-at-a-time to prevent the possibility of duplicating IP addresses, which would create network errors. Refer to the maintenance information for each tape system for specific recommendations.

- The TSSC supports attachment of as many as 43 systems using as many as three Ethernet hubs or switches for attachment.

Use the Console Configuration Sheet in Table 8 to choose and pre-assign IP address for attached tape systems. Consider making a photocopy of this blank configuration sheet, then filling-in the fields.

*Table 8. Console Configuration Sheet – Actual.* Copy this table, and use that copy to fill in this information.

Table 8. Console Configuration Sheet – Actual (continued). Copy this table, and use that copy to fill in this information.

IP Address	Attached System Type/Model	Serial No.	Host Name	Modem Tel. No.
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				
172.31.1.____				

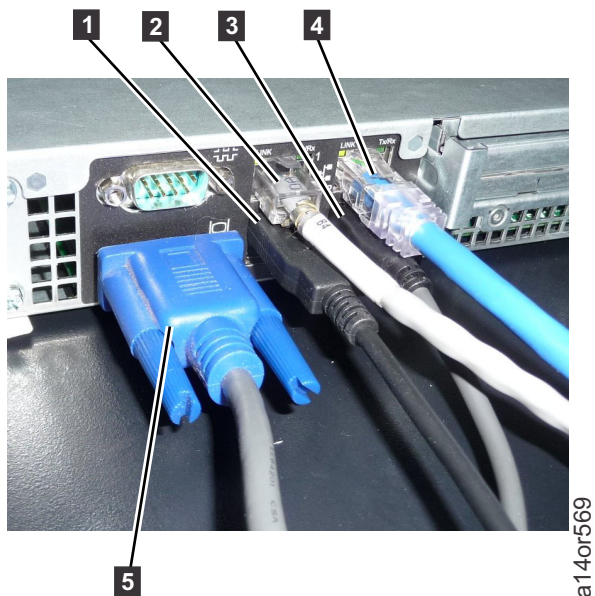
3. Unpack the TSSC.
4. Attach the keyboard, the mouse, and the main power cord.
5. Unpack the monitor, and attach the appropriate power cord. The monitor VGA cable should be attached to the video card connector.

**Attention:** Do not attach the monitor cable to the planar video connector, if one is present (for NetVista models, only).

6. See Figure 13 on page 18. Plug the cables into the TSSC as shown.

The reference keys are as follows:

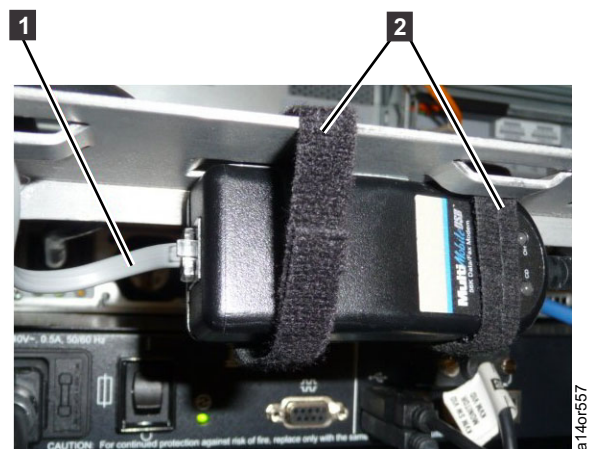
- 1** - USB Modem
- 2** - TSSC Internal LAN
- 3** - USB Keyboard/Mouse (or from optional KVM Switch)
- 4** - TSSC External LAN (1Gb/s can use CAT 5e or CAT 6, 10Gb/s will need CAT 6)
- 5** - Video Cable (or from optional KVM Switch)



a14or569

Figure 13. Cables plugged into the TSSC server

7. See Figure 14. Position the modem at the back of the frame. Use two 355 mm (14 in.) tie wraps **2** to secure it at the back of the frame.
8. Connect the phone cord **1** into the modem.
9. Use the other tie wraps to secure the USB modem cable to the frame as needed.



a14or557

Figure 14. Securing the USB modem to the frame.

## Tape System Call Home Setup for TS7700 Virtualization Engine

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

**Note:** TS7700 attachment requires feature code 2718, 2720, or 2721. See “Feature Codes” on page 7 for details about feature code content.

1. From EBTERM or NetTerm login, at the **IBM TS7700 Virtualization Engine Maintenance** menu, select **Subsystem Configuration Menus**.

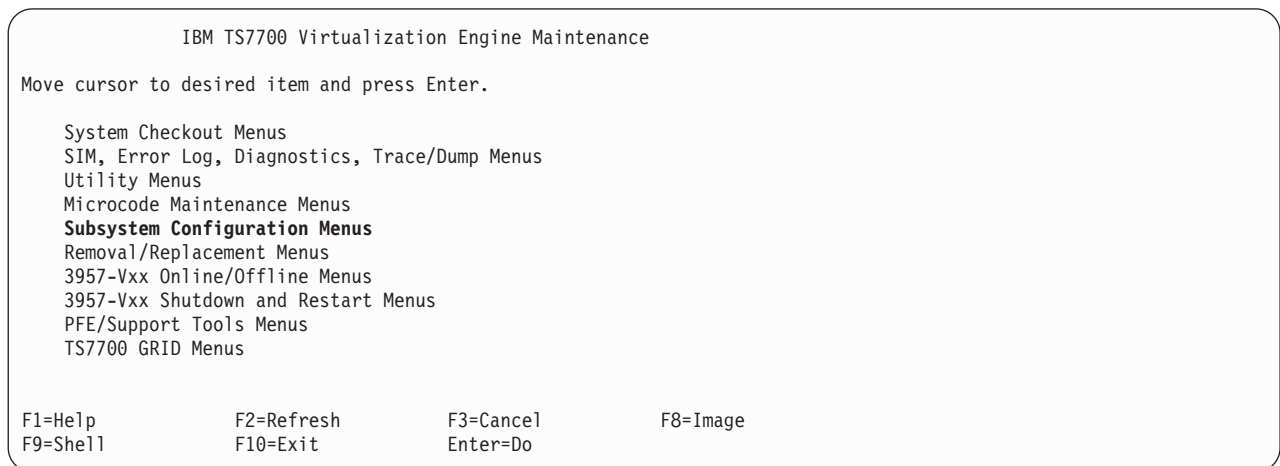


Figure 15. Call Home / Remote Services Menu – Virtualization Engine Maintenance

2. Select **Call Home / Remote Services Menu**. Press **Enter**. Following screen is displayed.

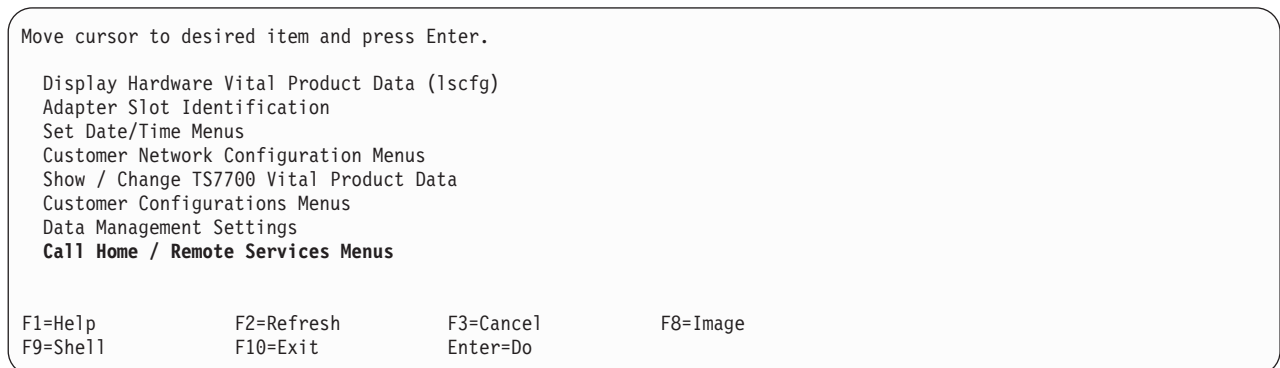


Figure 16. Subsystem Configuration Menus

3. Select **IBM TotalStorage Master Console TCP/IP Configuration**, and press **Enter**.

Call Home / Remote Services Menu

Move cursor to desired item and press Enter.

IBM TotalStorage Master Console TCP/IP Configuration

Change / Show Call Home / Remote Services

Change / Show Call Home Filters

Send Test Notification Menu

Remote Data Monitoring

View Call Home Log

Reset Call Home Daemon

Configure Network Port for Remote Connection

F1=Help

F2=Refresh

F3=Cancel

F8=Image

F9=Shell

F10=Exit

Enter=Do

Figure 17. Call Home / Remote Services Menu – TCP/IP Configuration

4. Select **Enter the Service Console IP Address:**.

Set Service Console (TSSC) Customer Network Configuration

Type or select values in entry fields.  
Press Enter AFTER making all desired changes.

[TOP]

[Entry Fields]

NOTICE: TSSC IPs must be in IPv4 format  
because the TSSC only supports IPv4 addresses.  
TSSC IPs cannot be disabled.

\* Enter the Service Console IP Address:

[172.31.1.1]

NOTE: This is the IP Address for the TSSC  
that will be attached to this TS7700. The  
values displayed are either the default  
values or the current IP that is configured.

\* Enter the Service Console Hostname:

[blimpie]

[MORE. . .14]

F1=Help

F2=Refresh

F3=Cancel

F4=List

F5=Reset

F6=Command

F7=Edit

F8=Image

F9=Shell

F10=Exit

Enter=Do

Figure 18. Set Service Console (TSSC) Customer Network Configuration Menu

- At Figure 18, verify that the Service Console IP address is set to the IP address (defaults to 172.31.1.1).
- At Figure 18, verify that the TS7700 IP address is set to the IP address 172.31.1.x. The 'x' will be replaced with the IP address that you designated for this subsystem.

**Note:** For the TS7700, the last octet of this IP address must be in an increment of 10 between 10 and 240 (that is, 10, 20 ... 230, 240). The router configuration will utilize this entire octet for TSSC configuration. All ten of these addresses must not be used by another subsystem connected to the TSSC.

- Press **F3** to return to Figure 17. Select Change / Show Call Home / Remote Services. Figure 19 on page 21 displays.



Change / Show Call Home / Remote Services			
Type or select values in entry fields. Press Enter AFTER making all desired changes.			
		[Entry Fields]	
* Enable Serious and Acute SIMs to Call Home?		yes	
* LM Customer Initiated Call Home Allowed Frequency		disabled	
* Enable Paging?		no	
* Customer Business/Company Name"		[IBM]	
* Customer Location		[TUCSON]	
Remote Phone Number 1 (call home) :		[18005551234]	
Remote Phone Number 2 (call home) :		[]	
Callback Phone Number [modem]		[]	
Customer Phone Number [voice]		[]	
Customer Offshift Phone Number		[]	
F1=Help	F2=Refresh	F3=Cancel	F4=List
F5=Reset	F6=Command	F7=Edit	F8=Image
F9=Shell	F10=Exit	Enter=Do	

Figure 19. Change / Show Call Home / Remote Services Menu

- At Figure 19, verify that Serious and Acute SIMs to Call Home is enabled. If it is not enabled, highlight the text, and press **F4**. Move the cursor to **yes**, and press **Enter**.
- Press **F3** to return to Figure 17 on page 20. Select **Remote Data Monitoring**. Figure 20 displays.

Remote Data Monitoring			
Type or select values in entry fields. Press Enter AFTER making all desired changes.			
		[Entry Fields]	
* <b>Change / Show Call Home Heartbeat Interval</b>		3 days	
* Error Initiated Call Home Data Gathering		Enabled	
* Timeout Period Between Successive Data Call Homes (In hours between 1 and 99)		[24]	
F1=Help	F2=Refresh	F3=Cancel	F4=List
F5=Reset	F6=Command	F7=Edit	F8=Image
F9=Shell	F10=Exit	Enter=Do	

Figure 20. Call Home – Remote Data Monitoring Menu

- At Figure 20, verify that Call Home Data Gathering is enabled. If it is not enabled, highlight the text, and press **F4**. Move the cursor to **Enabled**, and press **Enter**.
- Press **F3** to return to Figure 17 on page 20. If more attached subsystems need configuration exit the EBTERM or NetTerm session and connect the net subsystem.
- Return to step 2 on page 19 and configure all attached systems before continuing to step 13.
- You have completed the TS7700 configuration. Leave the screen active.
  - Go to "Setting Up Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager" on page 22 if you want to set up the autonomic takeover manager, then return here.
  - AND --
  - Go to "Tape System Call Home Setup for VTS, VTC, and Tape Controllers" on page 27.
  - OR --
  - "Tape System Setup for 3494 ATL (Library Manager) or 3953 Enterprise Library Controller" on page 32, if necessary.

## Setting Up Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager

The Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager (AOTM) allows the TSSC to create a temporary communication path around a failing communication path in a multiple IBM TS7700 Virtualization Engine configuration to determine the health of the remote system. This activity is performed independently of human intervention. This activity is similar to actions taken by an operator who intervenes to reestablish communications by taking over ownership of the complex (or grid), or multiple clusters. But AOTM is done automatically by a TSSC, without a request being made by an operator.

See Figure 21. A complex (or grid) can be defined as multiple clusters. The preferred minimum configuration of a cluster contains one of each of the following:

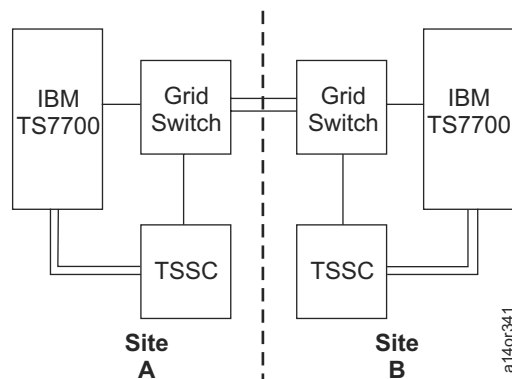
- Two TS7700s
- Two TSSCs (one connected to each TS7700)
- Two grid switches (one supporting each TS7700 and TSSC pair)

**Note:** AOTM is also with one TSSC between two TS7700s, with the minimum configuration of the following:

- Two TS7700s
- One TSSC (connected to each TS7700)

**Notes:**

- The Grid Network Interface should only be used for TS7700 peer-to-peer networks with the AOTM function. Unless previously mentioned, other uses are not supported.
- No connection is made directly between any two TSSCs, but TSSCs are connected through the grid switches.



*Figure 21. Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager (AOTM) Layout.* This is one example of how a customer might have a complex with physically-separated clusters at multiple, separate sites, such as in multiple cities or in multiple states.

1. You were directed here from “Console Settings” on page 66. On both clusters, configure the local TSSC Grid IP address. From the TS7700 Virtualization Engine Maintenance menu, select **TS7700 GRID Menus > TS7700 GRID Configuration Menus > Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager Menus > Set Local GRID TSSC IP**. Press **Enter**. You see Figure 22 on page 23.

```

Set Local GRID TSSC IP

Type or select values in entry fields.
Press Enter AFTER making all desired changes.

[Entry fields]
Enter the Local GRID TSSC IP address:      (10.11.110.40)

F1=Help      F2=Refresh      F3=Cancel
F8=Image     F10=Exit       Enter=Do
/=Find

```

Figure 22. Setting Local Grid TSSC IP Address

2. In the Entry Fields field, type the TSSC Grid IP address to which the cluster's local TSSC is configured (10.11.110.40, in this example). Press **Enter**.
3. Press **F3** twice to return to the TS7700 Virtualization Engine Maintenance menu, and select **Configure Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager to a Remote Cluster**.

**Note:** The remainder of these steps apply to the failing cluster from which you want to take over volumes.

4. Press **Enter**. Figure 23 appears.

```

Select a remote cluster

Move cursor to desired item and press Enter.

# Select the Remote Cluster from the list below
#
# Remote Cluster
#- - - - -
1 - V06

F1=Help      F2=Refresh      F3=Cancel
F8=Image     F10=Exit       Enter=Do
/=Find

```

Figure 23. Selecting a Remote Cluster. For this example, the cluster name is 'V06.'

5. Move the cursor to the desired cluster, and press **Enter**. Figure 24 displays.

```

Configure Autonomic Ownership-Takeover To a Remote Cluster

Type or select values in entry fields.
Press Enter AFTER making all desired changes.

[Entry fields]
* Remote Cluster ID:      0
Enter the Autonomic Takeover Setting:      [enabled]

*
Enter the Takeover Mode:      WOT
*
Enter the minutes for the Grace Period:      [25]
Enter the minutes for the Retry Period:      [5]

F1=Help      F2=Refresh      F3=Cancel      F4=List
F5=REset     F6=Command     F7=Edit       F8=Image
F9=Shell     F10=Exit       Enter=Do
/=Find

```

Figure 24. Configuring AOTM To Remote Cluster

6. Add information in the appropriate fields, depicted in Figure 24:

### Remote Cluster ID

Set to the ID that you chose in Figure 23 on page 23. (0 in this example.) The default which appears in this field (0 or 1) depends on the cluster from which you are initiating this configuration.

### Enter the Autonomic Takeover Setting

Set to Enabled or Disabled. (enabled in this example.)

### Enter the Takeover Mode

Set to Read only takeover (ROT) or Write-enabled ownership takeover (WOT). ROT allows the local cluster to read (but not write to) volumes in the remote cluster. WOT allows the local cluster to read from and write to any volumes that it takes over from the remote cluster.

### Enter the minutes for the Grace Period

Set the number of minutes before the local cluster takes over the volumes of the remote cluster.

### Enter the minutes for the Retry Period

Set the number of minutes to wait before a retry of the takeover of the volumes occurs.

7. Press **Enter**. You see Figure 25.

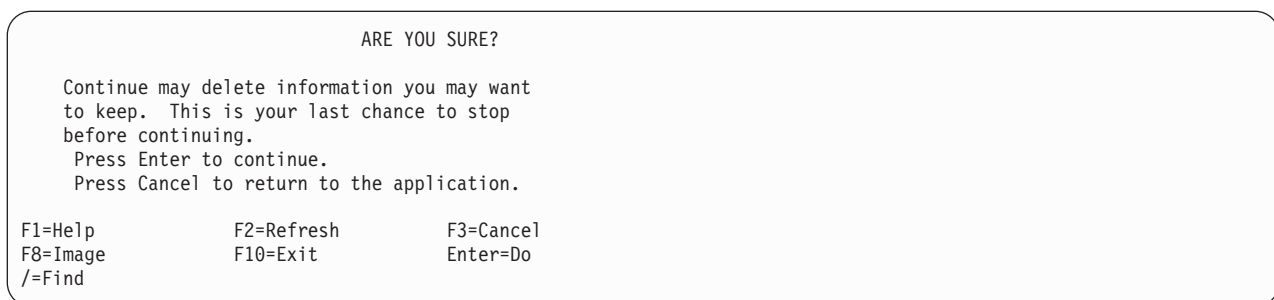


Figure 25. Warning Message for Processing AOTM To a Remote Cluster

8. Press **Enter**. You see Figure 26.

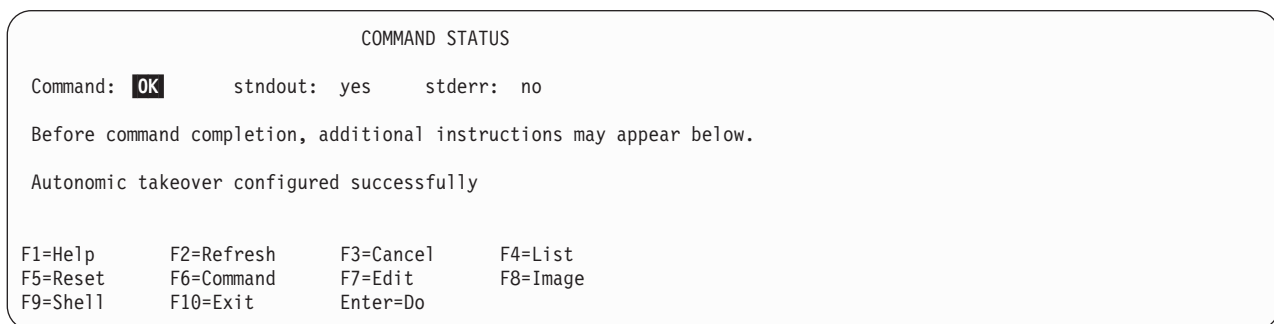


Figure 26. Processing AOTM To a Remote Cluster

9. Press **F3** until you are returned to the main menu for the TS7700 Virtualization Engine Service Terminal.
- Verify the TSSC Firewall settings:**
10. Click the **Custom Firewall Settings** link at the top of the Console Settings page.
11. Verify the HTTP entry is properly set for the Grid interface. You should see the Grid entries configured to allow HTTP connections, both in and out, as seen in the figure below. If either of them are set to drop, change it to allow by selecting the option in the leftmost column.





		Grid	IN	HTTP	80
		Grid	OUT	HTTP	80

Figure 27. TSSC Firewall Settings

**Notes:**

- If the customer's network is configured to run AOTM over the same network as the TSSC's external adapter, you will need to repeat this step for the external firewall entries.
  - It is recommended as best practice to use different sub-networks for External and Grid adapter to improve the reliability of the communication.
12. Once the settings have been verified, click **Update Firewall Settings**. You will see a message stating the firewall settings have been successfully configured.
  13. Close the open window.
  14. To test the AOTM, go to "Testing Autonomic Ownership Takeover Connectivity To A Remote Cluster."

## Testing Autonomic Ownership Takeover Connectivity To A Remote Cluster

This information provides a procedure for testing autonomic ownership takeover connectivity to a remote cluster.

The activity described in this section is a continuation of "Setting Up Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager" on page 22. Your cluster should have been set up to allow the Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager (AOTM) before you perform these steps.

1. From the TS7700 Virtualization Engine Maintenance menu, select **TS7700 GRID Menus > TS7700 GRID Configuration Menus > Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager Menus > Test Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager to a Remote Cluster**. Press **Enter**. You see Figure 28.

Select a remote cluster

Move cursor to desired item and press Enter.

```
# Select the Remote Cluster from the list below
#
# Remote Cluster
#- - - - -
0 - V06
```

F1=Help  
F8=Image  
/=Find

F2=Refresh  
F10=Exit

F3=Cancel  
Enter=Do

Figure 28. Initiating Remote AOTM Cluster Test. For this example, the cluster name is 'V06.'

2. Move the cursor to the desired cluster (V06 in this example), and press **Enter**. Figure 29 on page 26 displays.

```

Test Autonomic Ownership-Takeover To a Remote Cluster

Type or select values in entry fields.
Press Enter AFTER making all desired changes.

[Entry fields]
* Remote Cluster ID:      0
Local Cluster IP:        [ 1]

F1=Help      F2=Refresh    F3=Cancel    F4=List
F5=Reset     F6=Command    F7=Edit     F8=Image
F9=Shell     F10=Exit     Enter=Do

```

Figure 29. Testing AOTM Connectivity To Remote Cluster

3. Add information in the appropriate fields, depicted in Figure 29:

**Remote Cluster ID**

This is the same setting that you chose in Figure 23 on page 23 ('0' in this example).

**Local Cluster IP**

This field contains a default setting, which you cannot change.

4. Press **Enter**. You see Figure 30.

```

ARE YOU SURE?

Continue may delete information you may want
to keep. This is your last chance to stop
before continuing.
Press Enter to continue.
Press Cancel to return to the application.

F1=Help      F2=Refresh    F3=Cancel
F8=Image     F10=Exit     Enter=Do
/=Find

```

Figure 30. Verifying AOTM Change

5. Press **Enter** to start the test, or press **Cancel** to return to the application. If you press Enter, you see Figure 31.

```

COMMAND STATUS

Command: OK      stdout: yes      stderr: no

Before command completion, additional instructions may appear below.

Local TSSC Connection: Successssful
Remote TSSC Connection: Successssful
Remote Node connection: Successssful
Remote node state: online

Based on the conditions above, will ownership takeover occur? false

F1=Help      F2=Refresh    F3=Cancel    F6=Command
F8=Image     F9=Shell     F10=Exit     /=Find
n=Find Next

```

Figure 31. Processing AOTM Changes

**Notes:** In the Figure 31 field "Based on the conditions above, will ownership takeover occur?"

**false** The local cluster is **not** taking control of the remote cluster's volume.

**true** The local cluster **has** ownership and **is** taking control of the remote cluster's volume.

AOTM testing is complete.

## Tape System Call Home Setup for VTS, VTC, and Tape Controllers

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

1. From EBTERM or NetTerm, perform the following:
  - a. Make the following selections from one of these screens:
    - IBM Virtual Tape Server (B10/B20 VTS) Maintenance
    - 3590 Subsystem Maintenance
    - 3592 Subsystem Maintenance
  - b. Select **Subsystem Configuration**, and press **Enter**.
  - c. Select **Call Home / Remote Services Menu**, and press **Enter**. Figure 32 displays.

Change / Show Call Home / Remote Services

Type or select values in entry fields.  
Press Enter AFTER making all desired changes.

\* Enable Serious and Acute SIMs to Call Home?

Yes

+

\* LM Customer Initiated Call Home Allowed Frequency

disabled

+

\* Enable Paging?

no

+

Customer Business/Company Name:

\* Remote Phone Number 1 (call home):

Remote Phone Number 2 (call home):

Callback Phone Number (modem)

Customer Phone Number (voice)

Customer Offshift Phone Number

F1=Help

F2=Refresh

F3=Cancel

F4=List

F5=Reset

F6=Command

F7=Edit

F8=Image

F9=Shell

F10=Exit

Enter=Do

Ensure Enable Serious and Acute SIMs to Call Home? is set to yes.

Figure 32. VTS, VTC, A60 , J70 & C06 Call Home / Remote Services Menu – Switch Call Home Selection

- Note:** Ensure that the Console Configuration Sheet (Table 8 on page 16) was completed before you perform the following steps.
2. At Figure 32, on Models VTS, VTC, A60 & J70, select **Switch Call Home / Remote Services to/from System Console**, and press **Enter**. Figure 33 on page 28 displays.

Switch Call Home / Remote Service to/from System Console

Type or select values in entry fields.  
Press Enter AFTER making all desired changes.

[Entry Fields]

\* Switch Call Home/Remote Services to/from Console/WTI

System Console

IBM System Console TCP/IP Address (dotted decimal):

IBM System Console Hostname:

[172.31.1.1]

[]

F1=Help

F2=Refresh

F3=Cancel

F4=List

F5=Reset

F6=Command

F7=Edit

F8=Image

F9=Shell

F10=Exit

Enter=Do

Figure 33. Switch Call Home/Remote Services to/from System Console

Change / Show Modem Configuration

Type or select values in entry fields.  
Press Enter AFTER making all desired changes.

[Entry Fields]

Name of Modem Set:

\* Dialer Phone System:

\* Cancel the call if not connected within (seconds):

\* Number of consecutive retries to connect:

MultiTech MT5600BA

tone

[45]

[1]

+

+

#

#

Name of Expander Set:

Expander port for modem:

Expander port for this Control Unit:

WTI APS 16 or MDS 16

1

2

+

+

+

F1=Help

F2=Refresh

F3=Cancel

F4=List

F5=Reset

F6=Command

F7=Edit

F8=Image

F9=Shell

F10=Exit

Enter=Do

VTS,VTC, A60, J70 & C6 Call Home / Remote Services Menu -> Change / Show Modem Configuration.  
When the WTI is selected also select the Change / Show Modem Configuration and set as needed.

Figure 34. Change / Show Modem Configuration

**Note:** In Figure 35 on page 29 Change this controllers IP and hostname as needed.



```

Subsystem Configuration Menus -> Show / Change TSSC Connection
                                Show / Change Direct TSSC Connection

Type or select values in entry fields.
Press Enter AFTER making all desired changes.

                                [Entry Fields]
* Enter this controllers IP address on TSSC network: [172.31.1.xxx]

* Enter the Service Console IP Address:              [172.31.1.1]
  NOTE: This is the IP Address for the TSSC
        that will be attached to this Control Unit.
        The values displayed are either the default
        values or the current IP that is configured.

* Enter the Service Console Hostname (TSSC):         []

F1=Help      F2=Refresh    F3=Cancel    F4=List
F5=Reset     F6=Command    F7=Edit      F8=Image
F9=Shell     F10=Exit      Enter=Do

```

Figure 35. 3592-C07 - Subsystem Configuration Menus - Show / Change TSSC Connection

Enable call home using the following screen:

```

Subsystem Configuration Menus -> Call Home / Remote Services Menu
                                Call Home / Remote Services Menu

Move cursor to desired item and press Enter.

Change / Show Call Home / Remote Services
Remove Files from Call Home Send Queue
Change / Show Call Home Filters
Send Test Notification Menus
Remote Data Monitoring
View Call Home Log
View Call Home SNMP trap Log

F1=Help      F2=Refresh    F3=Cancel    F8=Image
F9=Shell     F10=Exit      Enter=Do

Select: Change / Show Call Home / Remote Services

Note: Ensure Change / Show Call Home / Remote Services is set to yes.

Fill in the appropriate phone numbers.

```

Figure 36. Enable Call Home

Type or select values in entry fields.  
Press Enter AFTER making all desired changes.

F1=Help	F2=Refresh	F3=Cancel	F4=List
F5=Reset	F6=Command	F7=Edit	F8=Image
F9=Shell	F10=Exit	Enter=Do	

Figure 37. 3592-C07 Subsystem Configuration Menus -> Call Home / Remote Services Menu

3. At Figure 33 on page 28 and Figure 35 on page 29, verify that the IBM System Console IP Address is set to the IP address (defaults to 172.31.1.1). Press **F4** for the pop up menu displayed in Figure 38. Select **Console Call Home/Remote Services thru System Console**, and press **Enter** twice.

[illegible]

Figure 38. Models VTS, VTC, A60 , J70 & C06 - Switch Call Home / Remote Services to/from System Console – IP Address

- Step 4, step 5, and step 6 on page 32 apply to tape systems without SMC router WAN port connectivity.

4. **This step only applies to 3590 A60:** Select **IBM System Console TCP/IP Configuration**, and press **Enter**. Select the presented Ethernet adapter. Figure 40 appears.

**Attention:** Select the illustrated line item **only at Figure 39**. No other menu display items are applicable for this process.

```

Call Home / Remote Services Menu

Move cursor to desired item and press Enter.


IBM System Console TCPIP Configuration
lqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqk
x          Available Network Interfaces                      x
x                                                         x
x Move cursor to desired item and press Enter.             x
x                                                         x
x en1                                                        x
x                                                         x
x F1=Help           F2=Refresh           F3=Cancel         x
x F8=Image          F10=Exit            Enter=Do          x
F1 /=Find           n=Find Next          x
F9 lqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqqk

```

```

Minimum Configuration & Startup

To Delete existing configuration data, please use Further Configuration menus

Type or select values in entry fields.
Press Enter AFTER making all desired changes.

                                [Entry Fields]
* HOSTNAME                      [VTS13AAA00]
* Internet ADDRESS (dotted decimal) [172.31.1.2]
  Network MASK (dotted decimal)    [255.255.255.0]
* Network INTERFACE              en1
  NAMESERVER
    Internet ADDRESS (dotted decimal) []
    DOMAIN Name                    []
  Default GATEWAY Address          []
    (dotted decimal or symbolic name)
  Your CABLE Type                  N/A
  START Now                        yes
                                     +
                                     +

F1=Help      F2=Refresh      F3=Cancel      F4=List
F5=Reset     F6=Command     F7=Edit       F8=Image
F9=Shell     F10=Exit       Enter=D0

```

Figure 40. Minimum Configuration and Startup Menu

- **A descriptive host name.** This will be the name used to identify the tape system in the customer's environment.

- **An Internet ADDRESS of the form 172.31.1.x** (see Table 8 on page 16 for the value 'x'). It is important that no two internet addresses are set alike in the local Ethernet network. It is essential that the internet addresses are assigned using the network 172.31.1.x, otherwise TCP/IP communication with the console will not work.
- **A Network Mask of 255.255.255.0.** The Network Mask will be the same for each tape system.
- Change the START Now setting to **yes**.

Press **Enter**. Press **F3** to return to **Call Home / Remote Services Menu** displayed at Figure 32 on page 27.

6. Press **F3** twice to return to **Call Home / Remote Services Menu**. If more attached subsystems need configuration, exit the EBTERM/NetTerm session and connect to the next subsystem.
7. Return to step 1 on page 27, and configure all attached tape systems before continuing to step 8.
8. VTS, VTC, and tape controller configuration is complete at this point. **Leave the screen active.** Continue to "Tape System Setup for 3494 ATL (Library Manager) or 3953 Enterprise Library Controller" if necessary, then continue to "Configuration" on page 43 to perform system console configuration.

## **Tape System Setup for 3494 ATL (Library Manager) or 3953 Enterprise Library Controller**

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

**TSSC** For 3494, Version 3.0.0 and above

For 3953, Version 3.2.0 and above

**IBM 3494 ATL Models L12, L14, L22**

Code Version 529 and above (LM531 and above for 3953), using a 7581 PC. If you are using a 7588 PC, you must have FC 2715 installed, which will provide a 4-port Ethernet adapter, if one is not installed.

### **Notes:**

- Either FC 5219 or FC 5220 must have been installed to enable the 3494 Specialist.
  - The customer (usually an administrator) must authorize enabling the 3494 Specialist.
1. See Figure 41 on page 33. Ensure that an Ethernet connection has been completed between the 3494 ATL or 3953 SBC card port 1 (lower port) and a port on one of the TSSC Ethernet switches. The Ethernet cable should plug into the bottom port (Item 1 in Figure 41 on page 33). The SBC card is in slot 3 of the 7581.

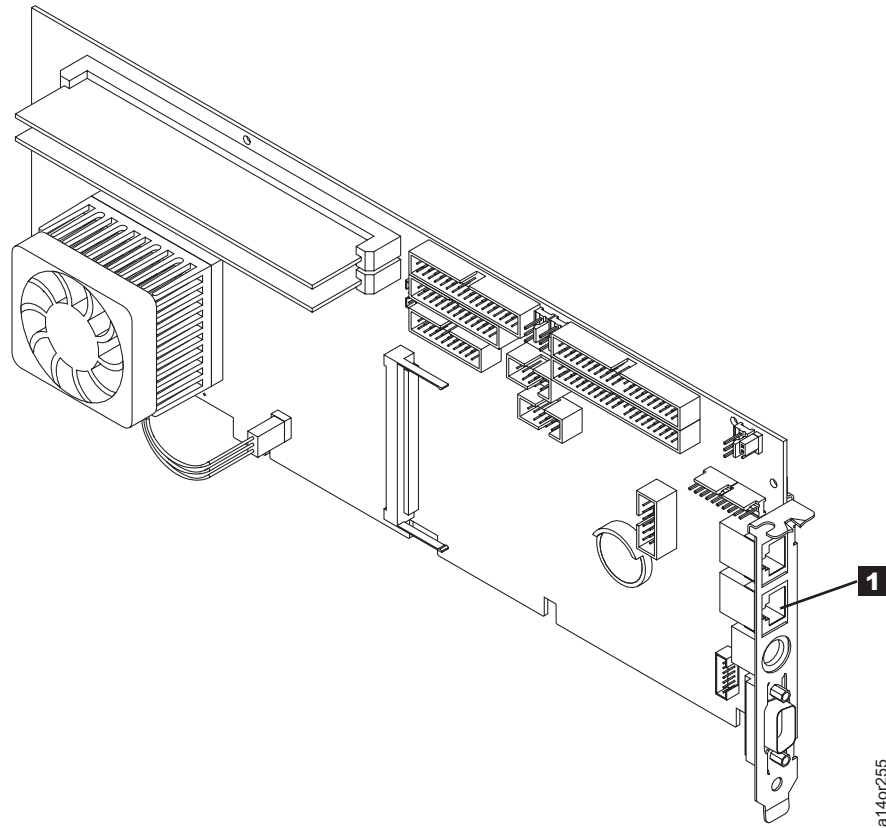


Figure 41. Plug Ethernet cable here (3494). Notice Item 1.

2. Ensure that the TSSC server is listed in the command process window. Use **Ctrl + Esc** to view the window list. See Figure 42.

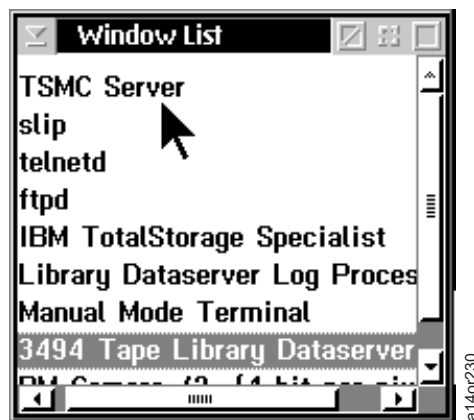


Figure 42. Command Process Window List – Example. The text on your screen might differ with various levels of code or with different machine model numbers.

**Notes:**

- If the TSSC server is not included in the list depicted in Figure 42, you can start the TSSC server by typing **tsmcstrt** from a command line.
- You can stop the TSSC server. Right-click **TSMC Server** from the Figure 42, then click the **Close** button in the dialog box.
- You can restart the TSSC server by stopping it, then starting it.

- If the “tsmcstrt” fails to start the “TSSC server” window, the OS/2 device drivers may not be installed on the 3494 ATL or the 3953. Shutdown the 3494 ATL or the 3953, and open a service window. Run “tsmcinst”. This loads the necessary OS/2 device drivers. Once loaded, the 3494 ATL or the 3953 must be rebooted.
3. Use the 3494 ATL or 3953 menu commands **Service > Manage Master Console** to view the dialog box for setting any 3494 ATL or 3953 IP address or addresses. See Figure 43.

Configure the IP address of the 3494 ATL or 3953 for the TSSC network. The default addressing scheme uses the subnet 172.31.1.x. The specific address must not be in use elsewhere on the TSSC network.

**Note:** You must configure the library manager before you configure the TSSC.

	- IP Address -	- Configuration -
LM-A:	172.31.1.1	Configuration successful
LM-B:	172.31.1.1	Configuration successful

Master Console IP Address: 172.31.1.1

Library Manager Frame Serial Number: 7800004

Change Refresh Exit Help

Figure 43. Manage System Console Dialog Box. The Library Manager Frame Serial Number must be the 3953 F05 base frame number or the 3494 LXX frame serial number. The text on your screen might differ with various levels of code or with different machine model numbers.

4. Change the default IP addresses in the entry box to be IP addresses that are unique to the TSSC network. Click **Change**. After the address is successfully set, Configuration Successful is indicated in the Configuration column. Click **Exit** when complete.
5. Ensure that Call Home is enabled on the 3494 ATL or 3953. Use the 3494 ATL or 3953 menu commands **Utilities > Enable/Disable Functions > LM Call Home > Enable** to enable Call Home on the LM.
6. In order to use the TSSC “Connect to Attached Systems” tool to access the 3494 ATL or 3953, you must enable Service Access. Use the 3494 ATL or 3953 menu commands **Commands > Service Access > Enable Service Access**. This will enable both the Telnet services and the FTP services for the 3494 ATL or the 3953. “Service” is enabled if it appears unhighlighted (grayed-out) on the menu.

**Notes:**

- Either FC 5219 or FC 5220 must have been installed to enable the 3494 Specialist. Though these feature codes are 3494-only, they are included in the 3953 F05 base frame.
- The customer administrator must authorize enabling Service Access.
- The TSSC tool “Connect to Attached Systems” will be unable to connect with this 3494 ATL or 3953 if Service Access is disabled.
- TSSC FTP access to this 3494 ATL or 3953 will be unable to connect, if Service Access is disabled.
- If the TSSC tool “Connect to Attached Systems” is unable to connect to a subsystem, the connection terminal screen disappears without presenting a login prompt. No error message will be displayed.
- The customer administrator must authorize enabling the 3494 Specialist.

7. In order to view the 3494 or 3953 Specialist from the TSSC, you must enable the 3494/3953 Specialist. Use the 3494 ATL or 3953 Menu Commands: > **Utilities** > **Enable/Disable Functions** > **3494 Specialist** > **Activate**. You might be asked for a User ID and Password. The default User ID is "service" and the default password is "service".
8. After the 3494 or 3953 Specialist is enabled, wait for the hour glass icon on your screen to disappear, then select **Commands** > **Specialist (Web Server)** > **Settings** from the 3494 ATL or 3953 menu.
9. Either click **All Yes** or select **Yes** for each function you want to manage by using the 3494 or 3953 Specialist. Ensure that "Manage TSSC" is set to "Yes" to manage the TSSC configuration via the 3494 or 3953 Specialist. Figure 44 appears. Ask the customer administrator for any settings that need to be changed on this screen from Yes to No, and check the No box for those settings.

3494 Specialist Settings	
<b>Web Administrator</b>	
Userid: <input type="button" value="Activate"/> <input type="button" value="Deactivate"/>	Password: <input type="button" value="Reset to default"/>
<b>Web Browser Access</b>	
Panel Name	Allow Access
Manage Storage Groups	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Manage Management Classes	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Manage Storage Classes	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Manage Data Classes	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Manage Logical Volumes	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Stacked Volume Pool Properties	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Move/Eject Stacked Volumes	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Find Logical Volume's Home	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Stacked Volume Map	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Volser Ranges	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
VPD Summary	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Database Search	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Operator Interventions	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
VTS Management Policies	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
Manage TSMC	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No
<input type="button" value="Submit Access Change"/> <input type="button" value="All Yes"/> <input type="button" value="All No"/>	
<input type="button" value="Exit"/> <input type="button" value="Help"/>	

Figure 44. 3494 ATL or 3953 Specialist Settings. The text on your screen might differ with various levels of code or with different machine model numbers.

10. Click **Submit Access Change** to change the Web Browser Access attributes. Wait for the message "Web browser access was successfully changed."
- Notes:**
- The customer administrator must authorize enabling the 3494 or the 3953 Specialist.
  - No browser will be able to display the 3494 or 3953 Specialist, if the Specialist is not activated.
11. Return to the beginning of this procedure, and perform steps 1 on page 32 through 6 on page 34 for each 3494 ATL that you will attach to the TSSC.

This completes the configuration of the 3494 ATL or 3953 for the TSSC attachment. Continue at "Test Call Home Notification for 3494 ATL or 3953 Enterprise Library Controller" on page 100, or go to "Configuration" on page 43 if you do not intend to test the call home notification.

## Using 3494 ATL or 3953 Enterprise Library Controller Web Specialist to Change TSSC Settings

This section provides supplemental information. You do not need this information to complete the setup for a 3494 ATL or 3953. You can, however, use the 3494 ATL or 3953 Web Specialist to change certain

TSSC settings on the 3494 ATL or 3953. You can access and enable the 3494 or 3953 Web Specialist by using a browser on the customer's network (common approach).



Figure 45. 3494 ATL or 3953 Web Specialist - Welcome Page

After you access the 3494 ATL or 3953 Web Specialist, you will see the Figure 45. A number of work items are listed on the left side of the screen.

1. Select **Service library manager**, then select **Administer call home**. This menu contains the tasks that are relevant for the TSSC and call home. You may want to perform some or all of these actions. From this menu you can select (in any order):

#### Test interface

Test network interface to TSSC or send a test call home record (see "Test Interface")

#### Configure settings

Enable or disable problem call home or data call home activity (see "Configure Settings" on page 37)

#### Flush queue

Clears 3494 ATL or 3953 call home entries from the TSSC call home queue (see "Flush Queue" on page 38)

#### Set heartbeat

Set the time interval of the heartbeat call home action (see "Set Heartbeat" on page 38)

#### Configure interface parameters

Configure IP addresses for the LM and the TSSC. Set the hostname alias of the LM on the TSSC network (see "Configure Interface Parameters" on page 39)

2. Wait for the message "The Action Completed Successfully" which indicates that the test of the interface or the test call home was successful.

## Test Interface

1. From the "Administer call home" list on the Web Specialist screen (Figure 45), click **Test interface** to see the options shown in Figure 46 on page 37. If you are prompted for a username and password, use the default values of **service** for the username and **service** for the password. These values can be changed by the 3494 ATL system administrator.

From this screen (Figure 46 on page 37), you can test the (network) interface between the LM and the TSSC (from the perspective of the LM).

#### Test Interface

Tests the (network) interface between the LM and the TSSC (from the perspective of the LM)



## Test Call Home

Causes a test call-home record to be sent from the LM via the TSSC

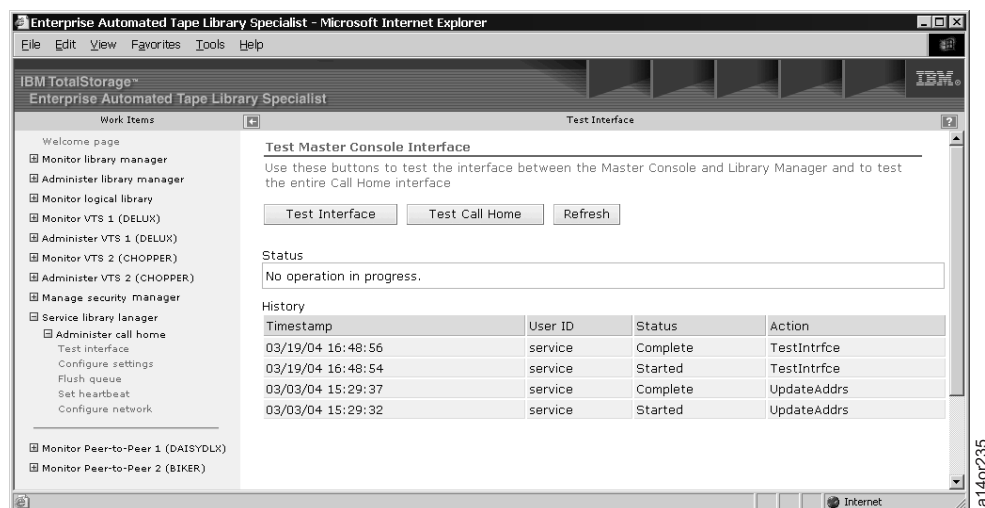


Figure 46. 3494 ATL Web Specialist - Test Interface

2. Wait for the message "The Action Completed Successfully," which indicates that the interface test was successful.

## Configure Settings

1. From the "Administer call home" list on the Web Specialist screen (Figure 45 on page 36), click **Configure settings** to see Figure 47. If you are prompted for a userid and password, use the default values of **service** for the userid and **service** for the password. These values can be changed by the 3494 ATL system administrator.
2. Call home communication is a default action that you must choose to disable. To disable call home, click **Send diagnostic data with Call Home**, select the **Disabled** button, click **Save Call Home Settings**.

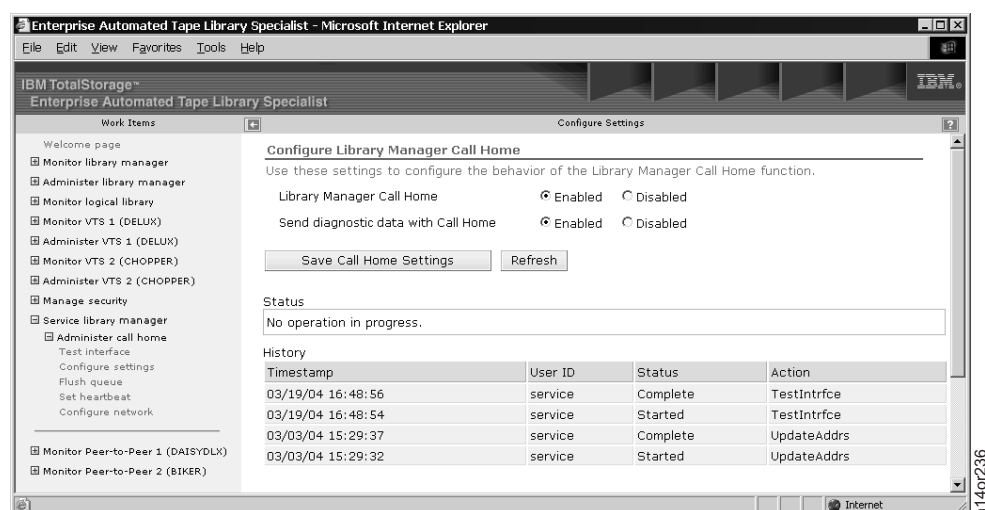


Figure 47. 3494 ATL Web Specialist - Configure Settings

3. Wait for the message "The Action Completed Successfully," which indicates that the call home settings were saved.

## Flush Queue

**Note:** This function requires that the 3494 ATL be successfully attached to the TSSC. See “Adding Attached System Information” on page 45.

1. From the “Administer call home” list on the Web Specialist screen (Figure 45 on page 36), click **Flush queue** to see Figure 48. If you are prompted for a userid and password, use the default values of **service** for the userid and **service** for the password. These values can be changed by the 3494 ATL system administrator.

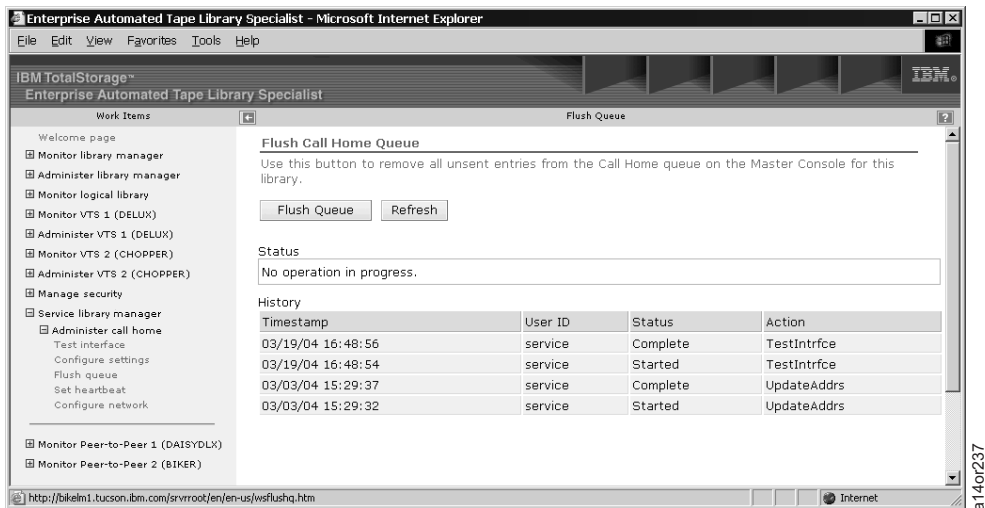


Figure 48. 3494 ATL Web Specialist - Flush Queue

2. Click **Flush Queue** to delete (flush) all the call home records on the TSSC that are associated with this 3494 ATL. All other call home records in the TSSC's call home queue will remain in the queue.
3. Wait for the message “The Action Completed Successfully,” which indicates that the TSSC queue settings were deleted.

## Set Heartbeat

The Heartbeat Interval Setting is the elapsed time between sending heartbeat call home records.

A heartbeat call home record is verification that the 3494 ATL is operating properly. A heartbeat call home record which does not arrive at its expected interval indicates a problem.

1. From the “Administer call home” list on the Web Specialist screen (Figure 45 on page 36), click **Set Heartbeat** to see Figure 49 on page 39. If you are prompted for a userid and password, use the default values of **service** for the userid and **service** for the password. These values can be changed by the 3494 ATL system administrator.

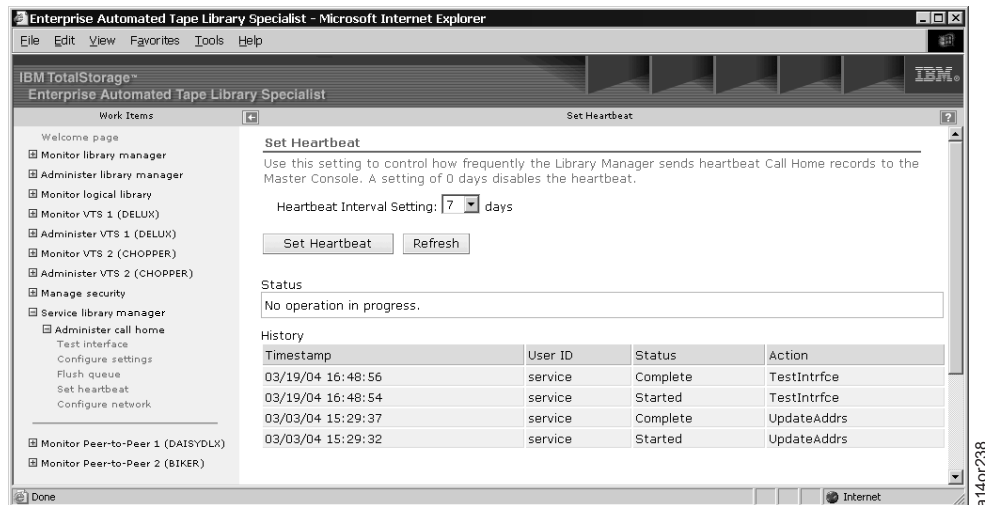


Figure 49. 3494 ATL Web Specialist - Set Heartbeat

2. From the drop-down box, select the number of the Heartbeat Interval Setting days between 1 and 28 days, then click **Set Heartbeat**. Set the Heartbeat Interval Setting to 0 to disable heartbeat call home activity.
3. Wait for the message “The Action Completed Successfully,” which indicates that the new heartbeat interval was set.

## Configure Interface Parameters

You can use this option to set the IP address and hostname alias of the 3494 ATL on the TSSC network. This option informs the 3494 ATL of the IP Address of the TSSC. You also can use this option to set the IP addresses and hostname aliases for both 3494 accessors when the 3494 ATL is part of a high availability (HA) dual accessor complex.

This task most commonly will be used to reset the hostname alias for the 3494 ATL on the TSSC network for system identification.

1. From the “Administer call home” list on the Web Specialist screen (Figure 45 on page 36), click **Configure Interface Parameters** to see Figure 50 on page 40. If you are prompted for a userid and password, use the default values of **service** for the userid and **service** for the password. These values can be changed by the 3494 ATL system administrator.

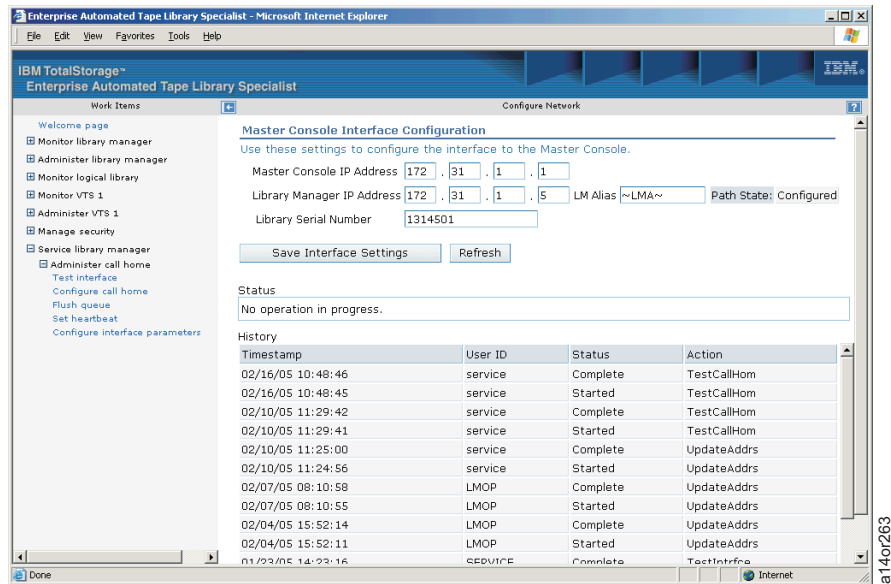


Figure 50. 3494 ATL Web Specialist - Configure Interface Parameters

2. Enter the appropriate values for the IP Addresses and hostnames, then click **Save Network Settings** to update the network information.
3. Wait for the message “The Action Completed Successfully,” which indicates that the new heartbeat interval was set.

**Note:** Avoid changing the TSSC's IP address from the default value of 172.31.1.1. If you must change the TSSC's IP address, change it first on the TSSC. Then change to the new IP address setting on each tape system on the TSSC network.

## Tape System Call Home Setup for 3584 Tape Library

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

You can use CETool to configure the TS3500 tape library for Call Home, see “Using CETool to configure for Call Home.” You can use the TS4500 management GUI to configure the TS4500 tape library for Call Home, see “Using the TS4500 management GUI to configure for Call Home” on page 42.

## Using CETool to configure for Call Home

Follow this procedure to configure the TS3500 for Call Home via the TSSC.

### Notes:

- CETool is a tool that is run externally from a workstation which is directly connected to a TS3500. CETool is not run from the TSSC.
- Use CETool version 3.10 or later for this procedure.
- For more information about using CETool, refer to the 3584 MI.
  1. Start the CETool program.
  2. Double click the CETool icon on your desktop.
  3. When the CETool screen displays, click Configure Remote Service. You see Figure 51 on page 41.

**Remote Serviceability Configuration**

**Call Home Options**

- ☐ Disable Call Home
- ☐ Disable Heart Beat/MRPD/Data Call Home
- Threshold Timeout: 1440 Minutes
- Account: [ ]
- User ID: [ ]
- Password: [ ]

**Primary**

- Phone #: [ ]
- IP Address: [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ]

**Secondary**

- Phone #: [ ]
- IP Address: [ ] [ ] [ ] [ ]

**Customer Info**

- Company Name: XYZ Corp
- Contact Phone #: 800-555-4567
- Offshift Phone #: 800-555-6789

**WTI Switch Options**

- ☐ WTI Switch Installed
- Library Switch Port #: [ ] (2-16)

**Master Console Options**

- ☒ Enable Master Console
- Master Console IP Address: 172 . 31 . 1 . 1
- Master Console Subnet Mask: 255 . 255 . 0 . 0
- Master Console Host Name: tssnet1
- Library Frame (decimal): 2 (1-16)
- Library IP Address: 172 . 31 . 1 . 170

Submit Cancel

a69m0318

Figure 51. Remote Serviceability via System Console

4. At the Remote Serviceability Configuration screen, ensure that the Disable Call Home checkbox is **not** checked.
5. Ensure that the Disable Heart Beat /MRPD/Data Call Home checkbox is **not** checked.
6. Ensure that the Threshold Timeout field is set to 1440 minutes.
7. Enter the customer phone number in the Contact Phone # field.
8. Enter the customer offshift phone number in the Offshift Phone # field.
9. In the Master Console Options area, set the following fields:
  - a. Select **Enable Master Console**.
  - b. Set the Master Console IP Address field to **172.31.1.1**. This is the default IP address for the TSSC.
  - c. Set the Master Console Subnet Mask field to **255.255.0.0**.
  - d. Set the Master Console Host Name field to the host name of the TSSC.
  - e. Determine the TS3500 frame number for the model Dxx frame containing the ethernet-capable MCP or MCA that will be used for the connection to the TSSC. Type that number in the Library Frame (decimal) field.

**Notes:**

- The Lxx frame is always frame 1, even if an HA1 frame (Service Bay A) is attached.
  - Typically the two-character display on the MCP or the MCA will be flashing 00 and the frame number.
- f. Set the Library IP Address to 172.31.1.170. This is the default IP address for a TS3500 that is attached to a TSSC. If you have more than one TS3500 attached to a single TSSC, increment the last number for each additional library. As an example, the first library would have an IP address of 172.31.1.170, the second library would have an IP address of 172.31.1.171, the third library would have an IP address of 172.31.1.172, and so forth.

10. Select **Submit**.
11. Click **Configure Remote Service** again, and review the configuration data that you entered above. Verify that all the data you entered is correct. Exit the CETool program. The TS3500 should now be configured to call home via the TSSC.
12. To verify that the TS3500 is configured to call home via the TSSC, initiate a test call home. At the TS3500 operator panel, click **Menu**, and select **Service > Tests/Tools > Diagnostics > Call Home**.

## Using the TS4500 management GUI to configure for Call Home

The default method used by the TS4500 tape library for remote support (Call Home) is a broadband connection using the Electronic Customer Care (ECC) Call Home function through the system console. If preferred, you can order feature code 2735 (IMC Non-broadband Call Home) to use a direct modem connection.

Follow this procedure to configure the TS4500 for Call Home via the IMC.

1. Log in to the TS4500 management GUI using the SSR service account and password.
2. From the System page, select **Settings > Service**.
3. Ensure that the **Master Console** checkbox and **Heartbeat call home** checkbox are selected.
4. Input the values provided by the customer and select **Apply**. See Figure 52.

Figure 52. TS4500 IMC Call Home configuration menu

5. To verify that the TS4500 is configured to call home via the IMC, send a test call home.
  - a. From the main page, select **Actions > Send Test Call Home**.
  - b. In the window that displays, select the check box **Add a drive log to the call home test record**, and then click **Send**. The IMC will send the data files to RETAIN.
  - c. Verify that the test worked by either accessing RETAIN directly, or by contacting your local support center to find out whether a RETAIN record was opened, indicating that the test was successful. The call home test record will show, **URC = ACCA (Call Home Test)**.

## Configuration

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

**Prior to beginning system console configuration,** you must accommodate the following items:

- Attached subsystems should be configured for system console operation. All physical cabling connections should be complete. Subsystem IP addresses should be known, available, and documented on a Console Configuration Sheet (see Table 8 on page 16).
- Have available the telephone number of the analog lines attached to the system console modems, as well as tone/pulse and dial out prefix information, and 7-digit, 10-digit, or other local dialing conventions.
- Complete the Console Configuration Sheet (see Table 8 on page 16).

## User Login

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

The system console is ready for user login when you see the Console Login screen, represented in Figure 53 (microcode level might vary). There are two login options.

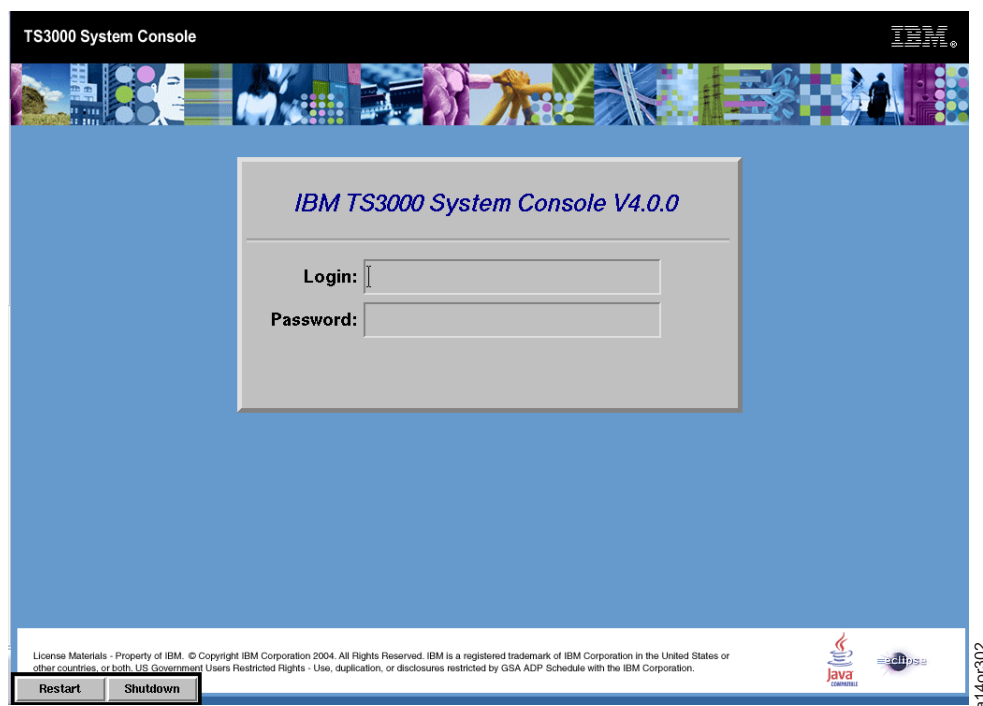


Figure 53. Console Login screen – example. The version number (Vx.x.x) reflects your level of microcode.

## Login Options

There are two ways to login to the system console:

- Non-Authenticated
- Authenticated

### Non-Authenticated:

For a non-authenticated login, in the Login field (depicted in Figure 53) type **service**. Press the **Tab** key to move your cursor to the Password field and enter the case sensitive password **service**. This type of login



will provide access to all console configuration and service tools. This username and this password are not valid for subsequent logins to any attached system. Non-authenticated logins are not available for remote access (see “Remote Access Using NefTerm” on page 124).

#### Authenticated:

**Note:** If not already done, contact IBM Support for access to the IBM Authentication Server and to be placed on the distribution list for the system console authentication user passwords.

Follow these steps to login to the system console. IBM Support provides your level of authorized access and your personal authentication ID for accessing system consoles and tape systems.

1. At the Console Login screen (Figure 53 on page 43), in the username field enter **Service** (case sensitive). Press the **Tab** key to move your cursor to the Password field, and enter **ibm2serv** (case sensitive).
2. At the prompt “**Please enter your Authentication Id,**” enter your personal authentication ID that was provided by IBM Support. Figure 54 depicts a typical authentication session:

```
Group: Service  (<- Your level of authorized access)
Creating user jdoe  (<- Your Authentication ID)
Account expires on: 07/02/02
6792-22U--:78-KA5XBA1:1:4:1920:jdoe
Changing password for user jdoe
New password:
Retype new password:
passwd: all authentication tokens updated successfully
Initiating broadcast to... vts1
Initiating broadcast to... vts2
Initiating broadcast to... vts3
Initiating broadcast to... vts4
Waiting for completion...
vts1: Ok
vts2: Ok
vts3: Could not execute remote command
vts4: Ok

Please logout and log back in with jdoe and password abclzyxw(<- New Password)

Press [c] to continue.
```

Figure 54. Authentication Menu – Sample

3. After successfully creating a user ID and password, the system attempts to copy them to all tape systems attached to the console (**making it possible to login to each device with the same user id and password**). It is possible that the attempt to copy the user id/password will not be successful. This process will always fail on VTS/VTC systems with code levels below 2.26, and for all attached 3494 ATLS.

**Note:** When the process of copying your userid/password to attached tape system is not successful, you must either authenticate separately for these systems (VTS code level 2.26 or above, A60 code level 1.16 or above, any 3592 J70, A60, or C06), or login by using previous access methods (VTS code level 2.25 and below, all 3494 ATL).

The following is a list of possible responses to the process of attempting to copy user id/password to attached tape systems. Responses other than “Ok” are not successful responses.

- Ok
- Process timed out
- System subroutine failure
- Could not create socket
- Could not establish connection
- Could not send data



- Invalid /etc/hosts file
- Invalid request
- Could not validate client
- Could not send data file
- Could not receive data file
- Could not execute remote command

#### Notes:

- **Make a note of your password!** If you lose your password, you must authenticate again. Also, you are able to use your password to log in to attached subsystems (if broadcast was successful).
  - Verify the results that appear following “Waiting for completion”. This indicates the success of copying your password to systems that are attached to the console.
  - Your userid and password will be valid for the time indicated on the console, and all systems that indicate “Ok” after “Waiting for completion”.
  - The “Waiting for completion” process should take no longer than 5 minutes before timing out. During the “Waiting for completion” process, you can skip the results of the broadcast by simultaneously pressing **CTRL + C**. If you press **CTRL + C**, you are NOT notified of a failed username broadcast.
4. Enter **c** to continue. You are returned to the Console Login Screen.
  5. Login to the console using the ID and password posted on the screen. The System Console Main Menu shown in Figure 55 appears.

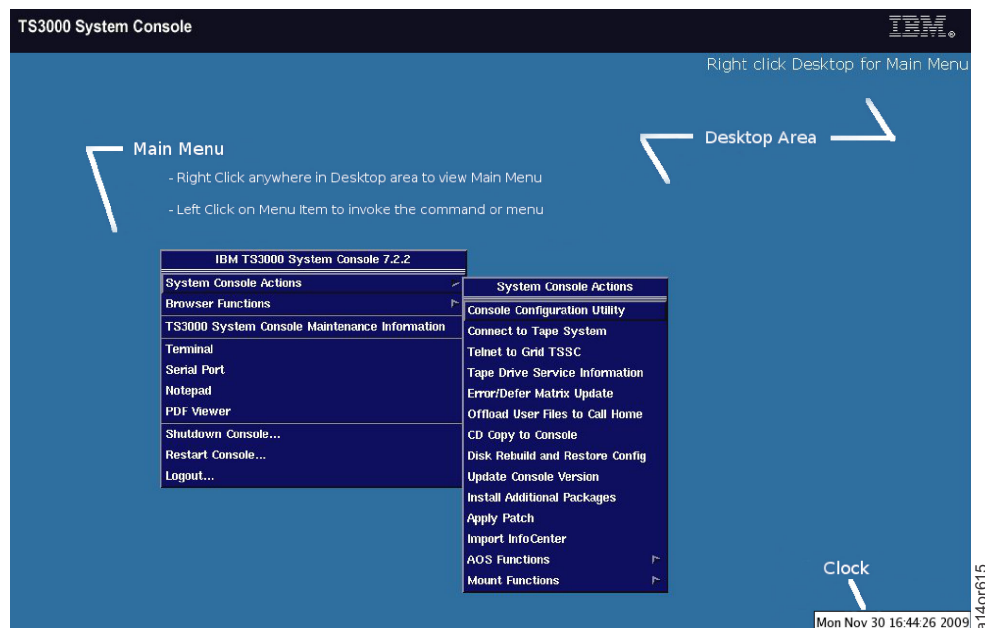


Figure 55. System Console Main Menu. Notice that the System Console Main Menu appears after you right-click inside the Desktop Area.

## Adding Attached System Information

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. You see the Username and password screen shown in Figure 56 on page 46.

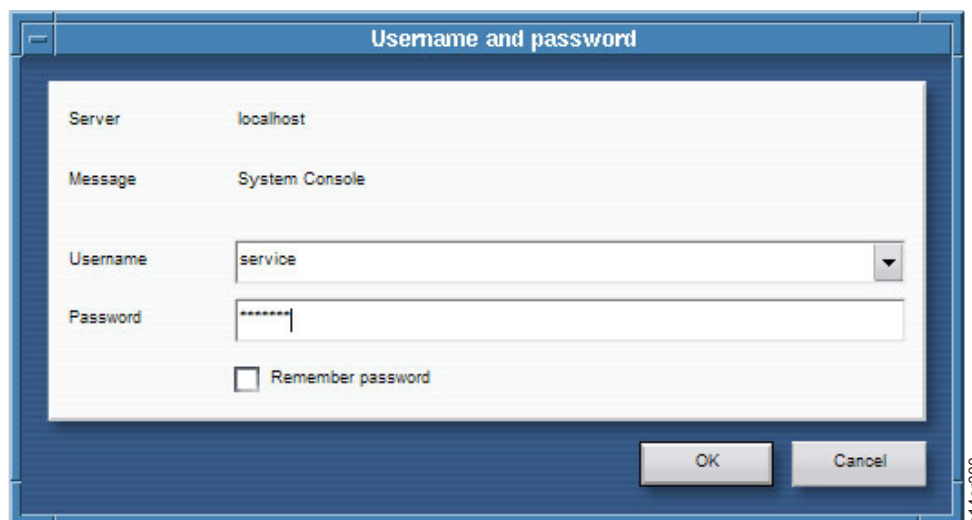


Figure 56. Login Username and Password Screen

3. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. You see the Console Configuration Utility screen shown in Figure 57.

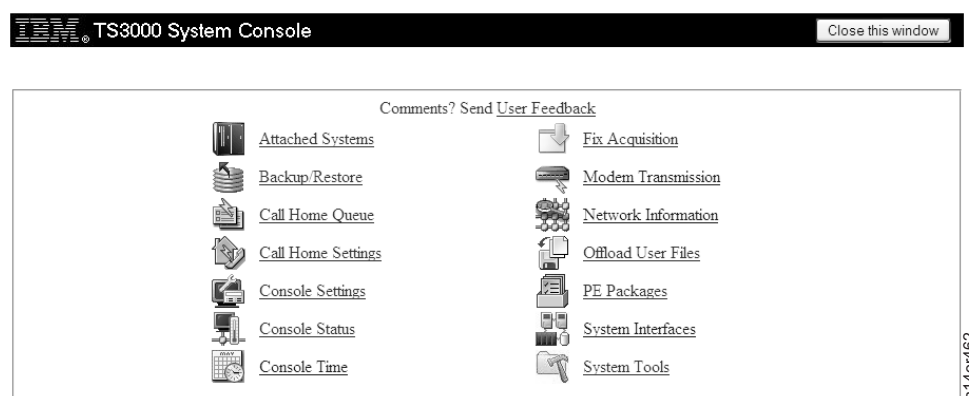


Figure 57. Console Configuration Utility Screen

4. Click **Attached Systems**. You see the screen shown in Figure 58 on page 47.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to add or manage attached systems (**TSSC Menus > Attached Systems > Add Attached System**). Refer to "RAS Menus" on page 162.

5. To add a new system, enter the system IP Address in the input fields next to Add System, and click **Add System**. A warning dialog box appears, informing you that it may take several minutes. Click **OK**.

You can select numerous systems by using the check boxes to the left of the attached systems.

- Use the Delete Selected, Edit Selected, and Query Selected buttons to work with the list of systems.
- Use the Query All button to query all currently attached systems.

If the application can establish contact with the attached system, the Device-Model, Serial Number, Host Name, and Subnet Mask fields are filled in automatically. Otherwise, these fields are filled in with "NA."

<input type="checkbox"/>	Device-Model	Serial Number	ID	Host Name	IP address	Subnet Mask	Call Home Switched	Standby	Complex System
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L23	<a href="#">78A3457</a>	1	BLC-A	172.31.1.51	255.255.255.0	1	1	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L23	<a href="#">78A3629</a>	2	BLC-B	172.31.1.50	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L23	<a href="#">78A3292</a>	3	BLC-C	172.31.1.52	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L23	<a href="#">78A3628</a>	4	BLC-D	172.31.1.53	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L52	<a href="#">1340013</a>	5	MSBF 1	172.31.1.228	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L52	<a href="#">1340074</a>	6	MSBF3	172.31.1.203	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L53	<a href="#">7819831</a>	7	MSBF4	172.31.1.204	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L23	<a href="#">78A2022</a>	8	MSBF11	172.31.1.212	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L23	<a href="#">78A2017</a>	9	MSBF12	172.31.1.239	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA

172 . 31 . 1 . . Add System

Delete Selected  
Edit Selected  
Query Selected  
Query All  
Toggle Standby  
  
View Health  
View Events  
Update Health  
  
Refresh

**Health Legend:**  

No Problems Returned From System Health Check

Warning(s) Found in System Health Check

Failed Status(es) Found in System Health Check

Offline Status(es) Found in System Health Check

Communication Failure Between TSSC and Attached System

a14or504

Figure 58. Add System Screen

- You can set the system console to periodically check for responses from attached systems (see Step 12 on page 85).

Call home records will not be sent for systems that are marked as Standby (such as **3584L23**, Serial Number **78A3457** in the example),

To set a system as Standby or to change a Standby setting, select the appropriate system by using the check boxes to the left of the attached systems. The numeral '1' in the Standby column indicates that system is in standby mode. A '0' in the Standby column indicates that this system is not in standby mode.

After you select the appropriate systems, you can toggle between the two settings by repeatedly pressing the button that is labeled Toggle Standby.

- When querying a large number of systems at one time, it can take from several minutes to as long as an hour for the attached system data to be retrieved. If you have a 3958-AP1 or 3958-DE2 configuration, continue at step 4 in "Adding a Complex System." If all systems have been added, click **Close this window** to close the screen.

**Note:** After you add an attached DS6000 system you must log out and log back in again to have access to the system console DS6000 menu options.

## Adding a Complex System

Use this task to add a complex system if you have a 3958-AP1 or 3958-DE2 configuration.

- Right click anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu as shown in Figure 53 on page 43
- From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions → Console Configuration Utility**. You will see the Username and password screen as shown in Figure 56 on page 46
- Type **service** in the Username field; type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. You will see the Console Configuration Utility screen as shown in Figure 57 on page 46
- Click **Attached Systems**. You will see the screen shown in Figure 58
- Click the **Complex View** link in the upper right hand corner.

6. Select the type of Complex System you are adding from the drop down list:

Figure 59. Complex System Screen.

7. Enter the serial number and host name of the complex system.
8. Enter the frame IP range for the complex system. **NOTE:** If the systems you are creating the complex for are 172.31.1.100 and 172.31.1.105, then enter 100 for the frame IP range. The TSSC will find the correct systems for creating the complex with, and add them to the complex. If the 3958-AP1 complex is a single 3958-AP1 cluster, it will only add the one system to the complex.
9. Click the **Add Complex** button, when the system is added correctly. You will see a message confirming the complex system was added successfully; the screen will return with the new system shown on the right:

Figure 60. Add New Complex System Screen - 1.

10. To delete a complex system click the **Delete Complex** link below the Complex Type.

Figure 61. Add New Complex System Screen - 2.

11. When all systems have been added, click **Close this window** to close the screen.

## Adding a 3584 Model SC1 Complex System

Use the following procedures to add a 3584 model SC1 shuttle complex system.

1. Right click anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu as shown in Figure 53 on page 43.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. You will see the Username and password screen as shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
3. Type **service** in the Username field; type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. You will see the Console Configuration Utility screen as shown in Figure 57 on page 46.
4. Click **Attached Systems**. You will see the screen shown in Figure 58 on page 47.
5. Click the **Complex View** link in the upper right hand corner.
6. Under **-Select Complex Type-** select **3584 Complex** from the drop down list.

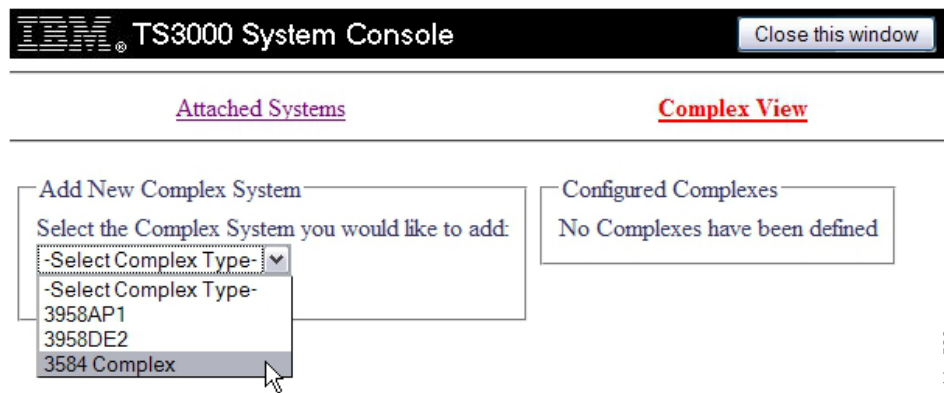


Figure 62. 3584 Complex Screen.

7. Enter a **3584 Complex Name** and click **Add Complex**.

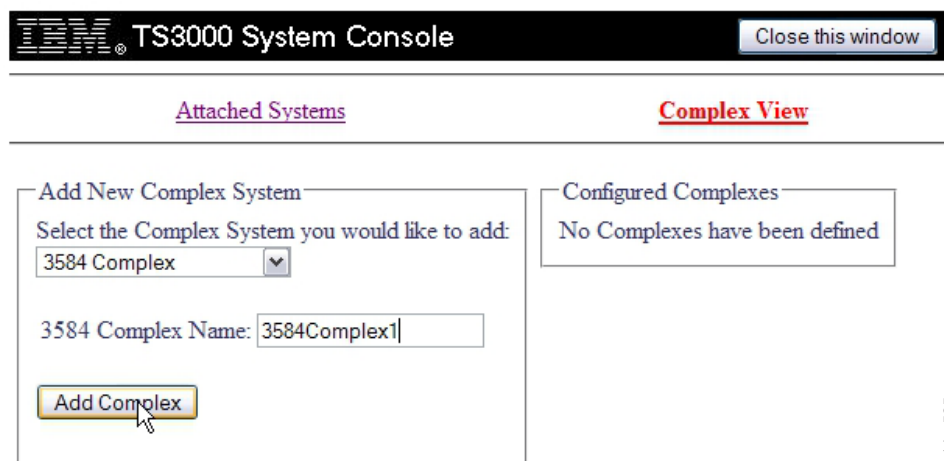


Figure 63. Add Complex Screen.

The following screen will be displayed showing the complex just added.

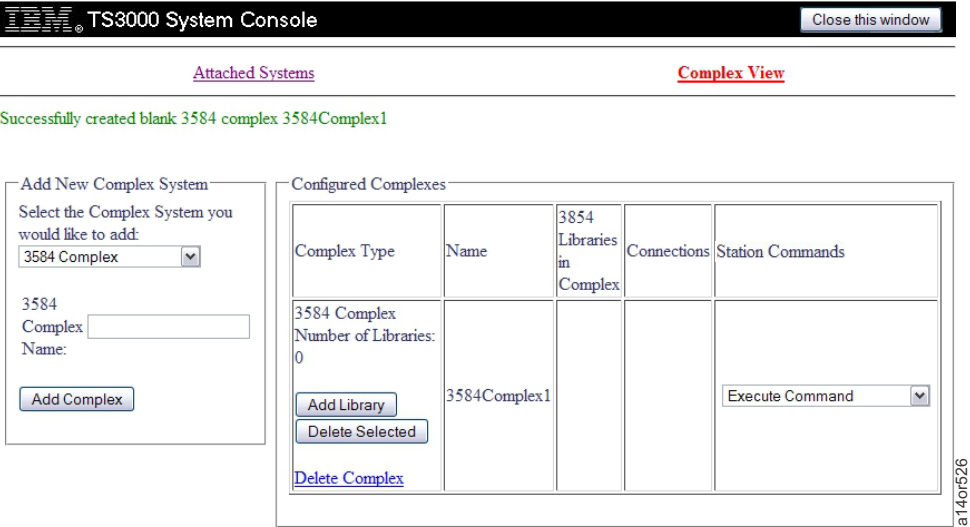


Figure 64. 3584 Complex Added.

8. Click **Add Library**.

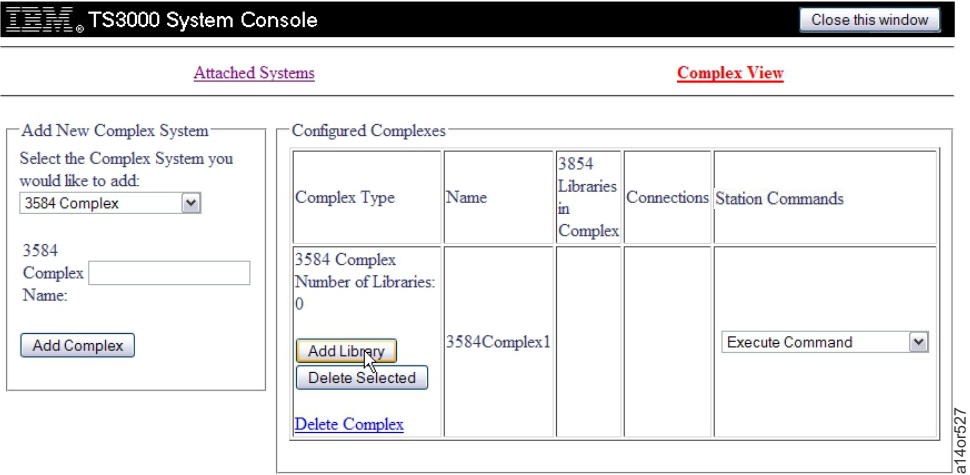


Figure 65. Add Library.

- Under “Add Library to 3584 Complex” click on the **Select 3584** dropdown box and select the first library in the shuttle span. Click **Apply**.

IBM TS3000 System Console

Close this window

Attached Systems Complex View

Add New Complex System

Select the Complex System you would like to add:

3584 Complex

3584 Complex Name:

Add Complex

Configured Complexes

Complex Type	Name	3584 Libraries in Complex	Connections	Station Commands
3584 Complex	3584Complex1	0		Execute Command

Add Library

Delete Selected

Delete Complex

Add Library to 3584 Complex

Select 3584

Select 3584

13AAA16 - 13AAA16

7822329 - 7822329

13AAA14 - cities

a14or528

Figure 66. Add Library to 3584 Complex.

- The following screen shows the added library.

IBM TS3000 System Console

Close this window

Attached Systems Complex View

3584 library 13AAA16 successfully added to 3584Complex1

Add New Complex System

Select the Complex System you would like to add:

Select Complex Type

3584 Complex

Number of Libraries: 1

Add Library

Delete Selected

Delete Complex

Configured Complexes

Complex Type	Name	3584 Libraries in Complex	Connections	Station Commands
3584 Complex	3584Complex1	1	000000000000	Execute Command

13AAA16

13AAA16

a14or529

Figure 67. Add Library.



11. Select **Add Library** to add the next 3584 library in the shuttle span. The screen now shows TWO libraries. **Note:** To delete a library, select a box under “3584 Libraries in Complex” and click **Delete Selected**.

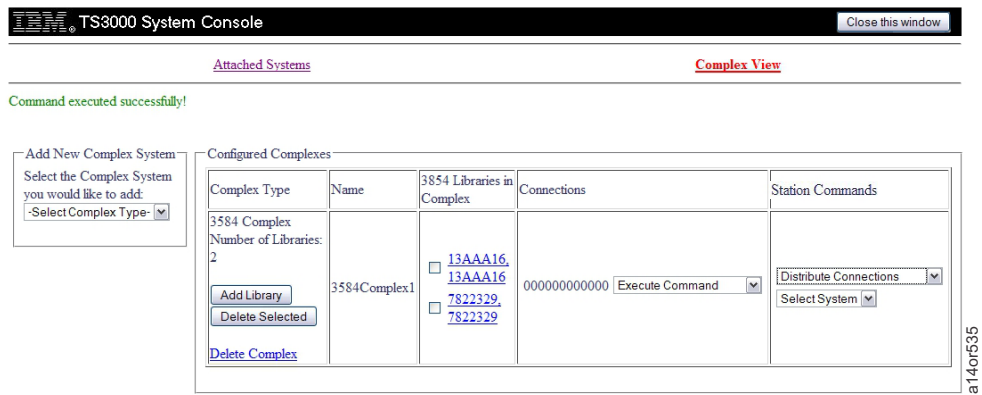


Figure 68. Add Second Library in Shuttle Span.

12. Click on the serial number of each library in the “3584 Libraries in Complex” column to bring up the Web Specialist for each library. Click **Library > Shuttle Stations**. Verify that the shuttle stations are assigned to the correct logical library for each library.
13. See the following screen. In the “Station Commands” box, use the **Execute Command** dropdown box to select **Discover Connections**.

**Note:** The Discover Connections command is a process where the shuttle car will move and discover all the stations in a shuttle connection. It will then send the data gathered to all other libraries in the shuttle span.

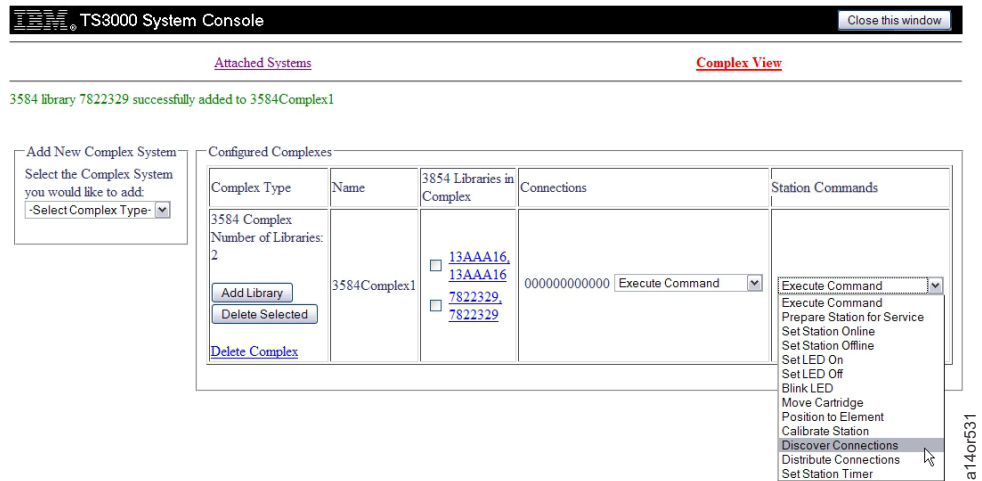


Figure 69. Discover Connections.



14. In the “Station Commands” box, under the **Select System** dropdown box, select the IP address of the library where the shuttle car is currently located.

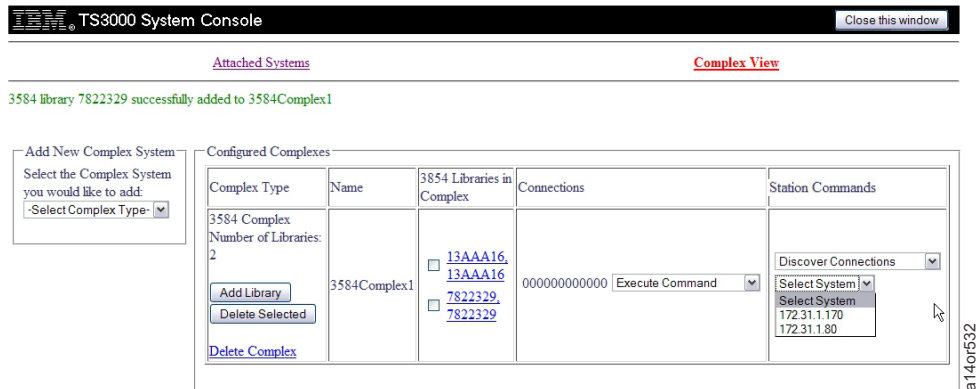


Figure 70. Select System Where Car Located.

15. See the following two screens. Under **Select Station** dropdown box, select the station number. In the following example the station is located in frame 3. Service Bays are **NOT** included in the frame count.
16. Click **Execute** and **OK**.

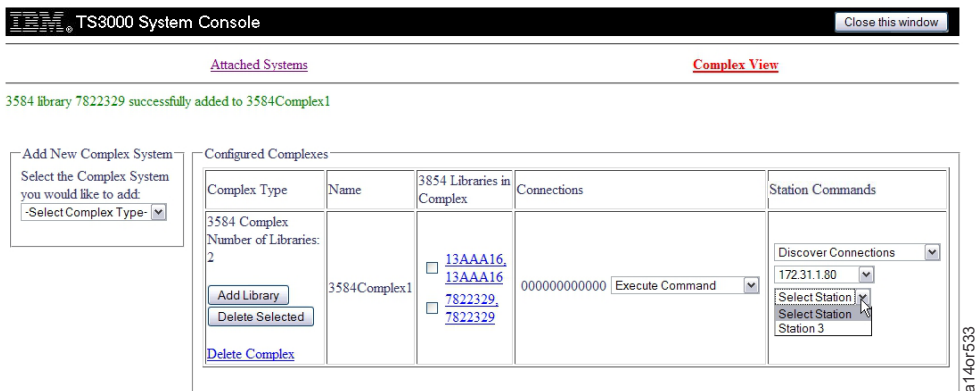


Figure 71. Select Station.

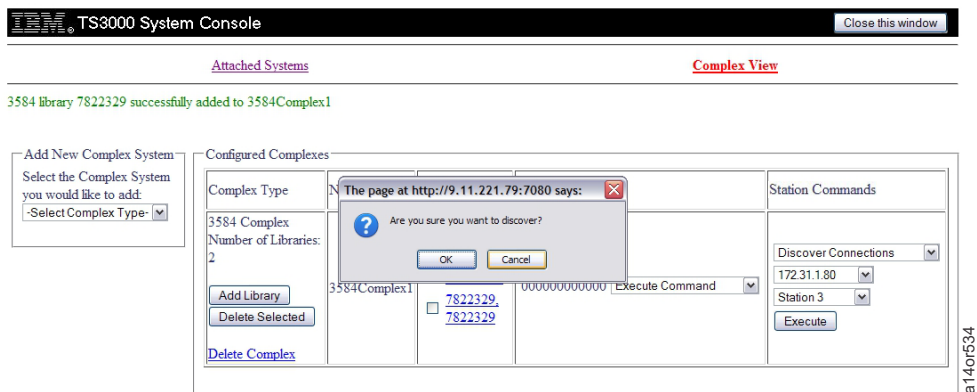


Figure 72. Execute Select Station.

17. See the following screen. In the “Station Commands” box, use the **Execute Command** dropdown box to select **Distribute Connections**.

**Note:** The Distribute Connections command is a process where the shuttle car sends the data from the Discover process to each library in the shuttle span.

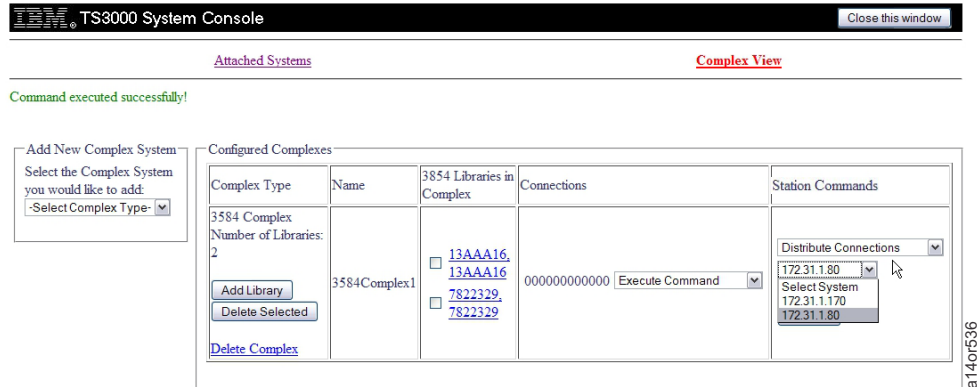


Figure 73. Distribute Connections - Select Next Library in Shuttle String.

18. In the “Station Commands” box, under the **Select System** dropdown box, select the IP address of the library where the shuttle car is currently located.
19. See the following screens. Under **Select Station** dropdown box, select the station number. In the example below the station is located in frame 3. Service Bays are **NOT** included in the frame count.
20. Click **Execute** and **OK**.

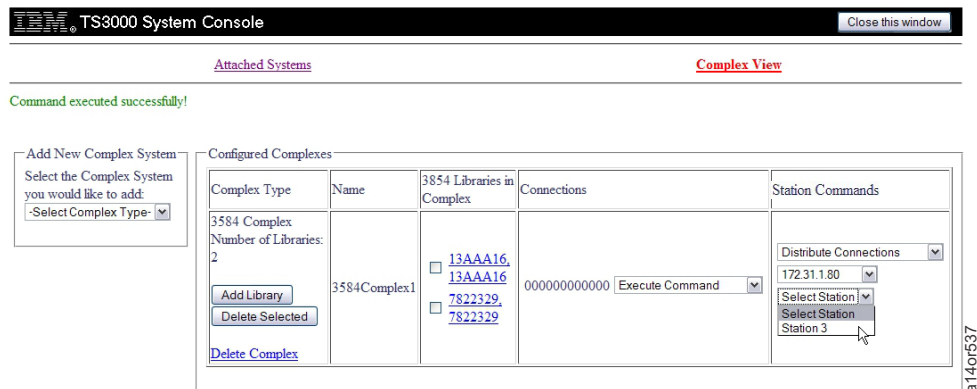


Figure 74. Select Station.

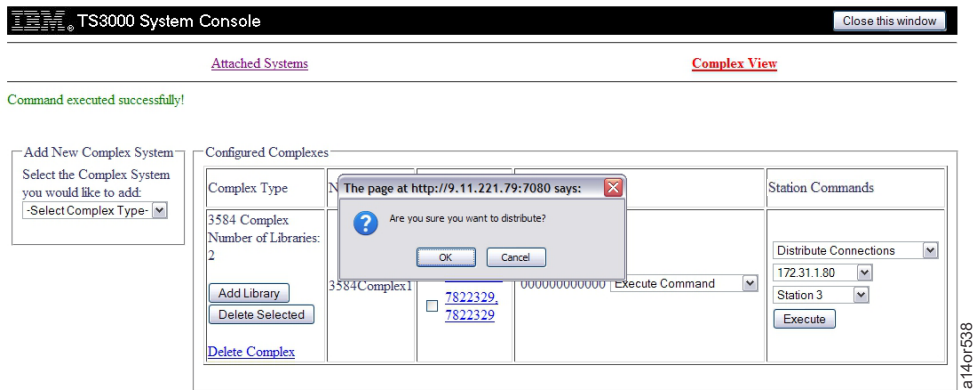


Figure 75. Select Station - Execute.

21. Repeat steps 13 on page 52 through 20 on page 54 for each shuttle span.
22. Ask the customer to run a host discovery command (SCS). The shuttle map is now created.
23. See the following screens. Go to the Web User Interface of each library in the span. Click on **Shuttle View X** where 'X' is the selected library, and verify the configuration is correct.

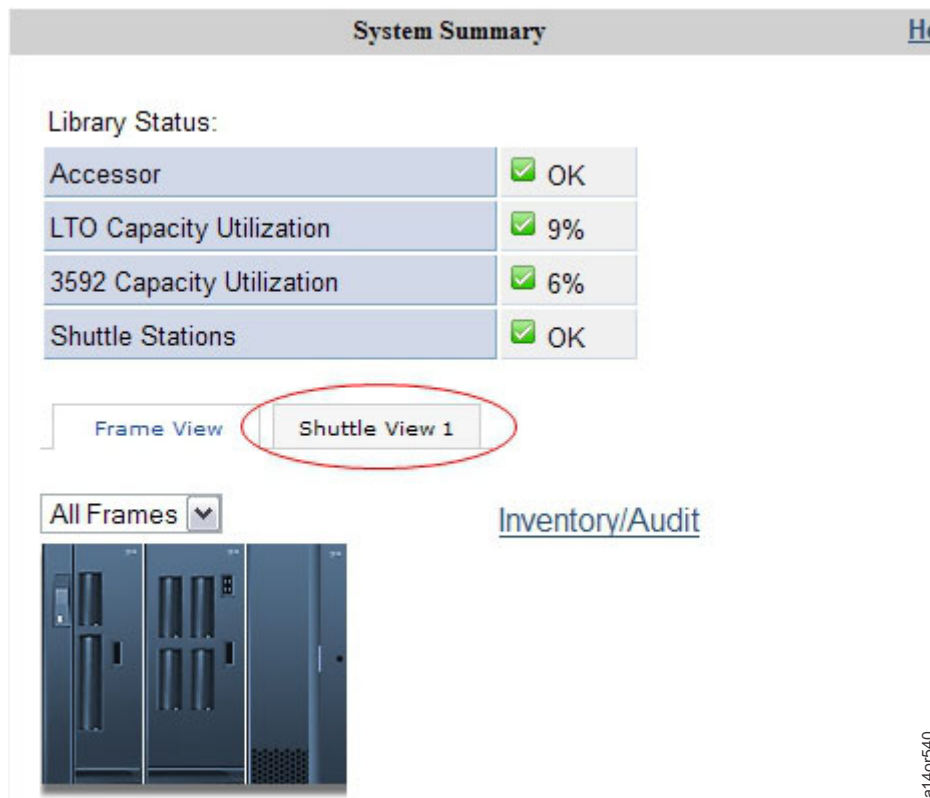


Figure 76. Web UI Shuttle View.

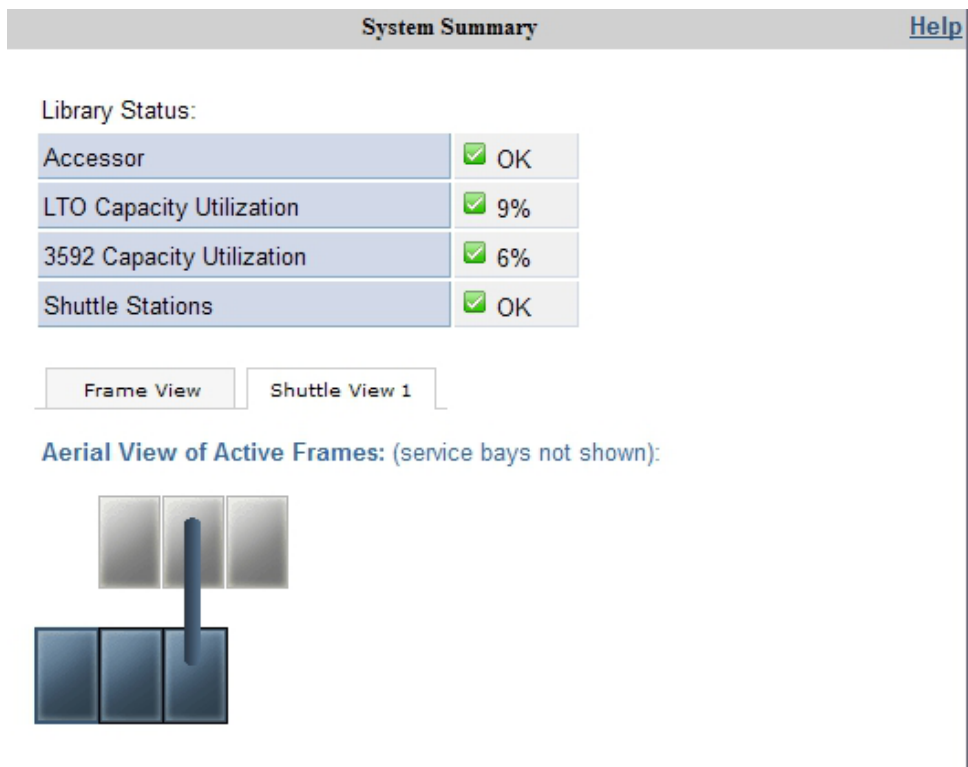


Figure 77. Web UI Shuttle View.

24. If the configuration and connections are good, this verifies that the host discovery was successful.
25. Under **Connections**, use the **Execute Command** dropdown box to select **Connection Verify** which will retrieve and move a diagnostic cartridge to each station in the connection. Do this for each span in the complex. Connection Verify commands can be run concurrently.

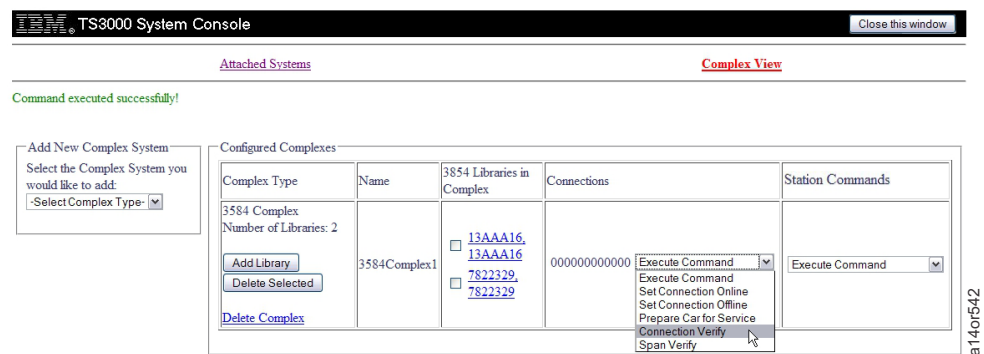


Figure 78. Connection Verify.

26. Under **Connections**, use the **Execute Command** dropdown box to select **View/Set Connection Serial**. Type in the serial number of the connection on the label located on the base station (where the agency label is located) and click **Update**.
27. Do the above step for each connection in the complex.

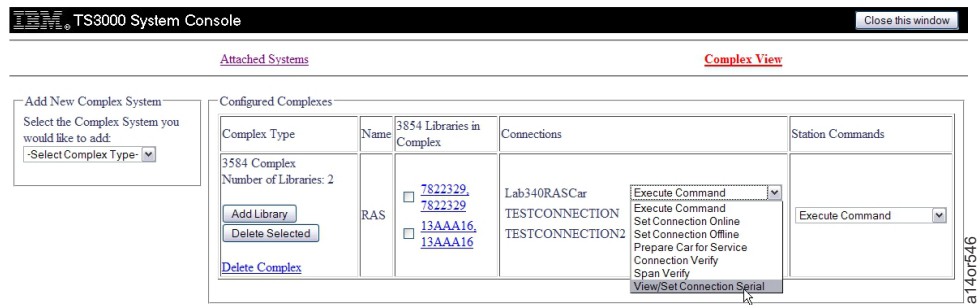


Figure 79. View/Set Connection Serial.

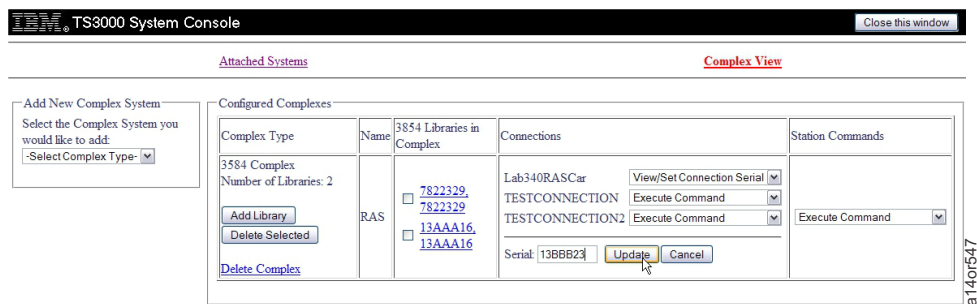


Figure 80. Connection Serial Number.

28. When completed, click **Close this window** to close the screen.
29. After successful completion, turn the system over to the customer.
30. Go back to the Shuttle Feature Code install instructions to complete the installation.

## Installing the DS6000 Graphical User Interface

Use this procedure to install the DS6000 graphical user interface (GUI). Only perform this procedure if you are attaching a TS7740 (3957) with a 3956 CC6 to the TSSC.

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **Browser Functions > DS6000 GUI Functions > Install GUI**. A terminal window appears, and prompts you to insert the DS6000 Graphical User Interface CD-ROM.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to install the GUI. Refer to “RAS Menus” on page 162. The **RAS Menu** will execute the same functions as the system console version. The same screen shown in Figure 81 will appear if the RAS Menu option is selected (**TSSC Menus > External GUI Options > DS6000 GUI Options > Install DS6000 GUI**).

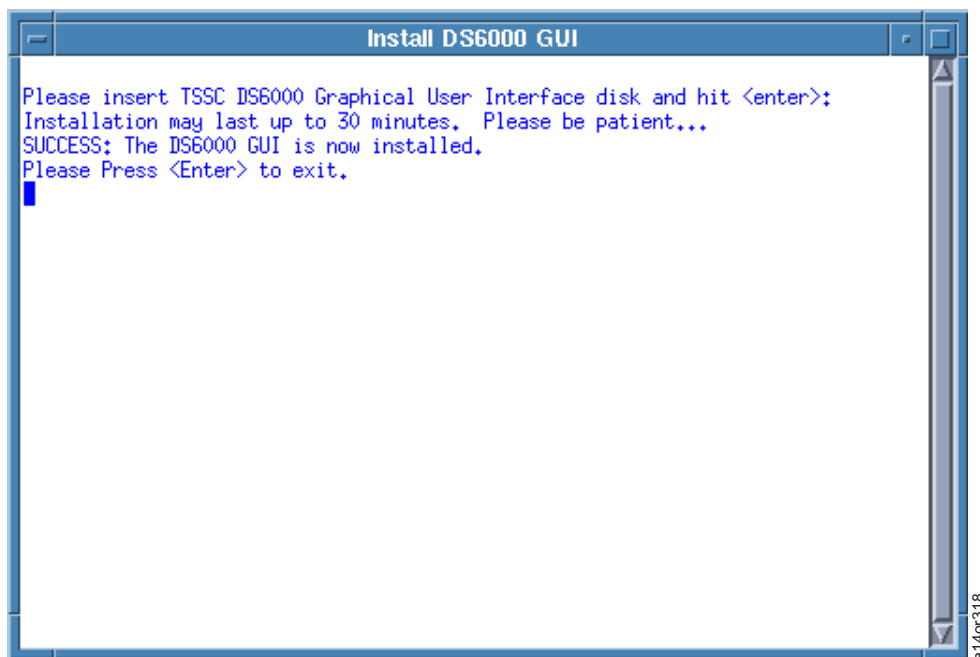


Figure 81. Install DS6000 GUI

3. Insert the CD-ROM, and press **Enter**. Installation of the GUI begins. This can take as long as 30 minutes to complete.
4. The message “SUCCESS” displays when the installation is complete. Remove the CD-ROM from the TSSC.

**Note:** After you add an attached DS6000 system you must log out and log back in again to have access to the TSSC DS6000 menu options.

## Installing the Storage Manager Graphical User Interface

Use this procedure to install the Storage Manager graphical user interface (GUI). Only perform this procedure if you are attaching a 3957-V06/V07 (with a DS4000 cache), 3957-VEA/VEB, 3958-DD1, 3958-DD3, 3958-DD4, or a 3958-AP1 to the TSSC.

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

Be sure to follow the installation screens exactly, as you must make sure to **not install the Support Monitor in code level 10.50 or greater.**

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **Browser Functions > Storage Manager GUI Functions > Install GUI**. A Terminal window that is similar to Figure 81 on page 58 appears and prompts you to insert the appropriate Storage Manager Graphical User Interface CD-ROM.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to install the GUI. Refer to “RAS Menus” on page 162. The **RAS Menu** will execute the same functions as the system console version. (**TSSC Menus > External GUI Options > Storage Manager Options > Install Storage Manager**)

3. Insert the CD-ROM, and press **Enter**. Installation of the GUI begins. This can take as long as 30 minutes to complete.

If you have a previously installed Storage Manager GUI, you will be presented the current levels of code installed as well as the level you are currently installing. If you are installing the 10.50 level or later of Storage Manager GUI, the *Versions to be installed:* section will be blank. Press **y** to continue with the install.

4. If you are installing the 10.50 level or later GUI, continue through the following screen shots. If you are installing the 10.36 GUI continue at step 6 on page 62

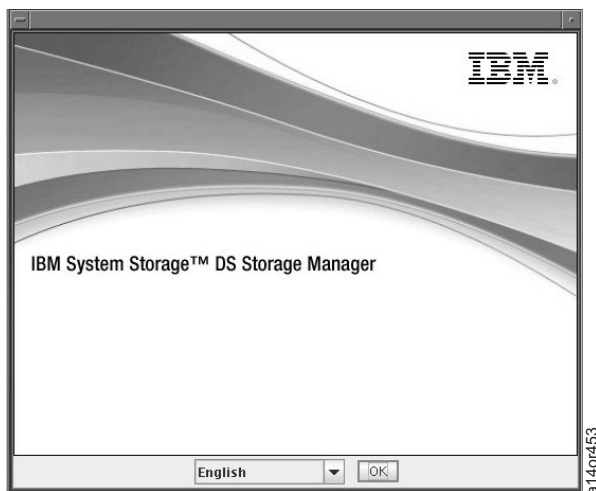


Figure 82. Welcome Screen

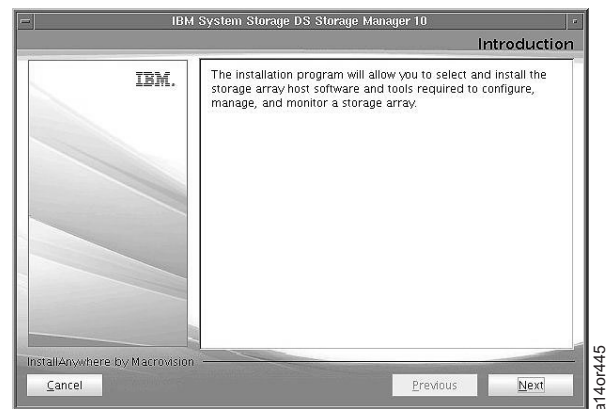


Figure 83. Introduction Screen





Figure 84. Copyright Statement

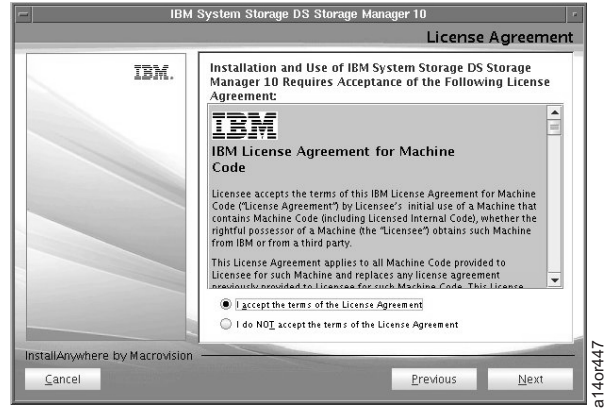


Figure 85. License Agreement



Figure 86. Overwrite Warning



Figure 87. Select Custom Installation Type

5. Make sure the checkbox next to the Support Monitor entry is **NOT** checked (if it shows as an option). All other entries should remain checked. See the following screen.



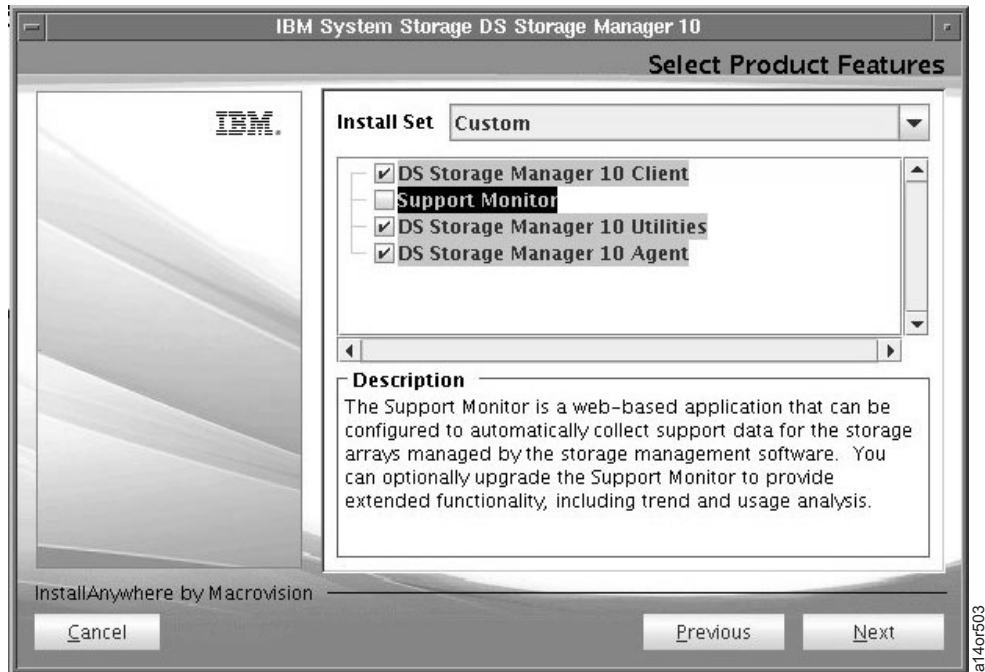


Figure 88. Support Monitor entry is **NOT**

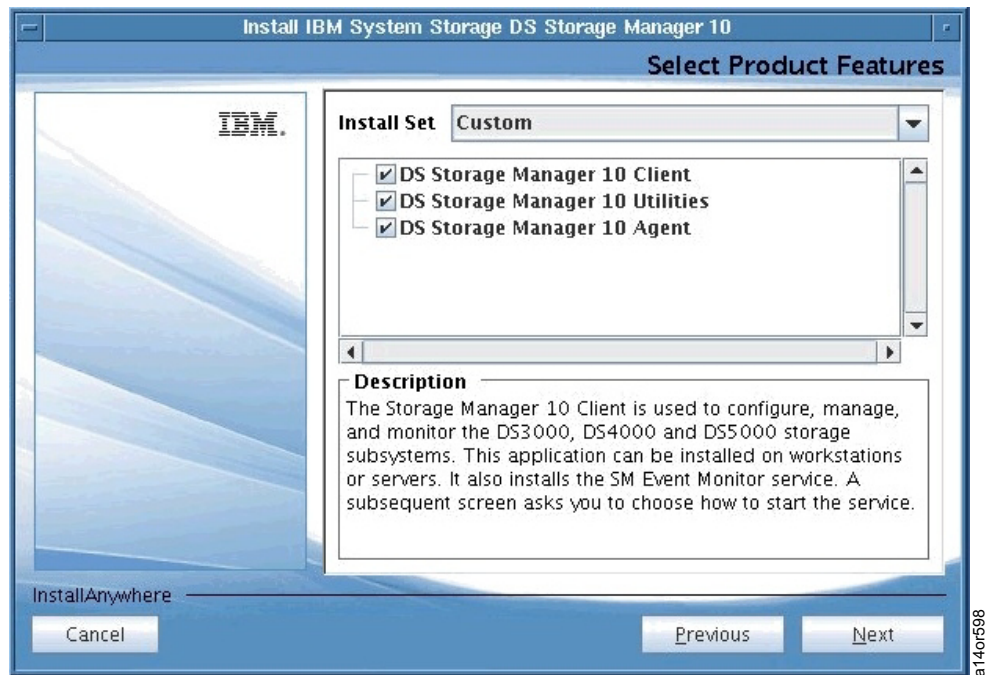


Figure 89. Support Monitor entry not shown.

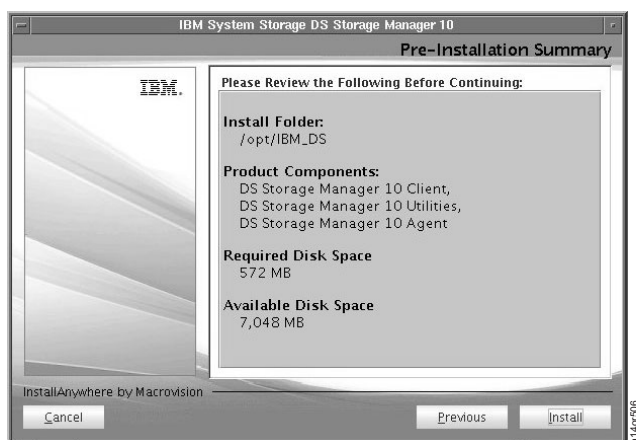


Figure 90. Pre-Installation Summary

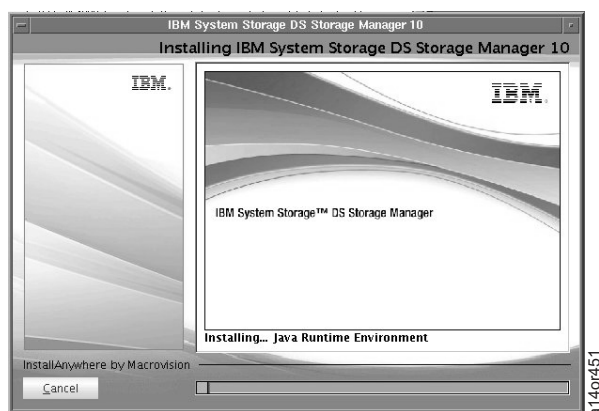


Figure 91. Installing the GUI



Figure 92. Install Complete

6. The message "SUCCESS" displays when the installation is complete. Remove the CD-ROM from the TSSC.

## Installing the ProtecTIER Manager Graphical User Interface

Use this information to install the ProtecTIER Manager graphical user interface (GUI). Use this information only if you are installing a 3958 system to the TSSC.

To read about launching the GUI, see "Launching the ProtecTIER Manager Graphical User Interface" on page 185.

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. Select **Browser Functions > ProtecTIER Functions > Install GUI**. You are prompted to insert the CD into the TSSC CD drive. Press **Enter**. Installation of the GUI begins.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to install the GUI. Refer to "RAS Menus" on page 162. The **RAS Menu** will execute the same functions as the system console version. (**TSSC Menus > External GUI Options > ProtecTIER GUI Options > Install ProtecTIER GUI**)

3. You see the Introduction screen in Figure 93 on page 63. Click **Next**.

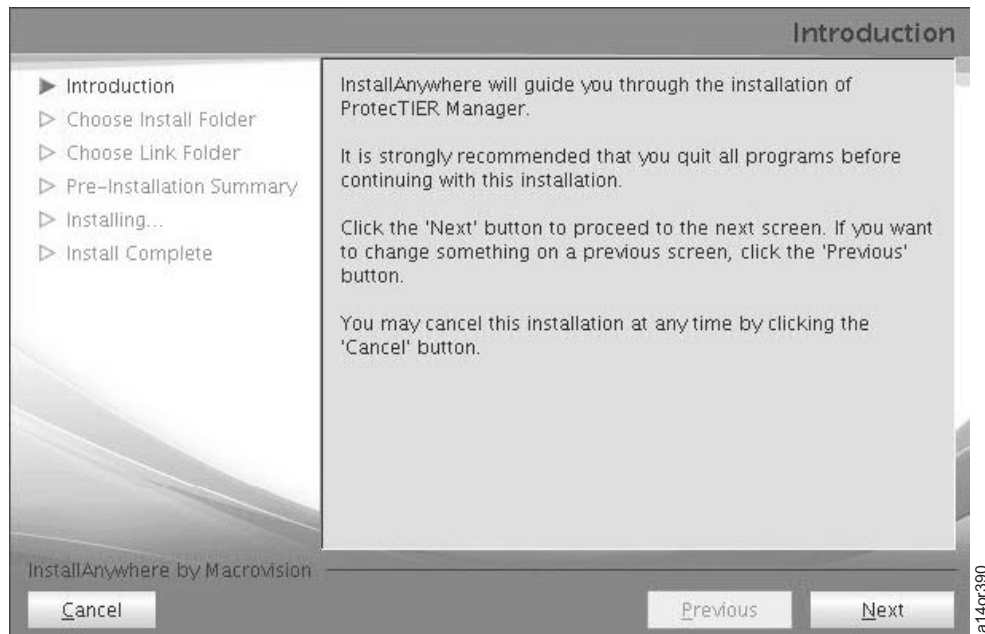


Figure 93. Introduction to ProtecTIER Manager InstallAnywhere Screen

4. Read and accept the terms which are depicted on the License screen (not shown). Select **I accept both the IBM and the non-IBM terms**, and click **Next**.
5. You see Figure 94. This screen shows you where the ProtecTIER Manager software will be installed.

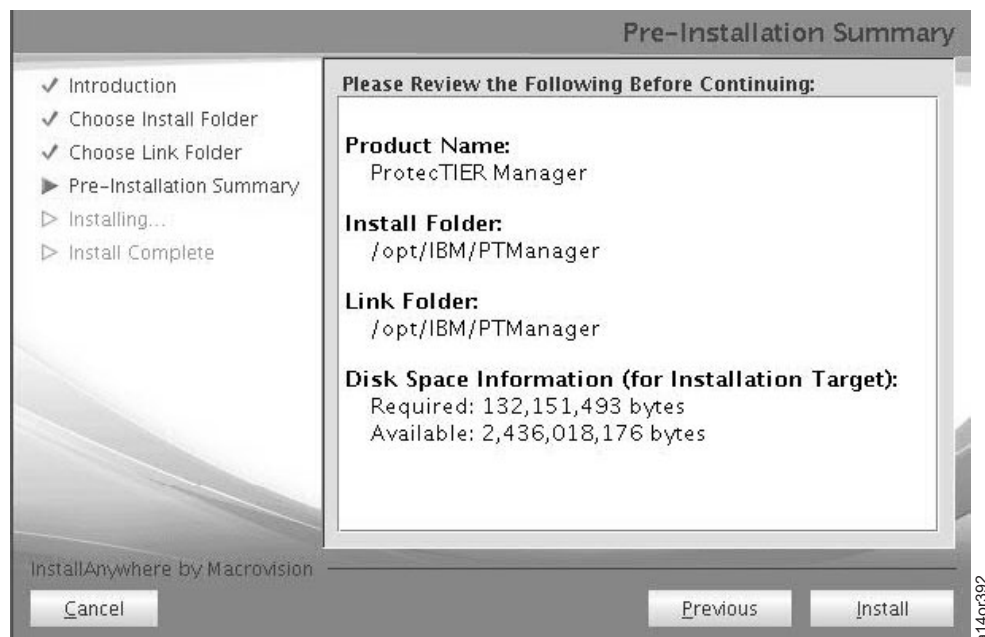


Figure 94. Pre-Installation Summary Screen

6. Click **Install** to continue. You see an Installing ProtecTIER Manager screen (not shown).
7. When the installation successfully completes, you see an Install Complete screen (not shown). Click **Done**.

## Upgrading the ProtecTIER Manager Graphical User Interface

Use this information to upgrade the ProtecTIER Manager graphical user interface (GUI). Use this information only if you are installing a 3958 machine to the TSSC.

To read about launching the GUI, see “Launching the ProtecTIER Manager Graphical User Interface” on page 185.

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. Select **Browser Functions > ProtecTIER Functions > Upgrade GUI**.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to upgrade the GUI (**TSSC Menus > External GUI Options > ProtecTIER GUI Options > Upgrade ProtecTIER GUI**). Refer to “RAS Menus” on page 162.

3. You will be informed that the existing version of ProtecTIER Manager will be uninstalled before updating. Continue by typing **y** and press Enter.
4. The uninstall program will launch and you will see the Uninstall ProtecTIER Manager window shown in Figure 95. Click **Uninstall**.

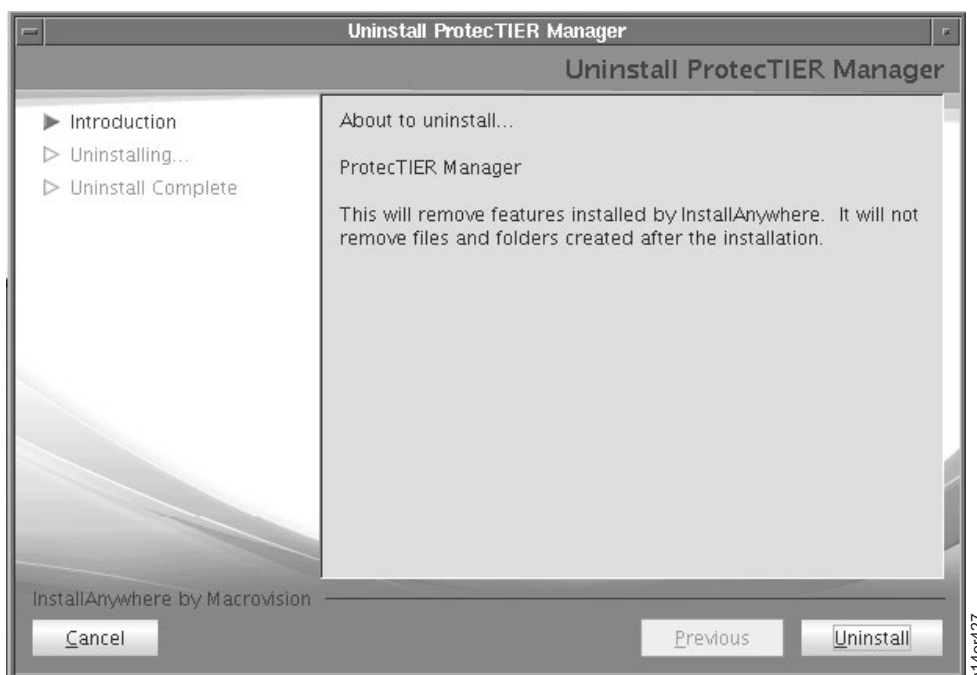


Figure 95. Uninstall ProtecTIER Manager Window

5. A message will be displayed stating that all items were successfully uninstalled. Press **Done** to close this window.
6. Next you are prompted to insert the ProtecTIER Manager Graphical User Interface disk. Insert the CD and press **Enter**.
7. You will see the Figure 96 on page 65. Click **Next**.

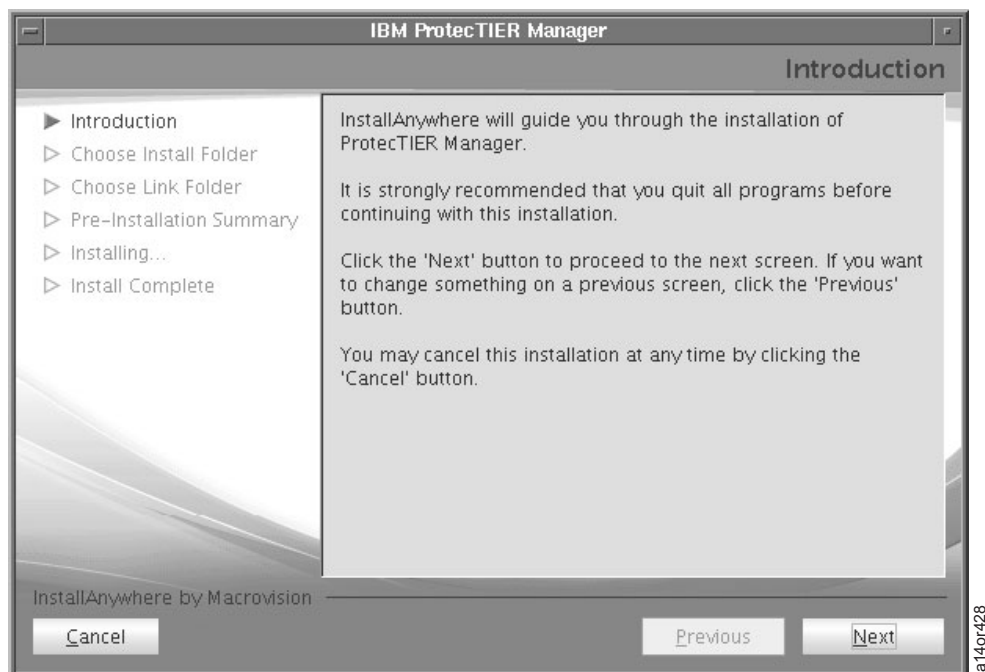


Figure 96. Introduction Screen

8. Read and accept the terms which are depicted on the License screen (not shown). Select **I accept both the IBM and the non-IBM terms**, and click **Next**.
9. You will see the Figure 97. This screen shows you where the ProtecTIER Manager software will be installed.

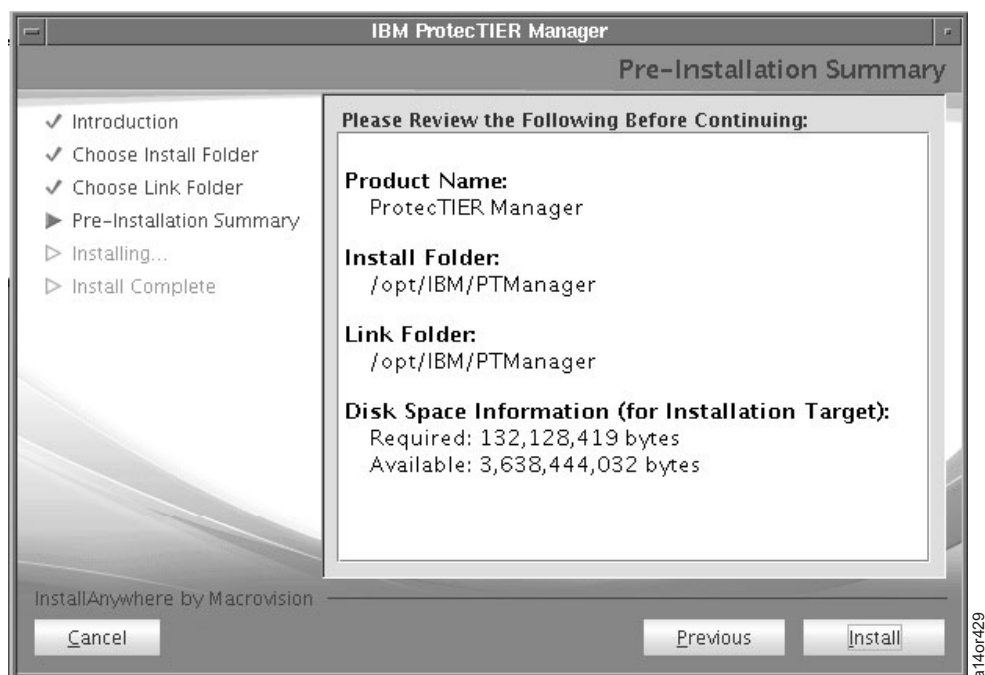


Figure 97. Pre-Installation Summary Screen

10. Click **Install** to continue. You see an Installing ProtecTIER Manager screen (not shown).

11. When the installation successfully completes, you see an Install Complete screen (not shown). Click **Done**.

## Console Settings

The TSSC system console comes pre-configured with the default IP address 172.31.1.1, subnet mask 255.255.0.0, and hostname 'tssnet1,' on the Internal Network Interface. The IMC system console comes pre-configured with the default IP address 172.31.1.2, subnet mask 255.255.0.0, and hostname 'tssnet1,' on the Internal Network Interface (see Figure 98 on page 67). This interface is used to communicate with the tape subsystems, as seen in Figure 2 on page 6. Normally, you do not need to change these settings, since the system console operates on a dedicated network.


The system console External and Grid Network Interfaces do not come pre-configured. You must use the Console Settings dialog box to set up these interfaces, if you are to use Intranet (high-speed) call home method or Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager function.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu, which is shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. The Login screen displays, as shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. You see the Console Configuration Application screen shown in Figure 57 on page 46.

**Note:** To login remotely from another system console, you must obtain an Authentication ID (see "Login Options" on page 43). Launch your browser, and enter the system console location into the Address field. Enter your Authentication ID into the Username field and your password into the Password field. Click **OK** to start the Console Configuration utility.

4. Click **Console Settings**. You see Figure 98 on page 67.




**TS3000 System Console**
Close this window

[IP Settings](#)
[Security Settings](#)
[SSL Certificates](#)
[Custom Firewall Settings](#)

**Internal Network Interface**

IP Address:  .  .  .

Subnet Mask:  .  .  .

Status: **Connected**

**External Network Interface**

Enable: ☐ IPv4 ☐ IPv6 ☒ Both

☐ Obtain IP Address Automatically

IP Address:  .  .  .

Subnet Mask:  .  .  .

Obtain IPv6 Address: ☐ Using DHCP ☐ Using Stateless Autoconfig ☒ Manually

IPv6 Address:  :  :  :  :  :  :  :  /

Status: **Connected**

**Grid Network Interface**

Enable: ☐ IPv4 ☐ IPv6 ☒ Both

IP Address:  .  .  .

Subnet Mask:  .  .  .

Grid Gateway:  .  .  .

Obtain IPv6 Address: ☐ Using DHCP ☐ Using Stateless Autoconfig ☒ Manually

IPv6 Address:  :  :  :  :  :  :  :  /

IPv6 Gateway:  :  :  :  :  :  :  :

Status: **Disconnected**

**System Properties**

Hostname:

Domain Name:

DNS1:  .  .  .

DNS2:  .  .  .

DNS3:  .  .  .

IPv6 DNS1:  :  :  :  :  :  :  :

IPv6 DNS2:  :  :  :  :  :  :  :

IPv6 DNS3:  :  :  :  :  :  :  :

Search Domain 1:

Search Domain 2:

Search Domain 3:

Default Gateway:  .  .  .

IPv6 Default Gateway:  :  :  :  :  :  :  :

Figure 98. Console Settings

5. You can change the entries by typing new values in the indicated fields. If you must change the hostname or the internal IP address of the system console, you must also change this information on each tape system attached to the system console. See “Tape System Call Home Setup for VTS, VTC, and Tape Controllers” on page 27 or “Using 3494 ATL or 3953 Enterprise Library Controller Web Specialist to Change TSSC Settings” on page 35 to perform these additional tasks.

**Note:** See “Feature Codes” on page 7 to locate external ports for Grid and External Network Interfaces.

- All network interface entries display their status as either **Connected** or **Disconnected**. These designations signify whether the TSSC sees a working connection at each interface, and they can be used to help troubleshoot connectivity problems.
6. Contact your network administrator to obtain an unused Grid IP address if you plan to set up Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager (AOTM) for the IBM TS7700 Virtualization Engine. To set

up AOTM, connect your Grid network to the Grid Network Interface that is located in the back of your server. See Figure 8 on page 11, Figure 10 on page 12, and Figure 12 on page 13 for locations. Use “Setting Up Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager” on page 22 to enter the connection settings. Return here after you set up and AOTM.

**Note:** The Grid Network Interface should only be used for TS7700 peer-to-peer networks with the AOTM function. Unless previously mentioned, other uses are not supported.

7. Contact your network administrator to obtain an internet connection, if you selected the IBM Intranet or Autoselect call home methods. To set up the broadband interface, connect the internet connection to the External Ethernet Interface that is located in the back of your server. See Figure 8 on page 11, Figure 10 on page 12, or Figure 12 on page 13 for location. Enter the information for this interface into the External Network Interface input area depicted in Figure 98 on page 67.

**Notes:**

- The External Network Interface should only be used for call home purposes. Unless previously mentioned, other uses are not supported.
- When you set up the External Network Interface, you might have to enter a default gateway setting. Obtain this setting from your network administrator, and enter the address into the Default Gateway input area of Figure 98 on page 67.
- After you enter an address, you can test the interface by pinging another location on the customer network. Click **Network Information** from the screen in Figure 57 on page 46 for this option.
- The External and Grid networks can both be assigned IPv6 addresses. This can be done manually through DHCP (if a DHCPv6 server is running on the network) or by using IPv6 Stateless Auto-configuration.
- If IPv6 is enabled for External, the IPv6 DNS and IPv6 Default Gateway entries appear in System Properties.
- Selecting IPv4 hides these entries if they are not being used. Selecting IPv6 hides the IPv4 entries.

8. Click **Save Changes**.

## Security Settings

Use this page to create, modify, delete, and assign authentication policies. There are two types of policies for authentication, System Storage™ Productivity Center or native LDAP using Microsoft Active Directory (MSAD). LDAP use is dictated by the customer's environment, so you must collect the pertinent information from the customer when creating policies and logging in to the TSSC.

Use this information to update Security settings.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu, which is shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**.
3. Use the customer user or a user with administration role to have access to these settings.
4. From Figure 247 on page 186, select **Console Settings > Security Settings**. You see the screen shown in Figure 100 on page 70:

**Note:** Only the customer user, and users with administration role, have access to modify Security Settings, Roles Management, and SSL Certificates.

## Policy Name

The name of the policy that defines the authentication settings. The policy name is a unique value that is composed of one to 50 Unicode characters. Blank spaces and special characters are not permitted.

## Primary Server URL



The primary URL for the Storage Authentication Service. The value in this field is composed of one to 254 Unicode characters and takes one of the following formats:

```
https://<server_address>:secure_port/TokenService/services/Trust
ldap://<server_address>:port
```

**Note:** If this value is a Domain Name Server (DNS) address you must activate and configure a DNS server on the **Console Settings > IP Settings** page.

Enter values for any of the optional fields you want to define:

### Alternate Server URL

The alternate URL for the Storage Authentication Service if the primary URL cannot be accessed. The value in this field is composed of one to 254 Unicode characters and takes one of the following formats:

```
https://<server_address>:secure_port/TokenService/services/Trust
ldap://<server_address>:port
```

Notelist:

The server address value in the Primary or Alternate Server URL can be an IP or DNS address. Valid IP formats include:

### IPv4

Is 32 bits long, consists of four decimal numbers, each ranging from 0 to 255, separated by periods, like:

```
98.104.120.12
```

### IPv6

Is an 128-bit long hexadecimal value enclosed by brackets and separated into 16-bit fields by colons, like:

```
[3afa:1910:2535:3:110:e8ef:ef41:91cf]
```

Leading zeros can be omitted in each field, so that :0003: can be written as :3:. A double colon (::) can be used once per address to replace multiple fields of zeros. For example,

```
[3afa:0:0:0:200:2535:e8ef:91cf]
can be written as:
[3afa::200:2535:e8ef:91cf]
```

If the Primary or Alternate Server URL uses the https protocol, a certificate for that address must be defined on the SSL Certificates page or retrieved with the Retrieve Certificates.

### Policy Scope

Select the scope of the policy as follows:

- **Remote:** The authentication policy will apply only on remote access
- **Local:** The authentication policy will apply only on local access (Login directly on the machine)
- **Both:** The authentication policy will apply to both local and remote accounts

Policy applies only: ☐ Remote ☐ Local ☒ Both

a14or606

Figure 99. Policy Scope

IBM TS3000 System Console Close this window

[IP Settings](#) **[Security Settings](#)** [SSL Certificates](#) [Custom Firewall Settings](#)

Authentication Policies  
Active policy: **Policies disabled**

	Policy Name	Type
<input type="radio"/>	SASpolicy	Storage Authentication Service
<input type="radio"/>	LDAPpolicy	LDAP

[Assign Policy](#) [Unassign Policy](#) [Delete Policy](#) [Cancel](#)

Policy Configuration

\*Policy Type:  
☐ Direct LDAP ☐ Storage Authentication

\*Policy Name

\*Primary Server URL

[Retrieve Certificate](#)

Alternate Server URL

\*Base Distinguished Name

☐ LDAP Attributes

[New Policy](#) [Save Changes](#) [Edit Policy](#) [Cancel](#)

Test user authentication and authorization.

User ID:

Password:

[Test](#)

a14or596

Figure 100. Security Settings

### Creating a Storage Authentication Service (SAS) policy or Direct LDAP policy:

1. Click **New Policy** in the Policy Configuration panel to enable the configuration fields.
2. Select the policy type **SAS** or **Direct LDAP**.
3. Enter values for the following required fields:

### Server Authentication

Values in the following fields are required if WebSphere® Application Server security is enabled on the WebSphere Application Server hosting the Authentication Service.

#### User ID

The user name used with HTTP basic authentication for authenticating to the Storage Authentication Service. This field supports a maximum length of 254 Unicode characters.

#### Password

The password used with HTTP basic authentication for authenticating to the Storage Authentication Service. This field supports a maximum length of 254 Unicode characters.

The screenshot shows a 'Policy Configuration' window. At the top, it says '\*Policy Type:' with two radio buttons: 'Direct LDAP' and 'Storage Authentication' (which is selected). Below this is '\*Policy Name' with a text box containing 'SASpolicy'. Then '\*Primary Server URL' with a text box containing 'https://127.0.0.1:8080/TokenService/services/Trust'. There is a 'Retrieve Certificate' button below the URL. Then '\*Alternate Server URL' with a text box containing 'https://127.0.0.2:8080/TokenService/services/Trust'. A note states: 'A user ID and password are required if authentication is enabled on the server hosting the authentication service.' Below the note are '\*User ID:' with a text box containing 'Admin' and '\*Password:' with a masked text box containing '.....'. At the bottom are four buttons: 'New Policy', 'Save Changes', 'Edit Policy', and 'Cancel'. On the right side of the dialog, there is a vertical text label 'a14or591'.

Figure 101. Creating Storage Authentication Policy

## Direct LDAP

Values in the following fields are required.

### User Distinguished Name

The user distinguished name used to authenticate to the LDAP authentication service. This field supports a maximum length of 254 Unicode characters. For example:

CN=Administrator,CN=users,DC=mycompany,DC=com

If you selected Add Direct LDAP Policy in Step 2, enter values for LDAP Attributes:

### Base Distinguish Name

The LDAP distinguished name (DN) that uniquely identifies a set of entries in a realm. This field is required but blank by default. The value in this field is composed of one to 254 Unicode characters.

### Username Attribute

The attribute name used for the username during authentication. This field is required and contains the value uid by default. The value in this field is composed of one to 61 Unicode characters.

### Group Member Attribute

The attribute name used to identify group members. This field is optional and contains the value member by default. This field can contain up to 61 Unicode characters.

## Group Name Attribute

The attribute name used to identify the group during authorization. This field is optional and contains the value cn by default. This field can contain up to 61 Unicode characters.

## Username filter

Used to filter and verify validity of an entered username. This field is optional and contains the value (uid={0}) by default. This field can contain up to 254 Unicode characters.

## Group Name filter

Used to filter and verify validity of an entered group name. This field is optional and contains the value (cn={0}) by default. This field can contain up to 254 Unicode characters.

The screenshot shows a 'Policy Configuration' dialog box. It has several sections: 'Policy Type' with radio buttons for 'Direct LDAP' (selected) and 'Storage Authentication'; 'Policy Name' with a text box containing 'LDAPpolicy'; 'Primary Server URL' with a text box containing 'ldap://127.0.0.1:8080' and a 'Retrieve Certificate' button; 'Alternate Server URL' with an empty text box; '\*Base Distinguished Name' with a text box containing 'CN=Administrator,CN=users,DC=mycompany,DC=com'; and a section for LDAP attributes with a checked checkbox 'LDAP Attributes'. Below this are five rows of labels and text boxes: 'Username Attribute:' with 'uid', 'Group Member Attribute:' with 'member', 'Group Name Attribute:' with 'cn', 'User name filter:' with '(uid={0})', and 'Group name filter:' with '(cn={0})'. At the bottom are four buttons: 'New Policy', 'Save Changes', 'Edit Policy', and 'Cancel'. A vertical text 'a14of595' is on the right side of the dialog box.

Figure 102. Creating LDAP Policy

**Note:** These fields will depend on the customer's individual network configuration. Consult with the customer to collect the necessary values.

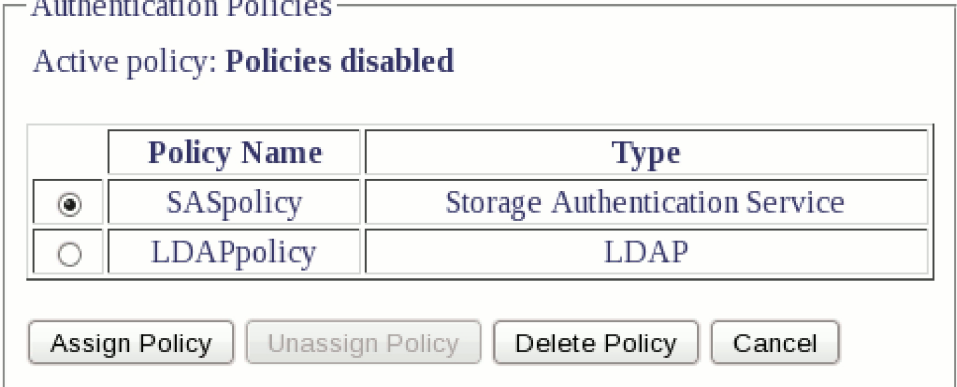
4. Click **Save Changes** to save the policy.

## Notes:

- The Retrieve Certificates option will retrieve certificates for both the primary and alternate server.

### Edit Policy

1. In the Authentication Policies Panel (Figure 103) select the policy to be edited.
2. Click **Edit Policy**, the fields will be enabled in the Policy Configuration panel.
3. Make the changes.
4. Click **Save Changes**.



Authentication Policies

Active policy: **Policies disabled**

	Policy Name	Type
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	SASpolicy	Storage Authentication Service
<input type="radio"/>	LDAPpolicy	LDAP

Assign Policy Unassign Policy Delete Policy Cancel

a14or592

Figure 103. Policies Panel

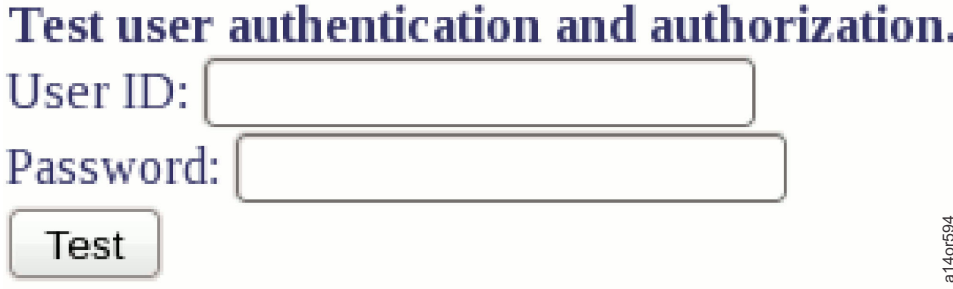
### Notes:

- If the URL changed, it is necessary to Retrieve another Certificate
- If the policy name changed, a new policy will be created
- You are required to re-enter the Authentication Password to save any changes made to SAS policies
- Every time a policy is edited, it must be re-tested before it can be assigned as the active policy

### Test Policy

This section is to test policies already saved. With this function you can verify that the configuration of the policy is correct.

1. Enter a valid user and password.
2. Click **Test**.



**Test user authentication and authorization.**

User ID:

Password:

Test

a14or594

Figure 104. Test Policy

Notes:

- This function is only available on policies already saved.
- Before assigning a policy, the policy should be tested to guarantee a correct log in.

### **Assign Policy**

1. In the Authentication Policies Panel (Figure 103 on page 73) select the policy.
2. Test the policy in the right panel at the bottom to make sure that is correctly configured (figure [Test Policy figure above]).
3. Click **Assign Policy** in the Authentication Policies panel.

Notes:

- If the Policy has not been tested, you will not be able to assign the policy
- Only one policy can be active at a time.

### **Delete Policy**

1. In the Authentication Policies Panel (Figure 103 on page 73) select the policy to delete.
2. Click **Delete Policy**.

**Note:** When LDAP authentication is enabled, remote and local access is controlled by the LDAP server. Service access requires the user to authenticate through the normal service login and then authenticate again using the IBM service representative Direct LDAP Policy.

### **System Storage Productivity Center and Tivoli Storage Productivity Center**

You can use the System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC), a server operating with the Tivoli® Storage Productivity Center (TPC) software, as an LDAP proxy to enforce Access Controls on the TSSC.

### **Native LDAP**

You can use a Microsoft Active Directory (MSAD) Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server directly to centrally manage access controls on the TSSC.

### **SSL Certificates**

Use this page to display, add, and delete SSL Certificates.

If any SSL certificates have been retrieved, they are displayed in a table as shown in Figure 105 on page 75.

IBM TS3000 System Console

Close this window

[IP Settings](#)[Security Settings](#)[SSL Certificates](#)[Custom Firewall Settings](#)

SSL Certificates

	Alias	Issued To	Fingerprint (SHA Digest)	Expiration
<input type="radio"/>	sascert	CN=WIN-TLUVOSBNM9T, O=IBM, C=US	AF:22:65:1B:E9:C5:F9:24:39:AA:22:AD:79:A3:17:CA:12:36:5B:9	Thu May 27 21:05:50 UTC 2027

Delete Selected Entry

\*Alias

\*Server URL

\*Port

Retrieve Certificate

Cancel

a14of593

Figure 105. SSL Certificates Page

### Add SSL Certificate

1. Enter an Alias for the Certificate.
2. Type the URL.
3. Type the port.
4. Click **Retrieve Certificate**.

### Delete SSL Certificate

1. Select an SSL Certificate.
2. Click **Delete Selected Entry**.

## Roles Management

Use this section to review the system defined roles (Customer, Service and Administrator). Also it is possible to customize the user defined roles, each role has its description, role name and a set of the system console permissions, as shown in Figure 106. The Security Roles section is used to select one of the eight roles (three system roles and five custom roles). When a selection is made the settings for that role are displayed in the Role Settings section. The system roles have fixed settings and it is not possible to change these settings. The remaining five roles can be customized.

### Roles Management Location

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. You see the login prompt.
3. Type your credentials, then single click **Log in**.
4. Click **Console Settings**.
5. Click **Role Management** tab.

Security Roles	
	Name
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Customer
<input type="radio"/>	Service
<input type="radio"/>	Administrator
<input type="radio"/>	Custom 1
<input type="radio"/>	Custom 2
<input type="radio"/>	Custom 3
<input type="radio"/>	Custom 4
<input type="radio"/>	Custom 5

Apply Changes Cancel

Role Settings

Role Name: Customer --Apply Template--

Description: Access to the basic system configuration.

**System Console Permissions**

**\* Attached Systems**

☒ -Attached Systems

☐ -Complex View

**\* Backup/Restore**

☐ -Backup Console Configuration Data

☐ -Restore Console Configuration Data

**\* Call Home Queue**

☐ -Call Home Queue

☐ -Call Home Event Log

☐ -Failed Queue

**\* Call Home Settings**

Figure 106. Role Management

### Customize role

1. Go to the **Roles Management** page as described in the section above.
2. Select one of the custom roles.
3. Assign the role name and description.



4. Mark the system console permissions for this role, optionally by selecting a role in the **Apply Template** drop box, you can copy the permissions of one of the system roles.
5. Click the **Apply Changes** button for the changes to take affect. A message will show if the changes were applied successfully. See Figure 107.
6. To cancel the changes click on the **Cancel** button instead.

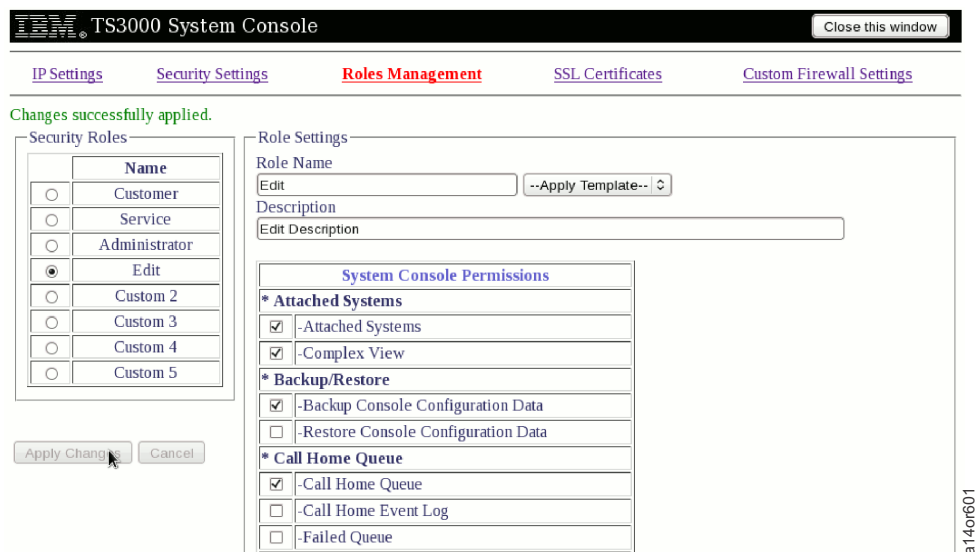


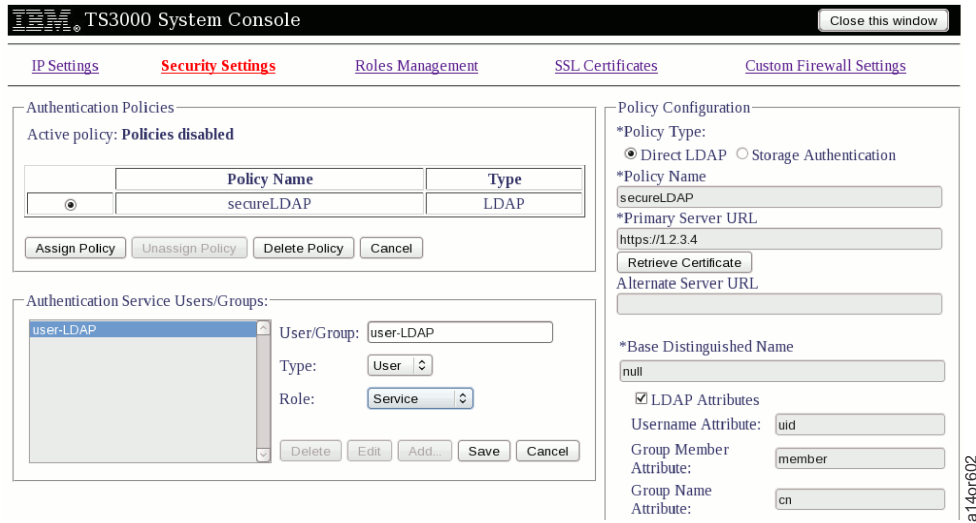
Figure 107. Customize Role

## Authentication Service Users/Groups

This section is part of the Security Settings, it allows to manage the users/groups access for a each one of the defined policies, once the policy has been defined in this section you can define the users and groups that have access throw the policy and also it is required to define a role for that user/group. Only the users/groups defined in the active policy have access to the pages defined by its defined role.

### Authentication Service Users/Groups Location

1. Right click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. You see the login prompt.
3. Type your credentials, then single click **Log in**.
4. See Figure 108 on page 78.
5. Click on **Console Settings**.
6. Click on **Security Settings** tab.



TS3000 System Console Close this window

[IP Settings](#) [Security Settings](#) [Roles Management](#) [SSL Certificates](#) [Custom Firewall Settings](#)

Authentication Policies  
Active policy: **Policies disabled**

	Policy Name	Type
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	secureLDAP	LDAP

Authentication Service Users/Groups:

User/Group	Type	Role
user-LDAP	User	Service

Policy Configuration

\*Policy Type:  
☒ Direct LDAP ☐ Storage Authentication

\*Policy Name  
secureLDAP

\*Primary Server URL  
https://1.2.3.4

Alternate Server URL

\*Base Distinguished Name  
null

☒ LDAP Attributes

Username Attribute: uid

Group Member Attribute: member

Group Name Attribute: cn

a14or602

Figure 108. Authentication Service Users-Groups

## Manage Authentication Service User/Groups

There are some restriction before you can manage the Authentication Service User/Groups for the Authentication Policies: It is not possible to add two identical entries and, the policy must exist. Please notice that if you delete the policy, all the entries in the Authentication Service User/Groups will be deleted with it.

1. Go to the **Security Settings** page as described in the previous section.
2. Select one of the Authentication Policies, this will show the current list of user and groups.
3. To show the details of any of the listed users/groups select it from the list in the left. The Name, Type and Role will be shown in the right.
4. To manage the authentication service users and roles you can follow one of the next functions:
  - **Deletion:** Select the desired entry from the list on the right and click on the Delete button.
  - **Edition:** Select the desired entry from the list on the right, click on the Edit button, edit the entry and click on the Save button. A message will show if the changes were applied successfully. See Figure 109 on page 79.
  - **Addition:** Click on the Add... button, enter the name of the User/Group and its Type and designed Role, click on the Save button. A message will show if the changes were applied successfully. See Figure 109 on page 79.
5. To cancel the Edition or Addition procedures click on the Cancel button.

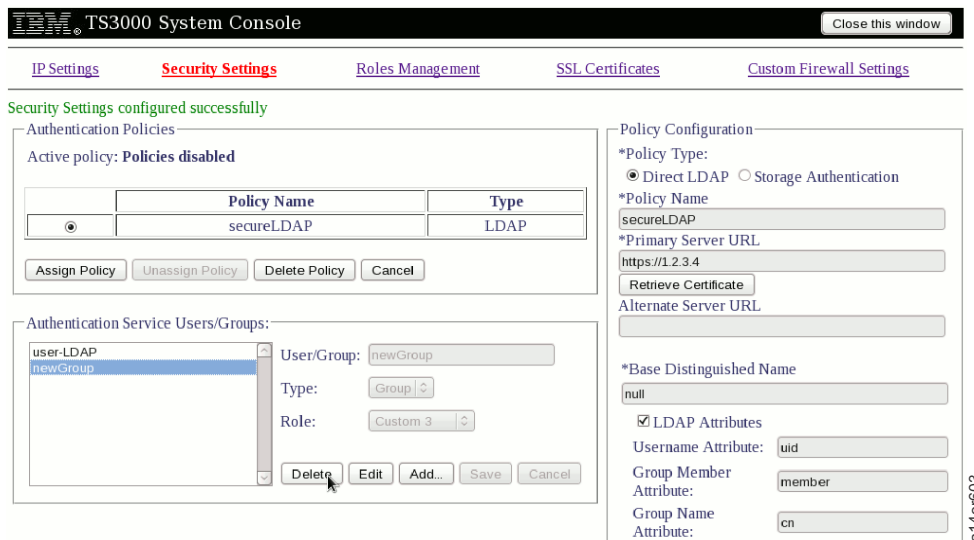


Figure 109. Manage Authentication Service Users-Groups

## Customizing Firewall Settings

### Attention:

- Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the code level.
- You must request and receive permission from the customer each time that you update firewall properties.

Use this information to update the firewall settings.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. You see the login prompt shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. You see the menu shown in Figure 57 on page 46.
4. Select **Console Settings > Custom Firewall Settings**. You see the screen shown in Figure 110 on page 80.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to update firewall settings (**TSSC Menus > Network Settings > View and Update Firewall Settings**). Refer to “RAS Menus” on page 162.

Accept	Drop	Interface	Direction	Port Name	Port Number
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	IN	FTP	21
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	IN	HTTP	80
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	IN	HTTPS	443
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	External	IN	PING	ICMP
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	IN	SSH	22
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	IN	SSHTUNNEL	9088
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	IN	TELNET	23
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	IN	TSSCGUI	7080
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	External	OUT	DNS	53
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	OUT	FTP	21
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	External	OUT	HTTP	80
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	OUT	HTTPPROXY	N/A
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	External	OUT	HTTPS	443
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	External	OUT	PING	ICMP
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	OUT	SNMPTRAP	162
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	OUT	SSH	22
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	OUT	SSHTUNNEL	9088
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	OUT	TELNET	23
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	External	OUT	TSSCGUI	7080
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Grid	IN	COMM	9666
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Grid	IN	FTP	21
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Grid	IN	HTTP	80
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Grid	IN	HTTPS	443
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Grid	IN	PING	ICMP
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Grid	IN	SSH	22
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Grid	IN	TELNET	23
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Grid	IN	TSSCGUI	7080
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Grid	OUT	COMM	9666
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Grid	OUT	FTP	21
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Grid	OUT	HTTP	80
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Grid	OUT	HTTPS	443
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Grid	OUT	PING	ICMP
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	Grid	OUT	SSH	22
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Grid	OUT	TELNET	23
<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Grid	OUT	TSSCGUI	7080

Cancel
Update Firewall Settings
Restore Defaults

a140r442

Figure 110. Customize Firewall Settings

- Click the radio button in the Accept column to authorize a port or in the Drop column to disallow a port name, then click **Update Firewall Settings** after you have made all your selections.

## Configuring Call Home Settings Electronic Customer Care

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. You see the login prompt shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. You see the menu shown in Figure 57 on page 46.
4. Select **Call Home Settings**. You see the screen shown in Figure 111.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to configure Call Home settings (**TSSC Menus > Call Home Functions**). Refer to "RAS Menus" on page 162.

**Note:** In the following steps, for any changes made to other than *Delay Call Home*, *Unlock Call Home*, or *Reset Modem*, you must scroll down, if necessary, and click **Apply**.

The screenshot shows the 'General Settings' window of the IBM TS3000 System Console. The window has a title bar with the IBM logo and 'TS3000 System Console', and a 'Close this window' button. Below the title bar are several tabs: 'General Settings' (selected), 'Location Settings', 'Phone Settings', 'Machine Settings', 'Disposition Settings', 'SNMP Settings', and 'AOS Settings'. The main content area is divided into two panes. The left pane is titled 'Call Home' and contains the following options: 'Enable Call Home' (checked), 'Delay Call Home' (button), 'Select Call Home Interface:' with radio buttons for 'Modem', 'Ethernet' (selected), and 'Autoselect', 'Call Home Communication Setup:' with a 'Modem Port:' dropdown set to '/dev/ttyS0' and a 'Reset Modem' button, 'Ethernet Communication:' with radio buttons for 'Direct Connection' (selected) and 'Connect Through HTTP Proxy', a checkbox for 'Proxy server requires authentication' (unchecked), and input fields for 'Proxy Address:' and 'Proxy Port:'. The right pane is titled 'Heartbeat' and contains 'Enable System Console Heartbeat' (checked) and 'Heartbeat interval:' set to '12' with a unit of 'Day(s)'. Below this is a 'Modem Connections' section with radio buttons for 'Allow Inbound' (selected) and 'Disallow Inbound'. At the bottom of the left pane are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons. On the far right edge of the window, the text 'a14or559' is visible.

Figure 111. General Settings Screen (Call Home and Heartbeat)

5. Select an interface to be used for call home. See Figure 111.
  - Modem
    - If you select the modem call home interface, the Modem Port selection box under Call Home Communication Setup enables.
    - If you select the modem port by using the Modem Port selection box: Select `"/dev/ttyS0"` (`"/dev/ttyS0"` is the serial port COM1 and `"/dev/ttyS1"` is serial port COM2, as labeled on the back of the system console).

**OR**

If the system console has two modems and has two analog telephone lines attached, in the Modem Port display, select `"/dev/ttyS1"` as the Call Home Modem Port.

**Notes:**

- Using this method will disable all broadband call home.

- If "/dev/ttyS1" is selected but unavailable, no call home activity will take place on the console and there will be no warning or error messages given.
- When two modems are installed, the modem on COM1 can be configured to be the inbound modem, and the modem on COM2 can be configured to be the outbound modem. If only one modem is installed, it must be installed on COM1, and it will be used for inbound and outbound communication.
- Call Homes that are present in the Call Home Queue will be sent home every 5 minutes to ensure the modem line is not always in use.
- IBM Intranet:
  - If you select the IBM Intranet call home interface, the Ethernet Communication section will enable, under the Call Home Communication Setup.
  - Select a method for broadband call home based on the customer's network configuration:
    - Direct Communication implies there is not an HTTP proxy between the configured TS3000 and the outside network to IBM. Selecting this method requires no further setup.
    - Connect Through HTTP Proxy implies there is a customer HTTP Proxy server which the customer requires all call home traffic to go through. When selecting this option, enter the Proxy IP Address and Proxy Port. If necessary, enter any required proxy server username and password. The customer should supply these values.

**Notes:**

- Using this method will disable all modem call home transmission (outbound only).
- Ensure that the External Network Interface has been set up in Console Settings.
- Obtain the IP Address, Subnet Mask, and Default Gateway from the customer.
- Port 443 (HTTPS) must be free for outbound traffic. You can verify this with the customer if a firewall is present.
- If ECC has been locked due to too many failed tries, you can clear the lock by clicking the "Unlock Call Home" button as shown in Figure 112.
- Call Homes will be sent home back-to-back until the Call Home queue is empty.

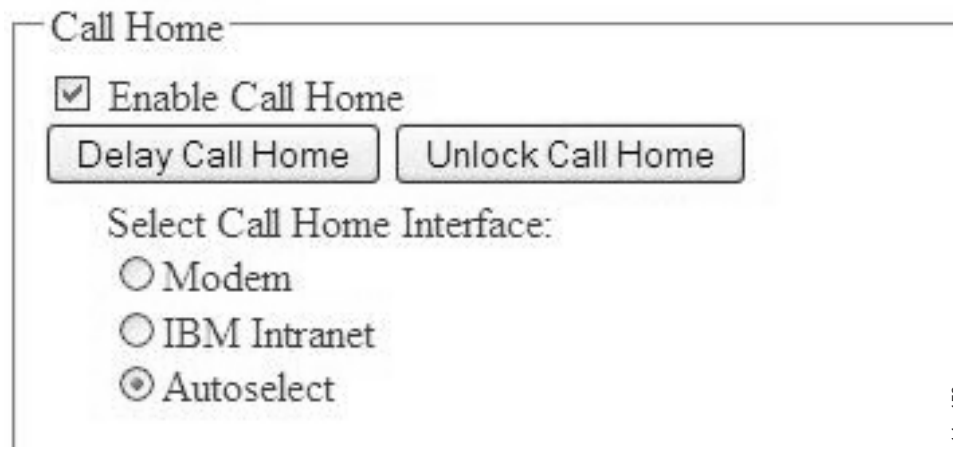


Figure 112. Unlock Call Home

- Autoselect
  - If you select Autoselect call home interface, the system console will first attempt to call home over the IBM Intranet. If an intranet interface failure is encountered, call home is attempted over the modem. Both Modem Port and Ethernet Connection sections should become enabled below.
  - Select a modem port and Ethernet Communication settings, as described in Modem and IBM Intranet section above.

**Notes:**

- If you have a 3958DD1/DD3/DD4/AP1 attached, you will add the values you recorded in the note in Step 10 on page 84 into the fields of Figure 117 on page 87.
- To determine whether you need to check the Enable Software Problem Call Home box in Figure 117 on page 87, contact your next level of support. They can help you to determine if this option is available in your region.
- If you are uncertain whether you need to check the Enable Software Problem Call Home box in Figure 117 on page 87, your next level of support can help you to determine if this option is available in your region.
- If you have selected Autoselect or IBM Intranet, the call home code will connect the TSSC to one of the following URLs.
- Call Homes that are present in the Call Home Queue will be sent home every 5 minutes to ensure the modem line is not always in use.

*Table 9. URL Table*

Hostname	IP	Port(s)	Description
eccgw01.boulder.ibm.com	207.25.252.197	443	ECC transaction gateway
eccgw02.rochester.ibm.com	129.42.160.51	443	ECC transaction gateway
www.ecurep.ibm.com	192.109.81.20	443	File upload for status reporting and problem reporting.
www6.software.ibm.com	170.225.15.41	443	File upload for status reporting and problem reporting. Proxy to testcase.boulder.ibm.com
www-945.ibm.com	129.42.26.224	443	Problem reporting server v4
www-945.ibm.com	129.42.34.224	443	Problem reporting server v4
www-945.ibm.com	129.42.42.224	443	Problem reporting server v4
www.ibm.com	129.42.56.216	80, 443	Service provider file (CCF) download
www.ibm.com	129.42.58.216	80, 443	Service provider file (CCF) download
www.ibm.com	129.42.60.216	80, 443	Service provider file (CCF) download
www-03.ibm.com	204.146.30.17	80, 443	Service provider file (CCF) download

6. Ensure that the customer's network is properly configured for ECC functionality.
7. If you want to enable the system console heartbeat, check **Enable System Console Heartbeat**, then select the day interval (usually set to 3). This is the number of days between heartbeats. Select **Apply**.  
If Software Problem Call Home is disabled, the call home packages are deposited in the /var/enc/SWCH directory. You may need to know this if your next level of support requests that you locate the call home package.
8. You may disallow inbound modem connections by selecting the **Disallow Inbound** option in the **Modem Connections** section and click **Apply**. This will allow outbound connectivity through the modem for call home while ignoring any incoming calls. To allow incoming calls, select the **Allow Inbound** option and click **Apply**.
9. From the top menu, select **Location Settings**. Figure 113 on page 84 appears.

**Note:** This screen has an 'Override tape system location settings' checkbox. If this box is **NOT** checked, the information on this screen will **NOT** be sent along with all Call Home records sent to



the TSSC from attached systems. If this box **IS** checked, information on this screen can be changed and sent with all Call Home records from attached systems. These changes will also be sent back to any attached 3957 and 3592 remote systems. It will therefore be unnecessary to update this information in those remote systems.

IBM TS3000 System Console

Close this window

General Settings Location Settings Phone Settings Machine Settings Disposition Settings SNMP Settings AOS Settings

Location Settings For This Site

Customer Business/Company Name\*: IBM

Customer Location\*: Tucson

Customer email address\*: user@company.com

Customer Phone Number (modem)\*: 1-123-555-1212

Customer Phone Number (voice)\*: 1-213-555-1212

Customer Offshift Phone Number:

☐ Override tape system location settings

(\*) Indicates a required field

Apply Cancel

a14or560

Figure 113. Site Location Settings Screen

Enter the information into the input areas of the Location Settings For This Site. The fields that require you to enter information are denoted by an asterisk. Select **Apply**.

10. From the top menu, click **Phone Settings**. Figure 114 appears. **This is required even if you have selected the IBM intranet option.**

IBM TS3000 System Console

Close this window

General Settings Location Settings Phone Settings Machine Settings Disposition Settings SNMP Settings AOS Settings

Configure the Call Home Phone Settings:

Phone List Selection

1. Select a country
2. If the country is United States or Canada, select a state or province
3. Select a location
4. Click an import button to import the selected location phone number to one of the 'to dial' fields below.
5. Modify the number to dial as required by your local telecommunications provider.

Note: If possible configure all four numbers with the last one(s) being nationwide toll free numbers.

Country: United States

State or Province (US and Canada): Arizona

Set Location : Phone Number Nationwide Toll : 1-800-586-3089

Dialing Options

☒ Tone Dialing

☐ Pulse Dialing

☐ Do not wait for dial tone

Dial Out Prefix: 9

Phone Numbers To Dial

First Number To Dial: 555-000 Import Phone Number 1

Second Number To Dial: 555-0001 Import Phone Number 2

Third Number To Dial: 1-800-555-0001 Import Phone Number 3

Fourth Number To Dial: 1-800-555-0002 Import Phone Number 4

Apply Cancel

a14or561

Figure 114. Call Home Phone Settings Screen



11. Choose one of the Dialing Options.

**Note:** The input areas in the Phone Numbers To Dial fields are limited. If a dial-out prefix such as '9' is needed to get to a dialing network, put the prefix number in the field that is labeled Dial Out Prefix. **This is required even if you have selected the IBM intranet option.**

In the Phone List Selection area, select a country, select a state or province (U.S.A. and Canada only), and select a location for the Location: Phone Number input area from one of the Phone Numbers To Dial fields.

Enter information in the Phone Numbers To Dial fields. (Remove the area code if system console will be placing a seven-digit call.)

Select **Apply**.

12. From the top menu, select **Machine Settings**. You see the Machine Settings screen in Figure 115 on page 86.

Enter information into the Machine Settings input areas. Enter a four-digit Machine Type (such as, 3494), a three digit model (such as, B20), and a Machine Serial Number, such as the example shown '1370806' for one of the attached systems. The machine serial number, entered as a seven-character alphanumeric, **with no dashes**, is developed from the first two digits and last five digits of the actual machine number. For example, 13-0070806 would be entered as 1370806.

**Note:** For TSSCs with 3958-DE2 or 3958-AP1 complexes attached, the complex's information may be entered into the **Machine Settings** section.

The system console periodically checks for responses from attached tape systems. If a system fails to respond, the following choices are available:

- Create and Send a Problem Report to RETAIN
- Create an Entry in the Console Log (only)
- Do nothing

The default selection is "Create and Send a Problem Report to RETAIN." However, either of the other choices is available for selection from this panel by clicking the appropriate button located next to the desired selection.

Mark any standby systems in the attached systems page to avoid the transmission of unnecessary call home records(see Step 6 on page 47). Make a selection from the Response Check for Attached Systems choices. Select **Apply**.

IBM TS3000 System Console Close this window

[General Settings](#) [Location Settings](#) [Phone Settings](#) **[Machine Settings](#)** [Disposition Settings](#) [SNMP Settings](#) [AOS Settings](#)

Machine Settings

Console problems will be reported to RETAIN using the machine type, model and serial number of one of the attached systems. Enter the machine type, model, and serial number of one of the attached systems in the fields below.

Machine Type

Machine Model

Machine Serial Number

Response Check for Attached Systems

The console is configured to check if attached systems respond to communication requests. In the event that an attached system fails to respond to the console communication request:

☒ Create and Send a Problem Report to RETAIN

☐ Create an Entry in the Console Log (only)

☐ Do Nothing

a14or562

Figure 115. Machine Settings Screen

- From the top menu, select **Disposition Settings** to develop, specify, or change a schedule for when you would like Disposition Code 2 records to be sent to the IBM server. The Disposition Settings screen in Figure 116 appears. In the Weekdays and the Weekends fields, choose on what days of the week and during what time periods you would like notices to be sent. Select **Apply**.

A Disposition Code 2 problem record is typically a lower severity problem which should be sent during normal business hours. The system console defaults to sending these records from 0900 to 1500 Monday through Friday.

IBM TS3000 System Console Close this window

[General Settings](#) [Location Settings](#) [Phone Settings](#) [Machine Settings](#) **[Disposition Settings](#)** [SNMP Settings](#) [AOS Settings](#)

Specify when a disposition code 2 problem record is sent to the IBM server. A disposition code 2 problem record describes a less severe problem. Usually a disposition code 2 problem record should be sent out during normal business hours.

Send disposition code 2 records during the following times:

Weekdays

Day	Always	Never	Sometimes	Send between	Time 1	and	Time 2
Monday	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Send between	09:00	and	15:00
Tuesday	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Send between	09:00	and	15:00
Wednesday	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Send between	09:00	and	15:00
Thursday	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Send between	09:00	and	15:00
Friday	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Send between	09:00	and	15:00

Weekends

Day	Always	Never	Sometimes	Send between	Time 1	and	Time 2
Saturday	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Send between	00:00	and	00:00
Sunday	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Send between	00:00	and	00:00

a14or563

Figure 116. Disposition Settings Screen

- Select **Apply** to enable the new disposition information, or **Restore Defaults** if you want to return to the defaults.

**Note:** Before ending the installation, ensure that you test the call home setup.

- From the top menu, select **SNMP Settings** to request to set up SNMP trap alerts. The two options for sending traps are:

- a. Send Traps for Call Home Failures - This option will alert the customer that the TSSC was unable to call home for one of three reasons: the failing machine is not entitled for call home, the file already is present in ECC, and the system is not attached to the TSSC.
- b. Send traps for Login/Logout - This option will alert the customer when a remote user logs into the TSSC.

After setting the trap types, the Community, IP or Hostname and Port need to be updated.

- c. Select SNMP version, 1, 2c, or 3. The default value is 1.
- d. The value for the Community field needs to match what is set in the customer's SNMP manager. The default value is set to **public**.
- e. The value for the IP or Hostname field should represent the destination server that hosts the SNMP manager. The default value is set to **localhost**.
- f. The value for the Port field should represent the port that the customer's SNMP manager is listening on. The default value is set to 162.

Figure 117. SNMP Settings screen

16. To test the SNMP settings, click the **Send Test Trap** button to send an SNMP trap to the configured recipient.
17. See **Figure 118 on page 88**. To configure Assist-on-Site (AOS), click the **AOS Settings** link at the top of the page.
  - To **Start**, **Stop**, or **Restart** the AOS service, click the corresponding button in the **AOS Configuration** section.
  - If you want to enable AOS Lights Out (unattended mode), place a checkmark next to **Enable AOS Lights Out** and click **Apply**. If you want Lights On (attended mode), uncheck the box next to **Enable AOS Lights Out** and click **Apply**.
  - If a customer is not using DNS, place a checkmark next to **Enable No-DNS mode**. You will be prompted to enter the IP address of the AOS relay server. If this is not known, click the **Default** button to populate the field with the last known IP address. Click **Apply**.
  - Connect Through HTTP Proxy implies there is a customer HTTP Proxy server which the customer requires all call home traffic to go through. When selecting this option, enter the Proxy IP Address and Proxy Port. If necessary, enter any required proxy server username and password. The customer should supply these values.
  - You may add and delete AOS port forwarding targets in the **Manage Port Forwarding** section.
  - To add a new port forwarding entry, enter the Hostname or IP address of your port forwarding target in the text field under **Host Target**. Enter the destination port in the text field under **Port**. Click the **Add** button to save this entries.

- To delete a port forwarding entry, place a checkmark next to one or more entries in the port forwarding target list. Click **Delete Selected Entries** to remove these port forwarding targets.
- Adding or removing port forwarding entries will restart the AOS service.

Figure 118. AOS Settings Screen

## Initializing the TSSC Serial Port for connection to local devices

Complete this task to initialize a serial port on the TSSC.

Use this procedure to initialize a serial port on the TSSC. You use the serial port to set the baud rate (or 'data transmission speed').

1. Attach to the TSSC the null modem adapter and serial cable that shipped with the TSSC.
2. Set the TSSC serial port baud rate for the serial connection by using one of the following procedures.
  - “Setting Baud Rate for TSSC Serial Port from TSSC”
  - – OR – –
  - “Setting Baud Rate for TSSC Serial Port from Remote Connection” on page 90

### Setting Baud Rate for TSSC Serial Port from TSSC

Complete this task to set the baud rate for a TSSC serial port from the TSSC.

Perform the following steps to set the baud rate for a TSSC serial port:

1. After logging in to the TSSC, from the TSSC desktop, right-click on the desktop to see Figure 119 on page 89.

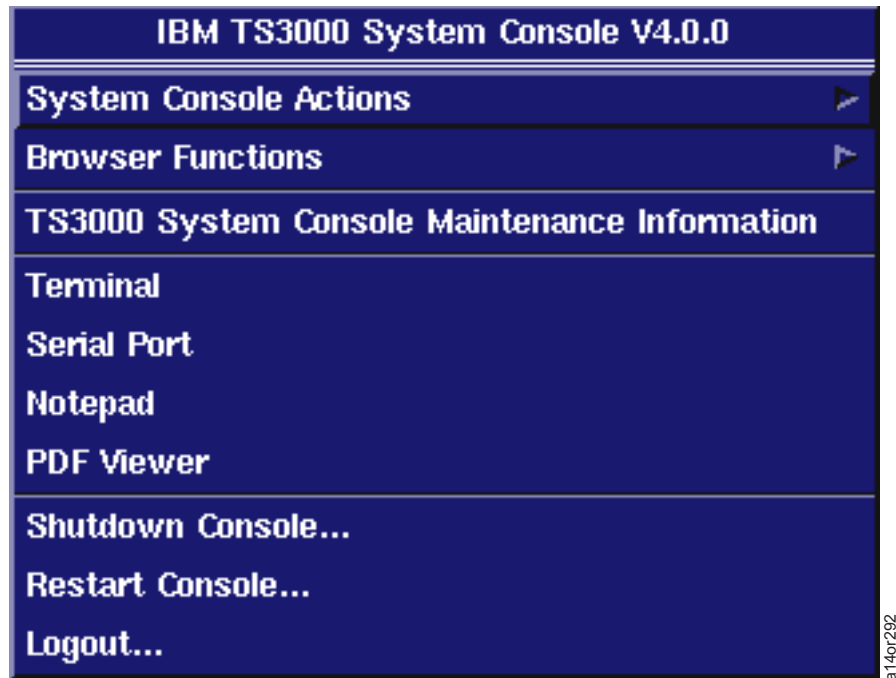


Figure 119. Serial Port Selection on TSSC Screen

2. Select **Serial Port**. You see Figure 120. Type the number of the port speed (baud rate) for the device to which you will be connecting. The message 'Connected' appears. Press **Enter**.

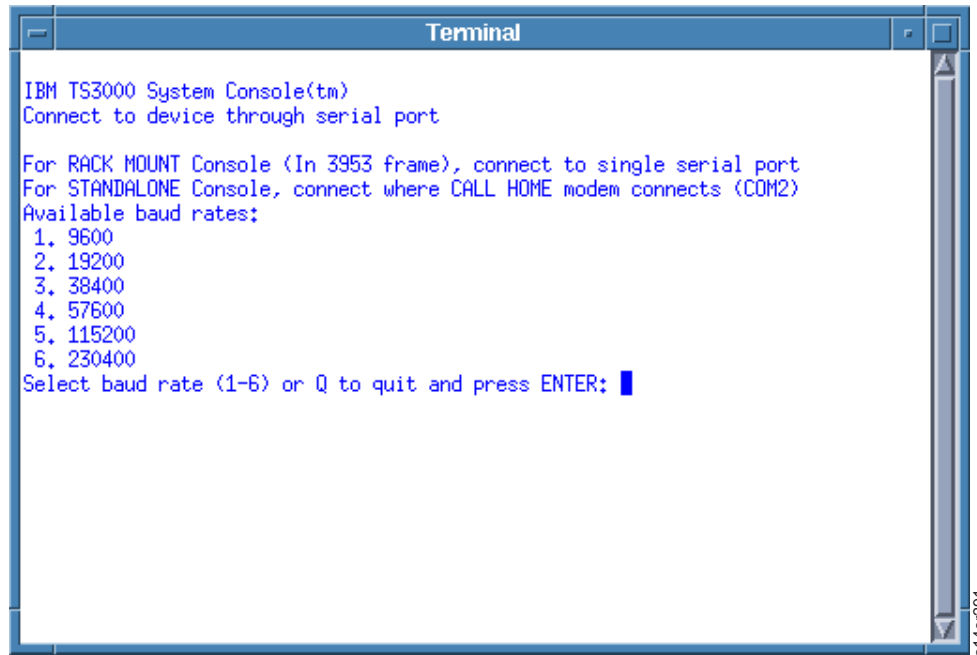


Figure 120. Baud Rate Screen - From TSSC

**Notes:**

- You may need to try various baud rates if 19200 (2) does not work for your application.

- After you have completed setting the baud rate, if unexpected characters appear while you are typing, you may have set a baud rate that is not correct for your device. Refer to the documentation for the device to which you have connected, and confirm that you are using the correct baud rate for your device.
- Use the ~. command to end the connection from the TSSC serial port at any time.

## Setting Baud Rate for TSSC Serial Port from Remote Connection

Complete this task to set the baud rate for a TSSC serial port from a remote connection.

Use this procedure to set the baud rate (transmission speed) for a TSSC serial port from a remote connection. You may need to try various baud rates if 19200 (2) does not work for your application.

1. After logging in to the TSSC, at the command line enter the **serialport** command, on the prompt line, and press **Enter**.

```
raseImc: ~ # serialport
```

The baud rate screen depicted in Figure 121 appears.

```
IBM TS3000 System Console
Connect to device through serial port
For RACK MOUNT Console (In 3953 frame), connect to single serial port
For STANDALONE Console, connect where CALL HOME modem connects (COM2)
Available baud rates:
1. 9600
2. 19200
3. 38400
4. 57600
5. 115200
6. 230400
Select baud rate (1-6) or Q to quit and press ENTER:
```

Figure 121. Baud Rate Screen - From Remote Connection

2. At the prompt, type the number (from the list) for the port speed for the device to which you will be connecting. The message 'Connected' appears. Press **Enter**. The baud rate is now set.

### Notes:

- After you have completed setting the baud rate, if unexpected characters appear while you are typing, you may have set a baud rate that is not correct for your device. Refer to the documentation for the device to which you have connected, and confirm that you are using the correct baud rate for your device.
- Use the ~. command to end the connection from the TSSC serial port at any time.

## Backing Up Configuration Data

Complete this task to back up configuration data.

**Note:** It is recommended, but not required, that you back up configuration data.

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

1. The system console configuration is complete. You can now backup your configuration settings if you need to re-image the hard disk drive or load a new version of software. You will need a USB storage device, or a CD for this procedure. Use this procedure when reconfiguring:
  - Attached systems
  - Call Home settings

### Notes:

- You can store multiple configurations by using unique backup names. Follow the convention for backup configuration names of <host name>-<machine type>-<serial number>.tgz when you create a unique name.
  - Model 8849: The 306m does not contain a floppy diskette drive. A USB device is the only option.
  - USB devices must support USB storage standards.
2. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
  3. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. You see the screen shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
  4. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. You see the screen shown in Figure 57 on page 46.
  5. Click **Backup/Restore**. You see the screen shown in Figure 122.

Figure 122. Backup Configuration Data Screen. The options you will see on this screen are model dependent.

6. Click **Backup Console Configuration Data**. You see the Restore Console Configuration Data screen, which is similar to the Backup Configuration Data screen.
7. Click **Backup Console Configuration Data to a USB Drive**.

-- OR --

Click **Backup Console Configuration Data to a CD**.

-- OR --

If you are attached to a 3957, 3958, or 3592, you can backup to a remote host. You are shown a box into which you enter the IP address of the system you want to back up to. You can do this with all 3958's, but only with 3957's with code at V8.5 or higher and 3592's with microcode levels at 1.23.1.54 or higher.

#### Notes:

- Record the IP address of the remote host that you backed up to. You may need this when you perform a Restore in Step 7 on page 93.

Remote host IP address:

\_\_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_\_

- If you changed the hostname to something other than tssnet1, record the new host name here.

Remote host name (if you changed it from tssnet1):



8. A dialog box appears, requesting that you perform one of the following steps.
  - Insert a CD.

– – OR – –

  - Plug in a USB storage device.
9. Click **OK**. A message appears which informs you of the success of the procedure.
10. Click **OK**.

**Note:** If you have SNMP Trap Forwarding enabled for the 3958-DD1, collect and manually record the IP addresses as a backup. You may need this address information for a later procedure:

- a. On the Backup Console Configuration screen, click **Close This Window**.
- b. From the home page, click **Call Home Settings > SNMP Settings**.
- c. Record the IP addresses which you can acquire from the DS4000 Forwarding IP and RSA IP fields.

DS4000 \_\_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_\_

RSA IP \_\_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_\_

11. Click **Close this window** to exit the Backup screen.

## Scheduling Configuration Backups

**Note:** This procedure only works with 3958's, 3957's with microcode levels higher than V8.5, 3592-C06, and (Enterprise Control Units in 3958-DE2) with microcode levels higher than 1.23.1.54.

- 3957 backups will be stored in the /vtd\_hydlog/tsscBRConfig/ directory
  - 3958 backups will be stored in the /opt/ras/persist/ directory
  - 3592 backups will be stored in the /var/adm/ras/ directory.
1. Right click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
  2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK**.
  3. Select **Backup/Restore**. You see Figure 123.

**Offload Schedule**

Backup files can be periodically offloaded to an attached 3957 or 3958 system.

Please Note:

- The default backup schedule is weekly.
- The default backup host is the primary system defined in Machine Settings under the Call Home Settings menu.
- You may click Check Offload Status to display information about the last successful backup that occurred.

Enter the desired backup schedule.

☒ Weekly ☐ Monthly

Backup Host IP Address:

Figure 123. Offload Schedule Screen

4. Click on the:



- **Weekly** button to request a weekly backup (default)

-- OR --

**Monthly** button to request a monthly backup

If you do not want to reschedule configuration backups, go to Step 7.

**Note:**

5. Choose the host system you want to back up to, or the Backup Host IP Address will default to the IP address of the main attached system.
6. Select **Save Backup Schedule**. You are prompted with a confirmation screen. Click **OK** to continue.
7. If you want to determine when the last offload was performed, select **Check Offload Status**. The screen refreshes. In the upper left corner, you see a message like:

Last offload was performed on Wed Feb 13 11:25:28 UTC 2008  
Files were offloaded to: 172.31.1.150

8. To reset to the default schedule, select **Restore Defaults**.

**Note:** The default backup host is the primary system that is defined in Machine Settings, under the submenu Call Home Settings.

## Restoring Configuration Data

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

**Notes:**

- Perform this procedure **ONLY if it is necessary to restore Console Configuration Data**.
  - Restoration of configuration data from system console code level V1.x.x to a system with V3.x.x or V4.x.x will not work. It will be necessary to reconfigure the console settings manually.
1. Log in to the system console using one of the login options in "User Login" on page 43.
  2. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
  3. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. You see the login prompt shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
  4. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. The menu shown in Figure 57 on page 46 appears.

**Notes:**

- To login remotely from another system console, you must obtain an Authentication ID (see "Login Options" on page 43). Launch your browser, and enter the system console location into the Address field. Enter your Authentication ID into the Username field and your password into the Password field. Click **OK** to start the Console Configuration utility.
  - If you are restoring configuration from a remote system, and the hostname of the system console is not going to remain tsscnet1, use the hostname that you recorded in step 7 on page 91. Also you will need to reattach the subsystem that you wish to retrieve the backup from. To reattach the subsystem, See "Adding Attached System Information" on page 45.
5. Click **Backup/Restore**. You see Figure 122 on page 91.
  6. Click **Restore Console Configuration Data**. You see the screen shown in Figure 124 on page 94.
  7. Select **Restore from CD** or **Restore from USB drive**. Confirm that the CD is inserted in the drive or that the USB device is attached.

-- OR --

If you are restoring configuration data to the default settings, select **Restore to factory defaults**.

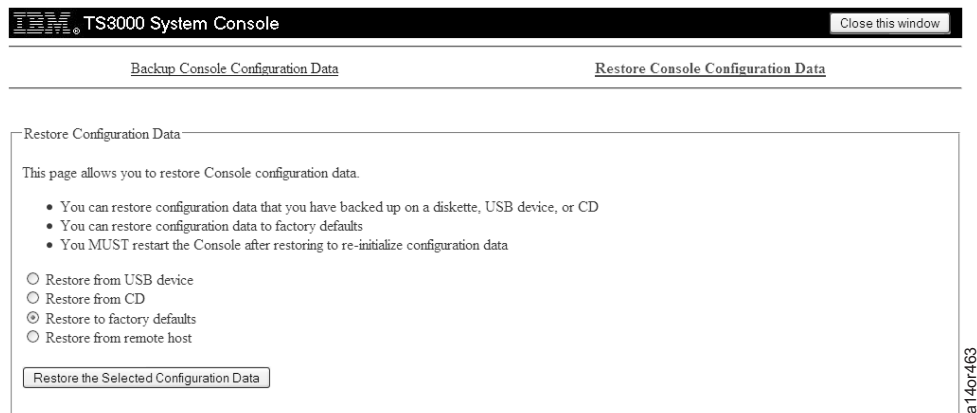


Figure 124. Restore Configuration Data Screen

– – OR – –

If you are restoring configuration data from a remote host, select **Restore from remote host**. You can use the default remote host IP address or you can type in a different address, such as the one you would have recorded in Step 7 on page 91.

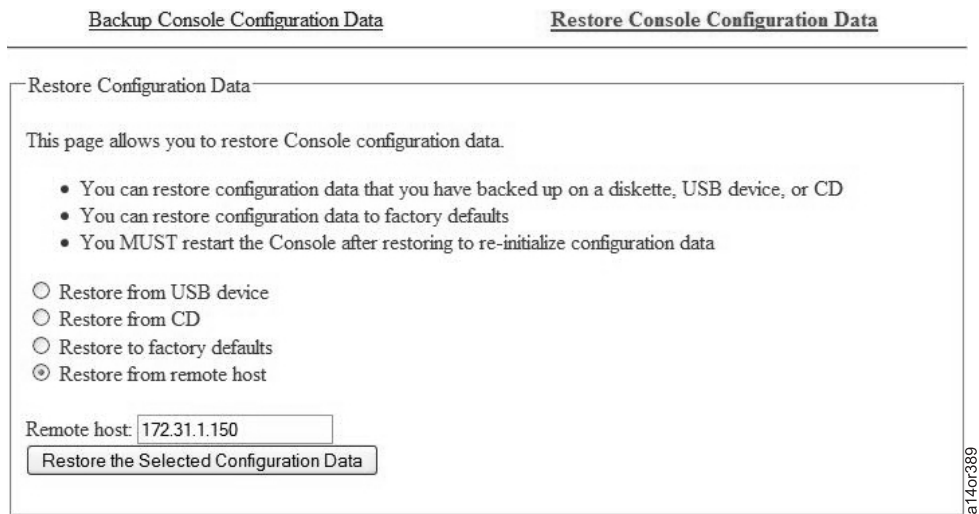


Figure 125. Restore Remote Host. In the Remote host field, add the IP address you recorded in Step 7 on page 91.

8. In the Remote host input area, type the host IP address you recorded in Step 7 on page 91.
9. Click **Restore the Selected Configuration Data** to begin the Restore. Another dialog box appears, which informs you of the success of the previous operation, and informs you that the system console must be rebooted to complete the restore operation.

**Note:** When you select **OK** to continue, the system console will reboot without further warning!

However, to close any open applications and reboot the system manually, select **Cancel**. Your new configuration settings will not be fully in effect until the system console reboots. Remove the CD if you installed one.

10. If you chose Cancel as is mentioned in Step 9, you will need to perform the following steps to reboot the system console:
  - a. Click **Close this window** to close the Restore Console Configuration Data screen.

- b. Click on **File > Exit** to exit the browser.
  - c. Right click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
  - d. Select **Restart Console**. The restored configuration data will be available once the system console restarts.
11. If you collected and recorded the SNMP Trap Forwarding IPs in Step 10 on page 92, as a backup for the 3958 configuration:
  - a. After the system has rebooted, from the TSSC Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility > Call Home Settings > SNMP Settings**.
  - b. Into the boxes, enter the IP addresses that you collected and recorded in Step 10 on page 92.
  - c. Click **Apply**.

## Setting the Console Date and Time

Complete this task to set the date and time on the system console.

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

**Note:** If the TSSC is connected to a 3958-DE2 complex and you have replaced the system planar board, first remove the Internal Ethernet cable from the back of the TSSC. Use the time on the lower ProtecTIER server as the TSSC time for NTP Server re-syncing. Once you have updated the time on the TSSC, you can reconnect the Internal Ethernet cable, and then start the NTP server.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. The Login screen displays.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then single click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. You see the Console Configuration Application screen.

**Note:** To login remotely from another system console, you must obtain an Authentication ID. Launch your browser, and enter the system console location into the Address field. Enter your Authentication ID into the Username field and your password into the Password field. Click **OK** to start the Console Configuration utility.

4. Click **Console Time**. The screen in Figure 126 appears.

Console Time

Note: Clicking inside or tabbing to a field will stop the clock so that you can edit the time and date. To restart the clock click "Cancel/Refresh" or "Save Changes".

Time  :  :  UTC

Date  /  /

NTP Server Settings

NTP Server is off

a14cr400

Figure 126. Console Time and Date

5. See Figure 127. If you need to change the system clock on the system console, you must first ensure the NTP server is stopped. To do this, click **Stop NTP server**.
6. Enter the correct values in the Time and Date fields.
7. Click **Save Changes** when you are finished.
8. See Figure 128. To start the NTP server, click the Start the NTP server button.

**Note:** It might be necessary to log out and log in again to refresh the date and time indicator on the desktop application bar. It is also possible that the screensaver might be invoked when resetting the time.

NTP Server successfully started.

Console Time

Note: Clicking inside or tabbing to a field will stop the clock so that you can edit the time and date. To restart the clock click "Cancel/Refresh" or "Save Changes".

\*Note: NTP server is running, you can not change the TSSC time.

Time  :  :  UTC

Date  /  /

NTP Server Settings

NTP Server is on

a14or430

Figure 127. Stop NTP Server Screen

Console Time

Note: Clicking inside or tabbing to a field will stop the clock so that you can edit the time and date. To restart the clock click "Cancel/Refresh" or "Save Changes".

Time  :  :  UTC

Date  /  /

NTP Server Settings

NTP Server is off

a14or400

Figure 128. Start NTP Server Screen

## Test RETAIN Connection - During Installation

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. The Login screen displays, as shown in Figure 56 on page 46.

3. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then single click **OK** to start the Console Configuration Utility. You see the screen shown in Figure 57 on page 46.

**Note:** To login remotely from another system console, you must obtain an Authentication ID (see “Login Options” on page 43). Launch your browser, and enter the system console location into the Address field. Enter your Authentication ID into the Username field and your password into the Password field. Click on **OK** to start the Console Configuration Utility.

4. Click **Console Status**. The Test RETAIN Connection screen shown in Figure 129 appears.

**IBM TS3000 System Console** [Close this window]

Console Message File    **Test RETAIN Connection**    Console VPD    Test ECC Connectivity

Test RETAIN Connection

Use this page to test the Call Home (RETAIN) connection. This tests the configuration done as part of the Call Home Settings task, specifically it uses the phone numbers or network configured, and the RETAIN registered primary system to do the test.

To test the connection do the following:

1. Review the call home settings for correctness.
2. Click on the **Test Problem Notification** button or the **Test Data Upload** button to begin the desired test.

Use the **Refresh** button to update this page if you change settings in the **Call Home** task.

☐ Phone number 1: Not Configured  
☐ Phone number 2: Not Configured  
☐ Phone number 3: Not Configured  
☐ Phone number 4: Not Configured  
☒ IBM intranet

Test Problem Notification  
 Test Data Upload  
 Refresh

a14or478

Figure 129. Test RETAIN Connection Request Screen - During Installation

5. Click **Test RETAIN Connection**.
6. Click one of the configured telephone numbers.
7. Click **Test Problem Notification** in the right-hand panel to test the PMR path, or click **Test Data Upload** in the right-hand panel to test the data upload path. Details of the results of the test appear in the screen shown in Figure 130. If you changed a telephone number, click **Refresh** to refresh the display, then again perform Step 7.

**IBM TS3000 System Console** [Close this window]

Problem Notification Test was successful.

Execution output follows:

```

=> Starting to test AGNS / RETAIN connection
=> Starting to create problem record, type: 4
Looking up properties for type 4
Reading Type_DI / 4
Found: *4DI*Test notification
Checking primary subsystem
Creating problem record header
Adding informational message: ESS Master Console Problem Notification test
Could not open for appending its contents to problem record (No such file or directory)
<= Return code: 0 - Problem record /var/enc/data/3953L051300004E0.Ditest01 successfully created (3953-L05-1300004)
000 Ign_Dialer 2006/03/06-16:44:14:0659 *I* 00000 00000 *** Program started ***
000 Ign_Dialer 2006/03/06-16:44:14:0659 *I* 00000 00000 Updating gateway information
000 Ign_Dialer 2006/03/06-16:44:14:0677 *I* 00000 00000 Preparing for dialing the IBM network
000 Ign_Dialer 2006/03/06-16:44:14:0677 *I* 00000 00000 Dialing IBM network: 9.837-1005
000 Ign_Dialer 2006/03/06-16:45:00:0531 *I* 00000 00000 Connected to the IBM network, trying to reach remote host
000 Ign_Dialer 2006/03/06-16:45:00:0531 *I* 00000 00000 Updating routing tables
000 Ign_Dialer 2006/03/06-16:45:00:0556 *I* 00000 00000 Checking remote host
000 Ign_Dialer 2006/03/06-16:45:04:0749 *I* 00000 00000 Connection to IBM entirely established, ready for communi
Dialing IBM network: /usr/bin/enc/rstCPiGNLink -i '60' -t '600' -m '10' -b '115200' -l -v '/dev/ttyS0' '9.837-1005' 'URUS' 'DASDUS' 'd
Sending data to IBM: /usr/bin/enc/rstCPiGNLink -v -c '/var/enc/data/3953L051300004E0.Ditest01' '167.210.250.58' '19285' '9.56.214.249'
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:04:0802 *I* 00000 00000 Converting prim/sec IP and Port
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:04:0802 *I* 00000 00000 Reading data file /var/enc/data/3953L051300004E0.Ditest01
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:04:0802 *I* 00000 00000 Processing product: 1300004-3953-L05
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:04:0802 *I* 00000 00000 Start sending data to prim IP
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:04:0802 *I* 00000 00000 Creating socket
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:04:0802 *I* 00000 00000 Connecting socket
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:04:0999 *I* 00000 00000 Sending user data
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:04:0999 *I* 00000 00000 Receiving response
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:05:0256 *I* 00000 00000 Analyzing response
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:05:0256 *I* 00000 00000 Using logon record for IBM product
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:05:0256 *I* 00000 00000 Sending logon record
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:05:0280 *I* 00000 00000 Receiving first response
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:11:0612 *I* 00000 00000 Analyzing first response
001 Send_Pmh_To_Retain 2006/03/06-16:45:11:0613 *I* 00000 00000 Receiving second response
  
```

a14or310

Figure 130. Test RETAIN Connection Results Screen - During Installation

## Test Electronic Customer Care (ECC) Connectivity

This feature can be used to assist in both setting up and troubleshooting problems with ECC call home.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. The Login screen displays, as shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration Utility. You see the screen shown in Figure 57 on page 46.
4. Click **Console Status**. Click the **Test ECC Connectivity** link at the top of the page. You will see the screen shown in Figure 131.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to test ECC connectivity (**TSSC Menus > Call Home Functions > Call Home Options > Test ECC Connectivity**). Refer to “RAS Menus” on page 162.

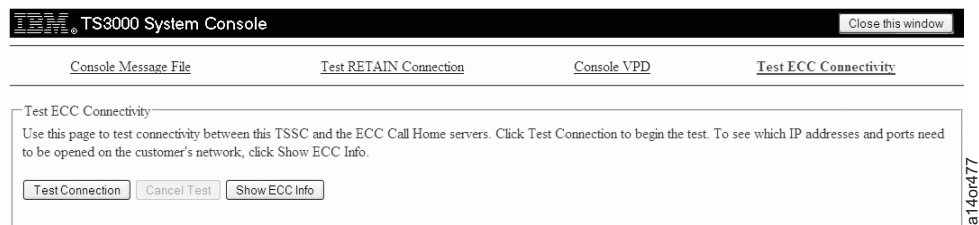


Figure 131. Test ECC Connectivity Screen

5. To test connectivity to the ECC servers, click on the **Test Connection** button. The test will begin immediately, and you should see the results of the test on the screen.

**Note:** If any of the tests report "NOT OK", the listed IP address and port will need to be opened through the customer's firewall in order to gain access to the ECC service.

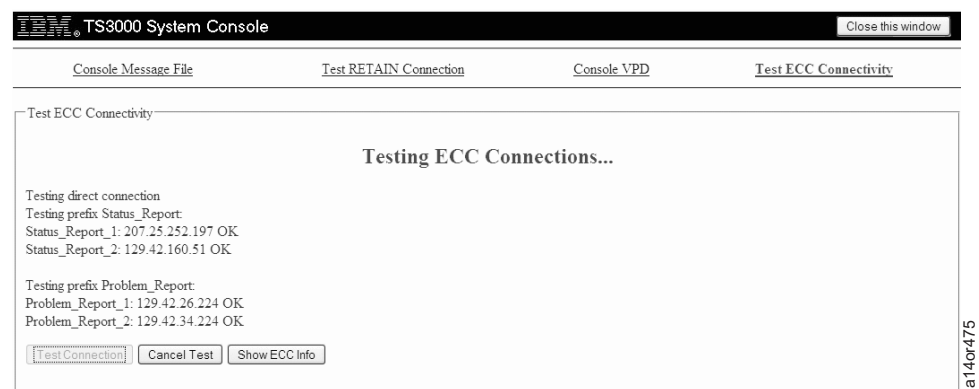


Figure 132. ECC Test in progress showing successful connections being made

6. To cancel the connectivity test, click the **Cancel Test** button while the test is active.
7. If you would simply like to see the current IP address and ports used by ECC, click the **Show ECC Info** button. You will see results similar to the figure in the following image:

**Note:** All IP addresses and ports must be allowed through a customer's network in order to use all ECC features.

IBM

TS3000 System Console

Close this window

Console Message File

Test RETAIN Connection

Console VPD

Test ECC Connectivity

Test ECC Connectivity

Current ECC IP Addresses And Ports

The displayed IP addresses and ports must be allowed through any customer firewall to provide access to each service.

Status Reporting Problem Reporting Fix Acquisition

IP Address	Port	IP Address	Port	IP Address	Port
207.25.252.197	443	129.42.26.224	443	170.225.15.28	80
129.42.160.51	443	129.42.34.224	443	170.225.15.107	80
		129.42.42.224	443	129.35.224.107	80
		129.42.26.224	443	170.225.15.104	80
		129.42.34.224	443	129.35.224.104	80
				129.35.224.115	80
				170.225.15.115	80

140476

a140d76

Figure 133. Sample output showing ECC IP addresses and ports

## Logging Out of the System Console

After you complete your current task on the system console, you will need to log out of the system console.

See Figure 55 on page 45.

1. Right-click on the desktop to view the Main Menu.
2. Click **Logout**. You are logged out of this console session.

You can use the **Shutdown Console** menu item if you need to log out and halt the system console. You would use this if you needed to physically power OFF the system console at the end of the shutdown process. Use the **Restart Console** menu item to reboot the system console. You also can use the **Shutdown** and **Restart** buttons on the System Console Login screen (Figure 1 on page 2) to halt or reboot the system console without logging in.

## Test Call Home for 3494 VTS, VTC, 3590 A60, 3592 J70, and 3592 C06

1. Return to the tape system's Call Home / Remote Service Menu at the Library Manager EBTERM Service Screen (if available). To test a call home through the TSSC, select **Send Test Notification Menu**, as shown at Figure 134. Press **Enter**. Figure 135 on page 100 displays.

**Attention:** Select the illustrated line item **only at Figure 134**. No other menu display items are applicable for this process.

Call Home / Remote Services Menu			
Move cursor to desired item and press Enter.			
<b>Send Test Notification Menu</b>			
F1=Help	F2=Refresh	F3=Cancel	F8=Image
F9=Shell	F10=Exit	Enter=Do	

Figure 134. Call Home / Remote Services Menu – Send Test Notification Menu

2. At Figure 135 on page 100, select **Service Notification (via modem)**. Press **Enter**. Figure 136 on page 100 displays.



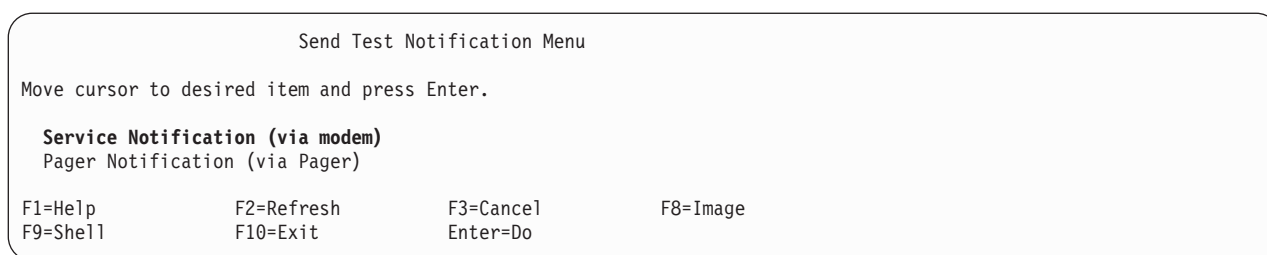


Figure 135. Send Test Notification Menu – Service Notification

3. Verify that the following message is received, and verify that the Test Message was received in RETAIN®.

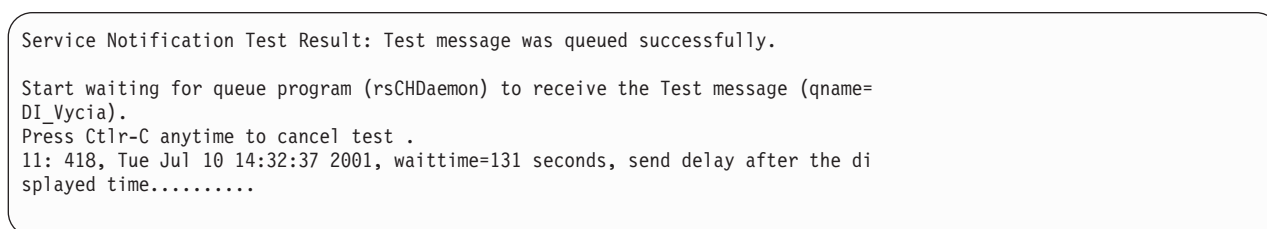


Figure 136. Send Notification Test Result Menu – Waiting

## Test Call Home Notification for 3494 ATL or 3953 Enterprise Library Controller

**Note:** This function requires that the 3494 ATL or 3953 be successfully attached to the TSSC. See “Adding Attached System Information” on page 45.

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

This procedure requires that you previously performed “Tape System Setup for 3494 ATL (Library Manager) or 3953 Enterprise Library Controller” on page 32.

1. To test call home through the TSSC, use the 3494 ATL or the 3953 menu commands **Commands > Call Home** to view the Call Home Dialog box (see Figure 137 on page 101).



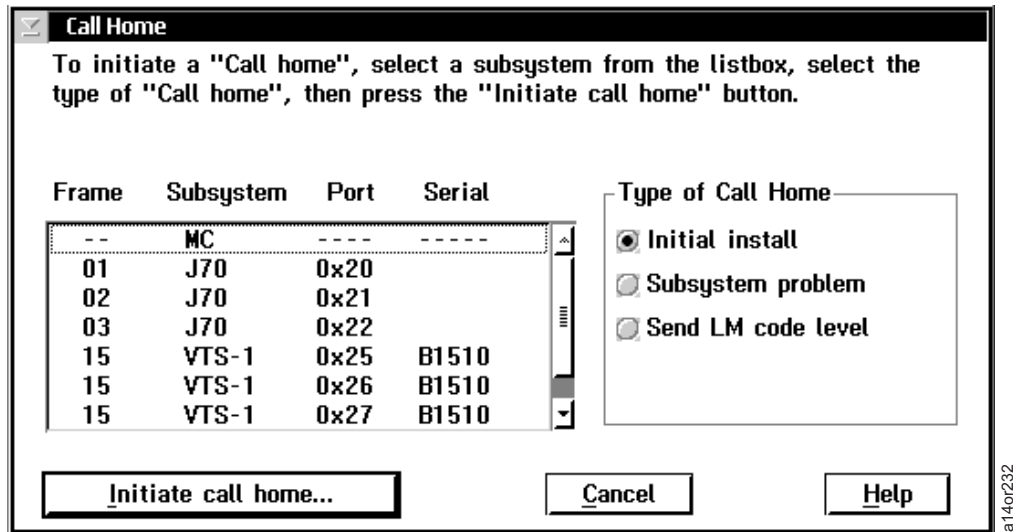


Figure 137. Call Home Dialog Box

- Highlight the line containing 'MC' in the Subsystem column. Click **Subsystem problem** > **Initiate call home**. Once the call home has been created, a dialog box appears which indicates that the call home was successfully created and sent to the TSSC. The call home package should be available for viewing within two or three minutes by using the TSSC's Queue Management tool (see "Call Home Queue Management" on page 128).

Once the TSSC has sent the package to RETAIN, the PMR number will be available by viewing the Call Home Log tool. To verify the record, log into the RETAIN system and search for the PMR, or search for records from the type, model, and serial number of the 3494 ATL or the 3953.

## Setup for Remote Data Monitoring (VTS, VTC, A60, J70, C06)

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

Perform this procedure **ONLY** if **Remote Data Monitoring** is to be activated.

- From the tape system Maintenance menu, select **Subsystem Configuration**, and press **Enter**.
- At Figure 138, select **Call Home / Remote Services Menu**, and press **Enter**.

**Attention:** Select the illustrated line item only at **Figure 138**. No other menu display items are applicable for this process.

**Note:** To activate Remote Data Monitoring, ensure that the Call Home/Remote Services are set through the TSSC. See step 2 on page 27 and step 3 on page 30.

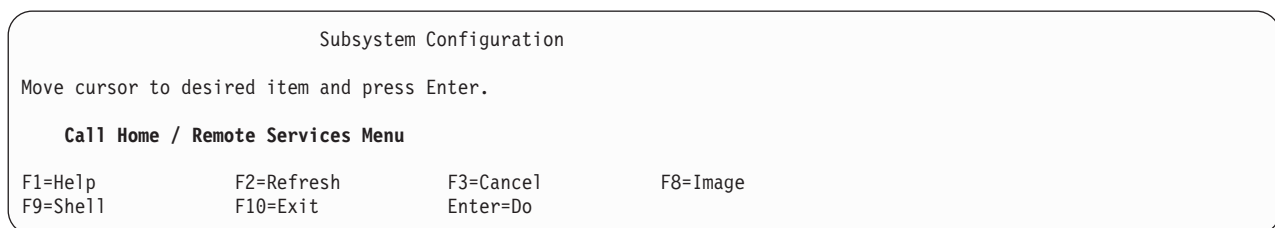


Figure 138. Subsystem Configuration Menu – Call Home / Remote Services Menu

- At Figure 139 on page 102, select **Remote Data Monitoring**, and press **Enter**. Figure 140 on page 102 displays.

**Attention:** Select the illustrated line item only at **Figure 139**. No other menu display items are applicable for this process.

Call Home / Remote Services Menu

Move cursor to desired item and press Enter.

**Remote Data Monitoring**

F1=Help	F2=Refresh	F3=Cancel	F8=Image
F9=Shell	F10=Exit	Enter=Do	

*Figure 139. Call Home / Remote Services Menu – Remote Data Monitoring*

4. At Figure 140, select **Change / Show Call Home Heartbeat Interval**, and press **Enter**.

**Attention:** Select the illustrated line item only at **Figure 140**. No other menu display items are applicable for this process.

Remote Data Monitoring

Type or select values in entry fields.  
Press Enter AFTER making all desired changes.

	[Entry Fields]	
* <b>Change / Show Call Home Heartbeat Interval</b>	Disabled	+
* Error Initiated Call Home Data Gathering	Disabled	+
* Timeout Period Between Successive Data Call Homes	[24]	#
(In hours between 1 and 99)		

F1=Help	F2=Refresh	F3=Cancel	F4=List
F5=Reset	F6=Command	F7=Edit	F8=Image
F9=Shell	F10=Exit	Enter=Do	

*Figure 140. Remote Data Monitoring Menu – Change / Show Call Home Heartbeat Interval*

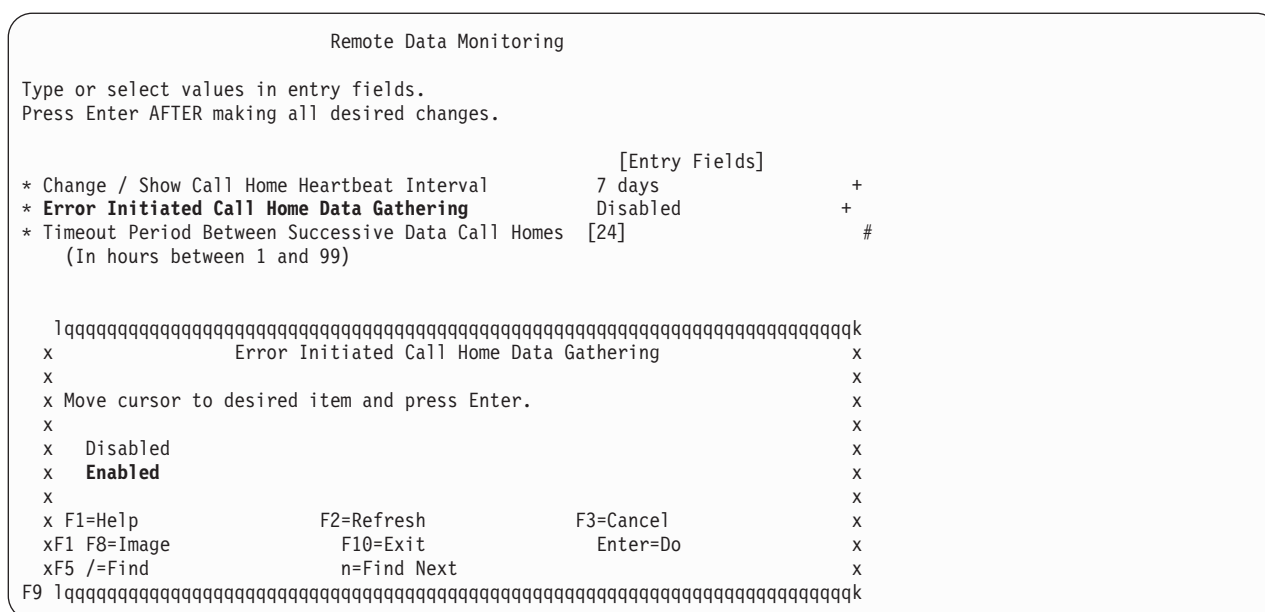
5. In the example in Figure 141 on page 103, **7 days** has been selected. Press **Enter**. Figure 142 on page 103 displays.

**Note:** The Change / Show Call Home Heartbeat Interval option allows the user to select how often a heartbeat is sent home. A heartbeat consists of Machine Reportable Product Data (MRPD), such as installed features and code levels, and the output of a health check program like VTS Checkout. The frequency of these heartbeats can be between 1 and 15 days. The heartbeat can be disabled.

Figure 141. Remote Data Monitoring Menu

- Note:** The Error Initiated Call Home Data Gathering option allows the user to enable or disable data gathering when a call home occurs. If enabled, data collection and diagnostic programs will be run whenever a call home event occurs, and the collected output will be sent to the Support Center. The data that is collected contains information that will help in determining what caused the problem leading to the call home. If disabled, no data collection will occur when a call home event occurs.

Figure 142. Remote Data Monitoring Menu – Error Initiated Call Home Data Gathering Disabled



7. Select **Enabled**, and press **Enter**. Figure 144 appears with the selected values displayed.

Figure 144. Remote Data Monitoring Menu – Error Initiated Call Home Data Gathering Enabled

8. At Figure 144, press **Enter**. A COMMAND STATUS screen (Figure 145 on page 105) displays showing that a command is running.

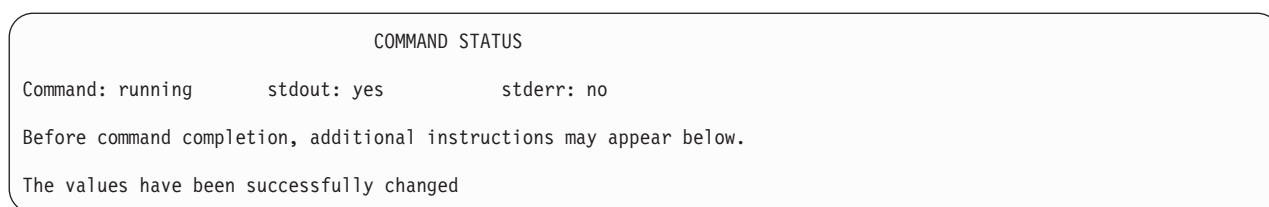


Figure 145. COMMAND STATUS Screen – Running

9. The Command Status screen (Figure 145) displays for as long as five minutes. It is normal for there to be no response for this period of time. **DO NOT press any keys** while the command is running.
10. When the execution of the command is complete, the screen shown in Figure 146 displays. "OK" appears in the "Command" field.

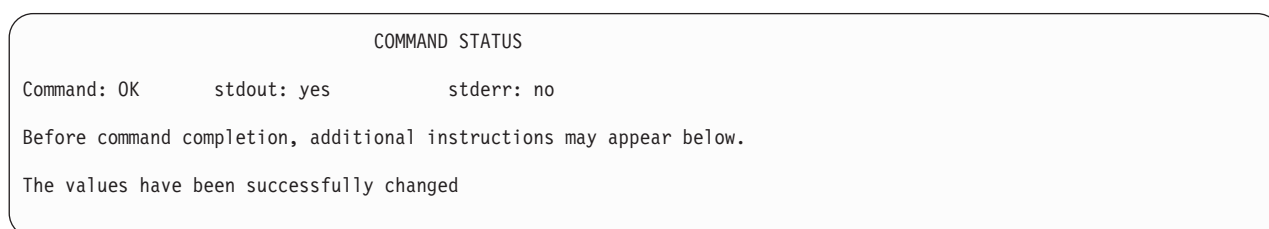


Figure 146. COMMAND STATUS Screen – OK

11. Press **F3** twice to return to the "Call Home / Remote Services Menu."

---

## Setup for Remote Data Monitoring (3494 ATL or 3953 Enterprise Library Controller)

**Attention:** Many procedures in this book are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the code level.

See "Set Heartbeat" on page 38.



---

## Chapter 3. Procedures

---

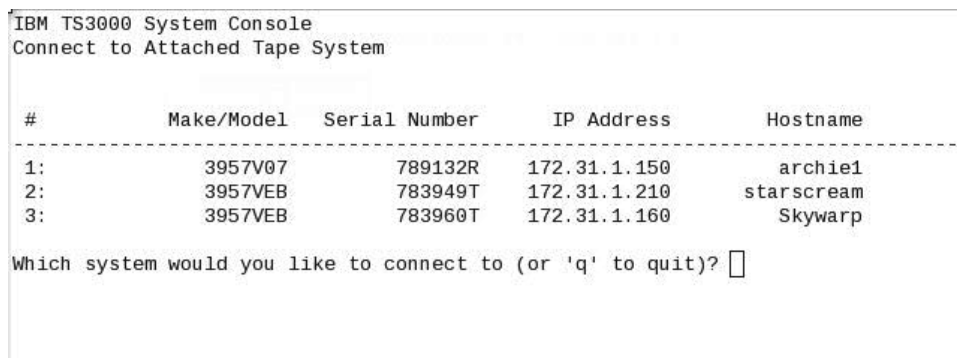
### Service Tools

#### Connect to Attached Tape System

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

After you complete the system console configuration, the tool to establish connections to attached systems is automatically enabled.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45) and select **System Console Actions > Connect to Tape System**. You see the screen shown in Figure 147.



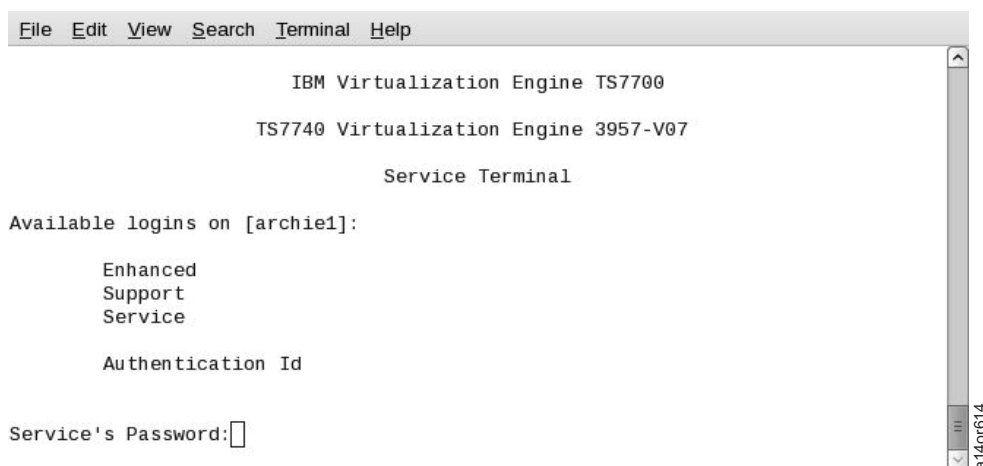
```
IBM TS3000 System Console
Connect to Attached Tape System

#          Make/Model  Serial Number  IP Address  Hostname
-----
1:         3957V07     789132R      172.31.1.150  archie1
2:         3957VEB     783949T      172.31.1.210  starscream
3:         3957VEB     783960T      172.31.1.160  Skywarp

Which system would you like to connect to (or 'q' to quit)? █
```

Figure 147. Connect to Attached Tape System – Selecting

2. Enter the number of the system you want to connect to, and press Enter.
3. When you have a successful connection, you see the screen shown in Figure 148.



```
File Edit View Search Terminal Help

IBM Virtualization Engine TS7700
TS7740 Virtualization Engine 3957-V07
Service Terminal

Available logins on [archie1]:

Enhanced
Support
Service

Authentication Id

Service's Password: █
```

Figure 148. Connect to Attached Tape System – Connection Successful

**Notes:**

- Login to the system by using the established security procedures for that device. If your ID and password were successfully propagated, they can be used to log in.

- You can establish as many connections at one time, as necessary.
- You can establish multiple connections with a single system.
- If the function keys (F3, F4, F10, and so forth) do not work as intended in the SMIT screens, use ESC+3, ESC+4, ESC+0 key sequences instead.
- The connection screen must be a minimum of 80 columns by 25 lines in order for SMIT screens to display properly. To change the size of the screen, click and drag the lower right corner of the screen.
- If a communication attempt with an attached system fails, the screen disappears from the desktop, and no error message displays.

## Telnet to Grid TSSC

Use this procedure to connect to another TSSC within the Grid network.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Telnet to Grid TSSC**. You see the screen shown in Figure 149. Information about each Grid system as it is available, including IP address, hostname, and location are displayed.

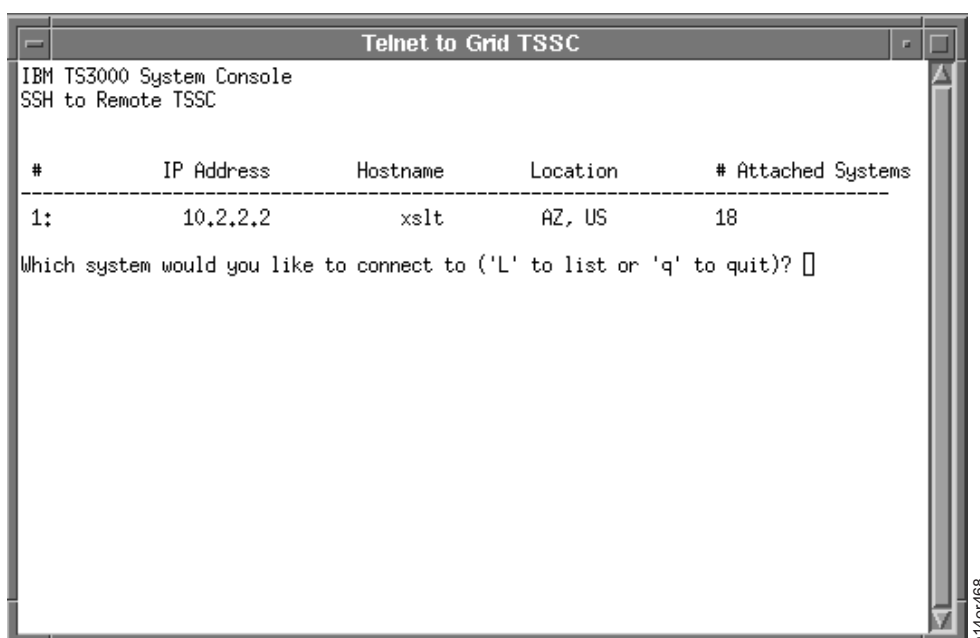


Figure 149. Telnet to Grid TSSC

3. To connect to a system, press its corresponding list number. To see attached system information about a particular system, press **L**. Press **q** to exit this application.
4. If you would like to see attached system information for a particular system, press **L**. You are prompted to enter the system number. Attached System information looks like the following example:



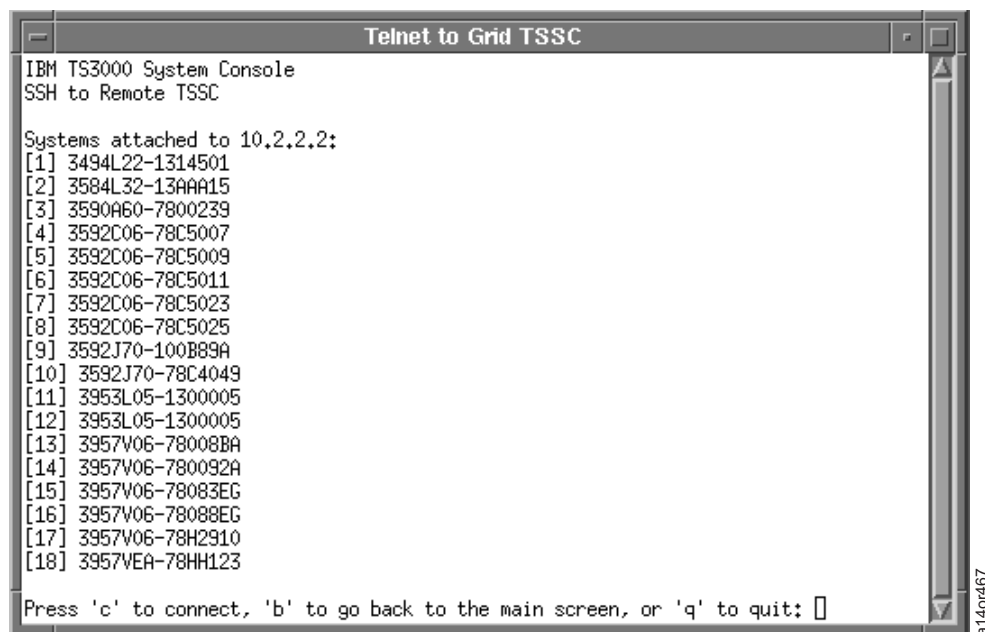


Figure 150. Attached Systems List

5. After you view the Attached Systems, you can connect to the selected TSSC by pressing **c**. Pressing **b** takes you back to the main screen.

## Tape System Service Information (VTS, VTC, A60, J70, C06) - [Code Level Below V5.3]

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

After you complete the system console configuration, the tool to update and review service information for attached systems is automatically enabled.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. Select **System Console Actions > Tape System Service Information**. You see the Tape System Service Information screen shown in Figure 151 on page 110.

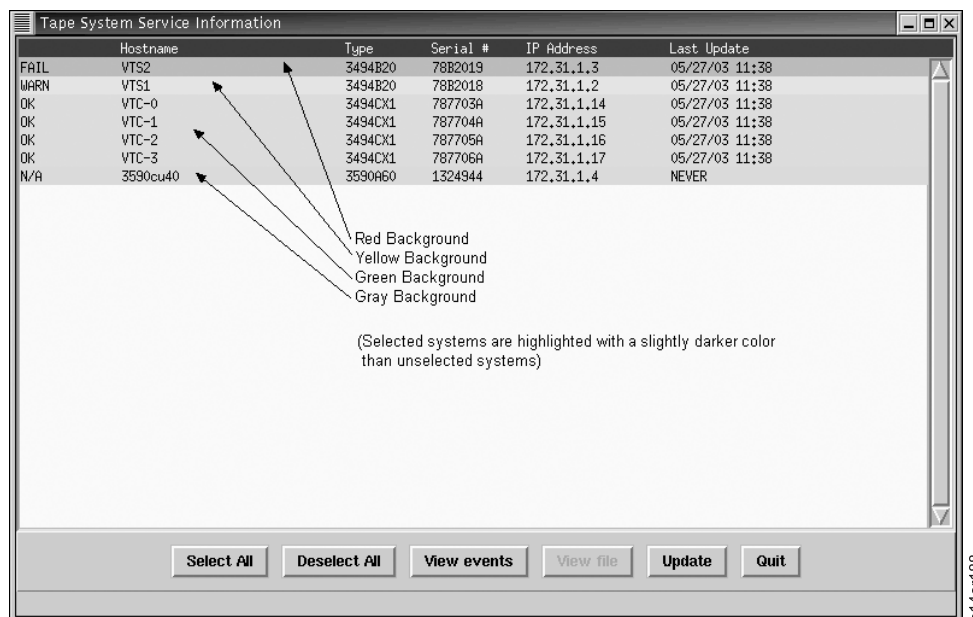


Figure 151. Tape System Service Information – Main Screen

- The Tape System Service Information screen, as depicted in Figure 151, shows a summary of the status of the systems that are attached to the system console as of the date and time that are included in the Last Update column. The system listing is sorted in descending order of status severity. The background color scheme provides this information:
  - Red Background - A Failure has occurred
  - Yellow Background - A Warning has occurred
  - Green Background - No Failures or Warnings have occurred
  - Gray (or White) Background - No status has ever been reported to the system console
- Tape System Service Information status is NOT run automatically. It is performed by selecting any number of systems in the listing and then clicking the **Update** button. Systems may be selected individually by pointing to the system list entry and clicking the left mouse button once. (Clicking the entry again deselects the system.) Alternatively, you can select all of the systems on the list by clicking **Select All** (or deselect by clicking **Deselect All**).
- As the system console receives service information from the selected tape systems during the update process, the selected systems become deselected (un-highlighted), the date and time of last update is changed to the current date and time, and the new status is indicated by the background color of the system entry listing and the STATUS column (located on the left side).

**Note:** The update process can be lengthy for a large number of attached systems. However, this tool will time-out at ten minutes for unresponsive systems and return control to the user. The tool is normally unresponsive during the Update process and may appear to be locked up if attached systems are not responding.

- The Tape System Service Information may be reviewed at various levels of detail. The main screen shows a one-line status summary for each system attached to the console. Selecting one or more of the systems in the listing and clicking **View Events** results in a listing of the specific service events that resulted in the failure or warning status, as shown in Figure 152 on page 111.

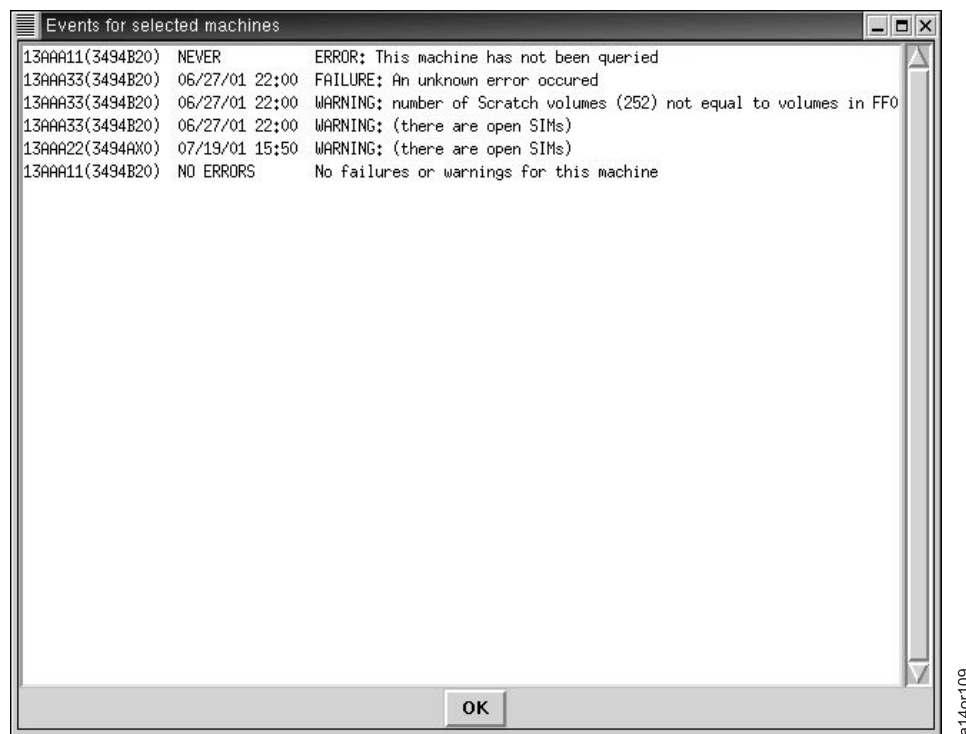


Figure 152. Tape System Service Information – Events

- Double-clicking one of the events shown in Figure 152 results in the full details of the event, as shown in Figure 153.

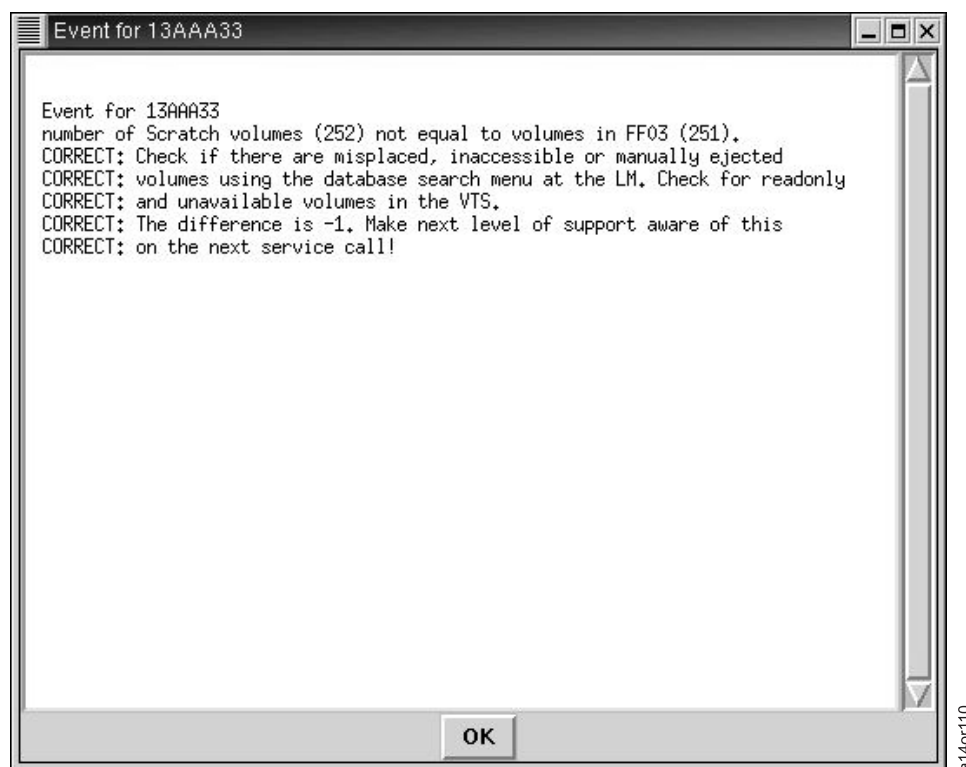


Figure 153. Tape System Service Information – Event Detail

You also can view the contents of the entire service status file for an attached system by selecting it at the Tape System Service Information main screen (Figure 151 on page 110) and clicking **View File**.

**Note:** The Tape System Service Information tool remotely invokes rdm\_bc\_check (Models B10, B18, B20) or rdm\_gm\_check (tape subsystem control units) service diagnostic programs and then presents the results to the system console as a local convenience. No modification of the results of the diagnostic programs is performed by the console, and the service programs remain available for direct invocation on the attached systems with proper user access.

8. From the Main Screen in Figure 151 on page 110, select **Quit** to quit.

## Creating Attached Subsystems List

Use this procedure to create a list of all the subsystems that the system console is attached to.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. Select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. Login, as required.
3. Select **Attached Subsystems**. You see Figure 154. You can sort the list by clicking on a column heading.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">Device-Model</a>	<a href="#">Serial Number</a>	<a href="#">ID</a>	<a href="#">Host Name</a>	<a href="#">IP address</a>	<a href="#">Subnet Mask</a>	<a href="#">Call Home Switched</a>	<a href="#">Standby</a>	<a href="#">Complex System</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L23	<a href="#">78A3457</a>	1	BLC-A	172.31.1.51	255.255.255.0	1	1	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L23	<a href="#">78A3629</a>	2	BLC-B	172.31.1.50	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L23	<a href="#">78A3292</a>	3	BLC-C	172.31.1.52	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L23	<a href="#">78A3628</a>	4	BLC-D	172.31.1.53	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L52	<a href="#">1340013</a>	5	MSBF 1	172.31.1.228	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L52	<a href="#">1340074</a>	6	MSBF3	172.31.1.203	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L53	<a href="#">7819831</a>	7	MSBF4	172.31.1.204	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L23	<a href="#">78A2022</a>	8	MSBF11	172.31.1.212	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA
<input type="checkbox"/>	3584L23	<a href="#">78A2017</a>	9	MSBF12	172.31.1.239	255.255.255.0	1	0	NA

172 . 31 . 1 .	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Add System
<div> <div> Delete Selected  Edit Selected  Query Selected  Query All  Toggle Standby    View Health  View Events  Update Health    Refresh </div> <div> <b>Health Legend:</b> <div> <div> No Problems Returned From System Health Check </div> <div> Warning(s) Found in System Health Check </div> <div> Failed Status(es) Found in System Health Check </div> <div> Offline Status(es) Found in System Health Check </div> <div> Communication Failure Between TSSC and Attached System </div> </div> </div> </div>					

a14of504

Figure 154. Attached Subsystems List Screen. Use with Table 10.

Table 10. Color Indications for Health Check. Use with Figure 154.

Health Legend Color	Health Legend Indication
Green	No problem returned from system health check
Yellow	Warnings found in system health check
Red	Failed statuses found in system health check
Black	Offline Status(es) Found in the System Health Check
Blue	Communication failure between TSSC and attached systems

4. You can use one group of buttons to perform Delete, Edit, and Query operations on the list of attached subsystems. You also can use another set of buttons to interrogate the system console for the

following operations. Click on any quantity of attached subsystems and select one of the button titles. You see a screen like Figure 155 with one of these reports:

**Note:** These choices are not available for a 3584 or a 3494L.

**View Health**

Returns information about the machines you choose

**View Events**

Returns event information on any machines for which a problem has been logged

**Update Health**

Performs another machine health check

**Refresh**

Refreshes the information and the color scheme in Table 10 on page 112 to reflect your most recent activity

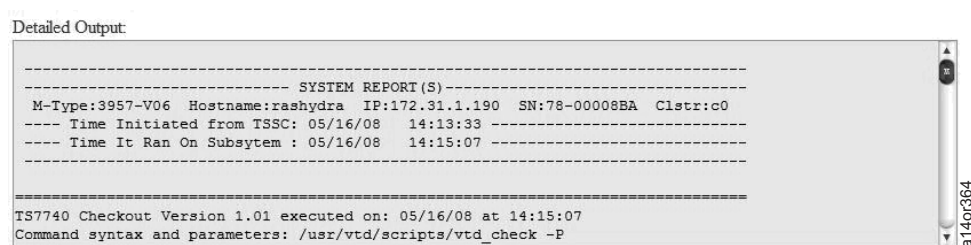


Figure 155. Health and Events Report Screen Example.

5. View the properties of the Attached system by selecting the hyperlinked serial number. This will display all of the properties of that attached system. To go back to the list of the attached systems, click the **Attached Systems** link at the top of the screen.

## Remote Code Broadcast By Using the Web Interface

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

The code level requirements are:

**TSSC** System console code version 5.3.x and above

**IBM TS7700 Virtualization Engine**

TSSC must be a hardware model 8485 (x206m) or 8849 (x306m). Code versions 8.5.xx.xx and lower. For higher code levels, refer to “Updating TS7700 Virtualization Engine Microcode” on page 170.

**IBM 3494 Virtual Tape Server and Virtual Tape Controller**

Code version 2.26.xx.xx and above

**IBM 3590 A60 Tape Controller**

Code version 1.16.xx.xx and above

**IBM 3592 J70 Tape Controller**

Code version 1.17.xx.xx and above

**IBM 3592 C06 Tape Controller**

Code version 1.20.x.x and above

**IBM 3592 C07 Tape Controller**

Code version 1.25.x.xx and above

**IBM 3494 ATL (L12, L14, L22)**  
Not currently operational

You can use the web interface to copy control unit code from a source CD that you place in the CD drive of the TSSC. You then can broadcast this code to another device.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. Select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then click **OK**.
3. Select **System Tools > Remote Code Broadcast**. You see the screen shown in Figure 156.

Remote Code Broadcast Options

This servlet will provide functions to copy the broadcast code from a disc to the console. It will *NOT* work for Mksysb images.  
Select "Do not overwrite existing controller code..." if you think the console may not need updating, and view the log file afterwards.  
Select "Delete code images..." if you wish to select on which machines to delete already existing code.  
Note: This servlet has two phases. The first copies files from the disc and prepares a list of machines to broadcast to. The second does the broadcast. For large code images this process can take time. Please wait for the page to reload.

VID/VTS/VTC/Tape Controller Remote Code Broadcast Menu

1.
2.
3.
4.

☐ Do not overwrite existing controller code if already on this console.  
☐ Delete code images on attached machines to make room for broadcast image.

a140d469

Figure 156. Remote Code Broadcast Options

4. Insert the disc which has the code you wish to broadcast into the optical disc drive of the TSSC.
5. Select one of the options for Broadcast Code Disc, then select **Broadcast Code CD**.

**Do not overwrite existing controller code if already on this console**

Select this option if you previously broadcast code to a system using the code disc that you just inserted into the drive. This eliminates the time it takes to load code from the disc.

**Note:** If the image copy failed, select **View the Log File**. Retry **Broadcast Code Disc** after you determine the cause.

**Delete code images on attached machines to make room for broadcast image**

Select this option to choose which images you want to delete from the target system. A list displays. To add an image to the target system, ensure that the target system has no more than one image.

**Note:** If you selected "Delete code images on attached machines to make room for broadcast image" the screen reloads and refreshes the list of images to delete. Select the images you want to delete. Type in the numbers of the images that you wish to delete. Separate the numbers by spaces (for example, "0 1 4 5"). Select **Submit Choices**.

6. When the code copy completes, a message appears, and prompts you to select which system to broadcast the code image to. You see a box entitled "Systems for Code Broadcast" at the bottom of the screen.

This box contains a list of the attached systems that can be broadcast to. Table 11 on page 116 lists the possible status conditions you might anticipate.

Choose Systems for Code Broadcast

Select systems for broadcast by typing in the box below the numbers you wish to delete separated by spaces, or leave it empty. (e.g. 0 1 2 3)  
 If you wish to broadcast to all systems, type "all" and hit submit

Systems to choose from:

NO	MODEL	SERIAL	IP ADDRESS	HOSTNAME	CODE LEVEL
0	3592	C06	78C5011	172.31.1.35	rasC06 Unavailable
1	3592	C06	1300BEA	172.31.1.35	rasC06 Unavailable

Systems for Code Broadcast:

a14or372

Figure 157. Choose Systems for Code Broadcast

7. Select the systems to which you want to broadcast a code image. In the "Systems for Code Broadcast" column, type the numbers of the systems, separated by spaces. Leave this field blank if you do not want to broadcast a code image, or you can select the **Cancel** button. Click on **Submit Choices**.

**Notes:**

- This can take as long as five minutes per system.
  - Figure 156 on page 114 provides an example, which depicts that the code broadcast will fail because the attached control units are "Unavailable."
  - If an error occurs, select **View the Log File** from Figure 156 on page 114 to check the log file to determine the failure.
  - If the status is 2+ IMGS (which indicates "2 or more images") on the attached system you wish to broadcast to, the image is not broadcast unless you select the "Delete images..." option depicted in Figure 156 on page 114, and you remove the images from the target system.
8. You also can use the following additional options which are depicted in Figure 156 on page 114:
    - Option 2: After you select the systems to broadcast and the page reloads, you see a status message at the top of the screen. Use option 2 "View the Log File" to see the details of the broadcast. This log lists the code that was successfully broadcast and the code that was successfully finalized. If an error occurred, the log file will specify where the load failed. Figure 158 on page 116 shows you a sample of status in a log file.



Remote Code Broadcast Log File

```

Thu Oct 02 09:31:28 UTC 2008: ATTACHED SYSTEMS FOR CODE BROADCAST
=====
MODEL      SERIAL    IP ADDRESS    HOSTNAME    CODE LEVEL    STATUS
=====
3592  C06   78C5011  172.31.1.35  rasC06  Unavailable    NOT OK
3592  C06   1300BEA  172.31.1.35  rasC06  Unavailable    NOT OK
Thu Oct 02 09:31:28 UTC 2008: Completing gatherSystemStatus with rc=false
Thu Oct 02 09:31:28 UTC 2008: Starting prepareBroadcastList...
Thu Oct 02 09:31:28 UTC 2008: Systems to choose from are:
=====
NO MODEL    SERIAL    IP ADDRESS    HOSTNAME    CODE LEVEL
=====
0  3592  C06   78C5011  172.31.1.35  rasC06  Unavailable
1  3592  C06   1300BEA  172.31.1.35  rasC06  Unavailable
Thu Oct 02 09:31:29 UTC 2008: prepareBroadcastList completed
Thu Oct 02 09:31:29 UTC 2008: Completing phase 1 of copyCD successfully, requesting input
Thu Oct 02 09:31:29 UTC 2008: Viewing log
Thu Oct 02 09:39:02 UTC 2008: Input recieved, starting resumeCreateBroadcastList...
Thu Oct 02 09:39:02 UTC 2008: Attempting to broadcast to system numbers: 0 1
Thu Oct 02 09:39:02 UTC 2008: System 0 was chosen to broadcast but cannot be broadcasted.
Status was: 3
Thu Oct 02 09:39:02 UTC 2008: System 1 was chosen to broadcast but cannot be broadcasted.
Status was: 3
Thu Oct 02 09:39:02 UTC 2008: Starting copyRemote...
Thu Oct 02 09:39:02 UTC 2008: No files copied to remote hosts
Thu Oct 02 09:39:02 UTC 2008: Completed copyRemote, returning false
Thu Oct 02 09:39:02 UTC 2008: Completing copyCD, copyRemote failed
Thu Oct 02 09:39:03 UTC 2008: Viewing log

```

a14or373

Figure 158. Remote Code Broadcast Log File. See Table 11 for a list of the possible status messages.

Table 11. Code Load Status Messages - From Web Interface. See Figure 158 for an example of broadcast status.

Status	Meaning
OK	OK to copy code to attached system
NO DIR	No temporary directory exists on attached system to copy code into
PREV VER	The temporary directory on the attached system is not empty
NO COMM	Unable to communicate with attached system (possibly due to downlevel code on attached system or bad physical connection)
NO SPACE	Insufficient space on attached system for copying code
NO SPC 1	Insufficient space on attached system's gdc file system for copying code
NO SPC 2	Insufficient space on attached system's usr file system for copying code
NO SPC 3	Insufficient space on attached system's gdc and usr file systems for copying code
2+ IMGS	There are two or more code images on the attached system (will not broadcast code unless you remove images by using the "Delete code images..." option.
NOT OK	Unspecified error condition has occurred

- Option 3, "Clear the Log File," deletes the log file and clears this screen. Use this when the previous log file is irrelevant. Only use this option if you no longer need the old log file for reference to an error.
- Option 4, "Eject the CD," should be used when the disc is no longer in use or when you are attempting to copy the code from the disc for a second time. If the program reports that there is an error mounting the disc, remove and insert the disc again.



## Tape Drive Service Information

**Attention:** Many procedures in this book are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the code level. The code level requirements are:

### System Console

Code Version 3.0.0 and above

### IBM 3494 Virtual Tape Server and Virtual Tape Controller

Code Version 2.28.700.xx and above

### IBM 3590 A60 Tape Controller

Code Version 1.16.5.xx and above

### IBM 3592 J70 Tape Controller

Code Version 1.17.xx.xx and above

### IBM 3592 C06 Tape Controller

Code Version 1.20.x.x and above

### IBM 3592 C07 Tape Controller

Code Version 1.25.x.xx and above

### IBM 3494 ATL (L12, L14, L22)

Not currently operational

1. See Figure 159. After you complete the System Console configuration, the tool to update and review tape drive service information for attached systems is automatically enabled. Right click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. Select **System Console Action > Tape Drive Service Information**.

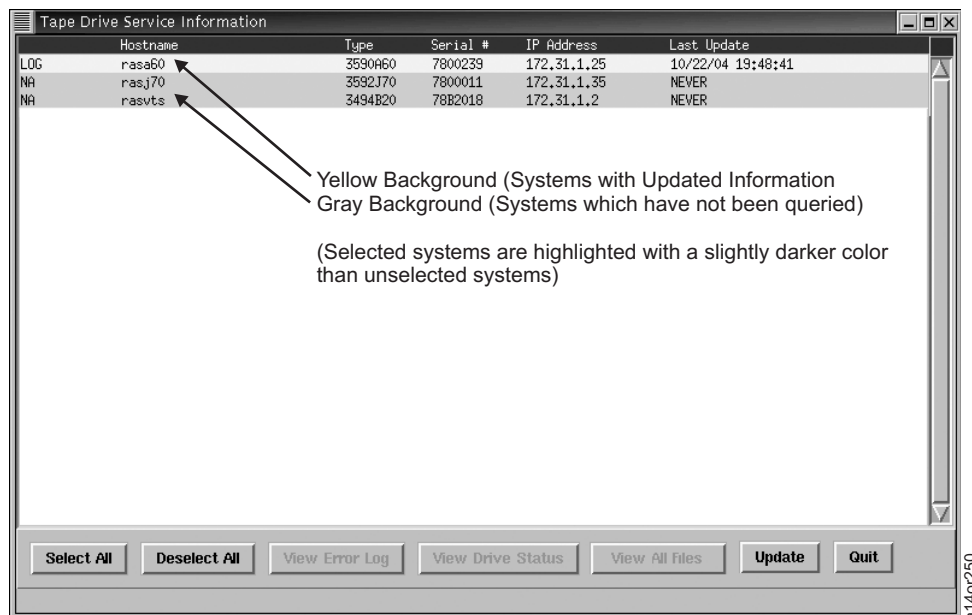


Figure 159. Tape Drive Service Information – Main Screen

3. The Figure 159 lists all systems attached to the System Console which might have tape drive information available. The Main Screen shows a summary of the update status of the systems attached to the System Console as of the DATE and TIME INDICATED in the right column. The systems listed are highlighted according to the following color scheme:

### Yellow Background

Tape drive information for this system has been updated

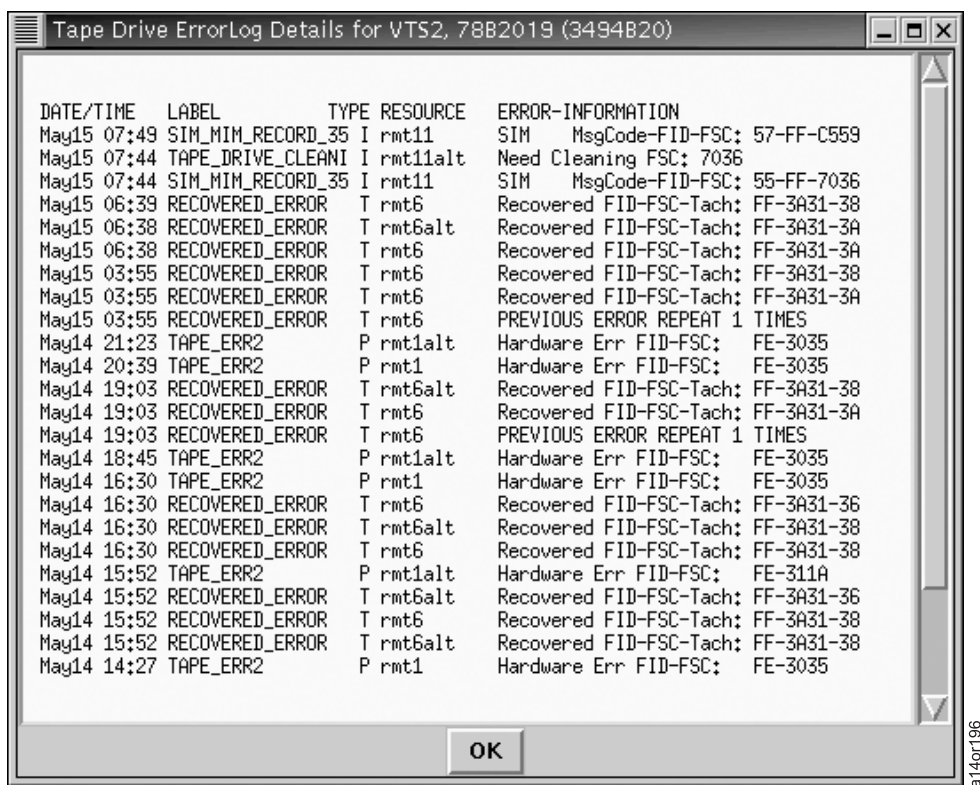
### Gray (or White) Background

No tape drive information has ever been reported to the System Console

4. Tape Drive Service Information is NOT run automatically. It is performed by selecting any number of systems in the listing and then clicking **Update**. You can select individual systems by pointing to the system list entry and clicking the left mouse button once. (Click the entry again to deselect the system.) Alternatively, you can select all of the systems on the list by clicking **Select All** (or deselect by clicking **Deselect All**).
5. As the System Console receives service information from the selected tape systems during the update process, the selected systems become deselected (un-highlighted), the date and time of last update is changed to the current time, and the new status is indicated by the background color of the system entry listing.

**Note:** The update process can be lengthy with a large number of attached systems. However, this tool will time-out after ten minutes for unresponsive systems and return control to the user. The tool is normally unresponsive during the Update process and may appear to be locked up if attached systems are not responding.

6. The Control Unit Tape Drive Service Information Files (code level V3.1.0 and above) show the following information for each attached tape system, following a successful update (see Figure 162 on page 120 and Figure 163 on page 120):
  - Control Unit Error Log showing tape drive entries (see Figure 160)
  - Control Unit Tape Drive Status (see Figure 161 on page 119)



DATE/TIME	LABEL	TYPE	RESOURCE	ERROR-INFORMATION
May15 07:49	SIM_MIM_RECORD_35	I	rmt11	SIM MsgCode-FID-FSC: 57-FF-C559
May15 07:44	TAPE_DRIVE_CLEANI	I	rmt11alt	Need Cleaning FSC: 7036
May15 07:44	SIM_MIM_RECORD_35	I	rmt11	SIM MsgCode-FID-FSC: 55-FF-7036
May15 06:39	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6	Recovered FID-FSC-Tach: FF-3A31-38
May15 06:38	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6alt	Recovered FID-FSC-Tach: FF-3A31-3A
May15 06:38	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6	Recovered FID-FSC-Tach: FF-3A31-3A
May15 03:55	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6	Recovered FID-FSC-Tach: FF-3A31-38
May15 03:55	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6	Recovered FID-FSC-Tach: FF-3A31-3A
May15 03:55	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6	PREVIOUS ERROR REPEAT 1 TIMES
May14 21:23	TAPE_ERR2	P	rmt1alt	Hardware Err FID-FSC: FE-3035
May14 20:39	TAPE_ERR2	P	rmt1	Hardware Err FID-FSC: FE-3035
May14 19:03	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6alt	Recovered FID-FSC-Tach: FF-3A31-38
May14 19:03	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6	Recovered FID-FSC-Tach: FF-3A31-3A
May14 19:03	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6	PREVIOUS ERROR REPEAT 1 TIMES
May14 18:45	TAPE_ERR2	P	rmt1alt	Hardware Err FID-FSC: FE-3035
May14 16:30	TAPE_ERR2	P	rmt1	Hardware Err FID-FSC: FE-3035
May14 16:30	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6	Recovered FID-FSC-Tach: FF-3A31-36
May14 16:30	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6alt	Recovered FID-FSC-Tach: FF-3A31-38
May14 16:30	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6	Recovered FID-FSC-Tach: FF-3A31-38
May14 15:52	TAPE_ERR2	P	rmt1alt	Hardware Err FID-FSC: FE-311A
May14 15:52	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6alt	Recovered FID-FSC-Tach: FF-3A31-36
May14 15:52	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6	Recovered FID-FSC-Tach: FF-3A31-38
May14 15:52	RECOVERED_ERROR	T	rmt6alt	Recovered FID-FSC-Tach: FF-3A31-38
May14 14:27	TAPE_ERR2	P	rmt1	Hardware Err FID-FSC: FE-3035

Figure 160. Tape Drive Service Information – Tape Drive Error Log Details Screen

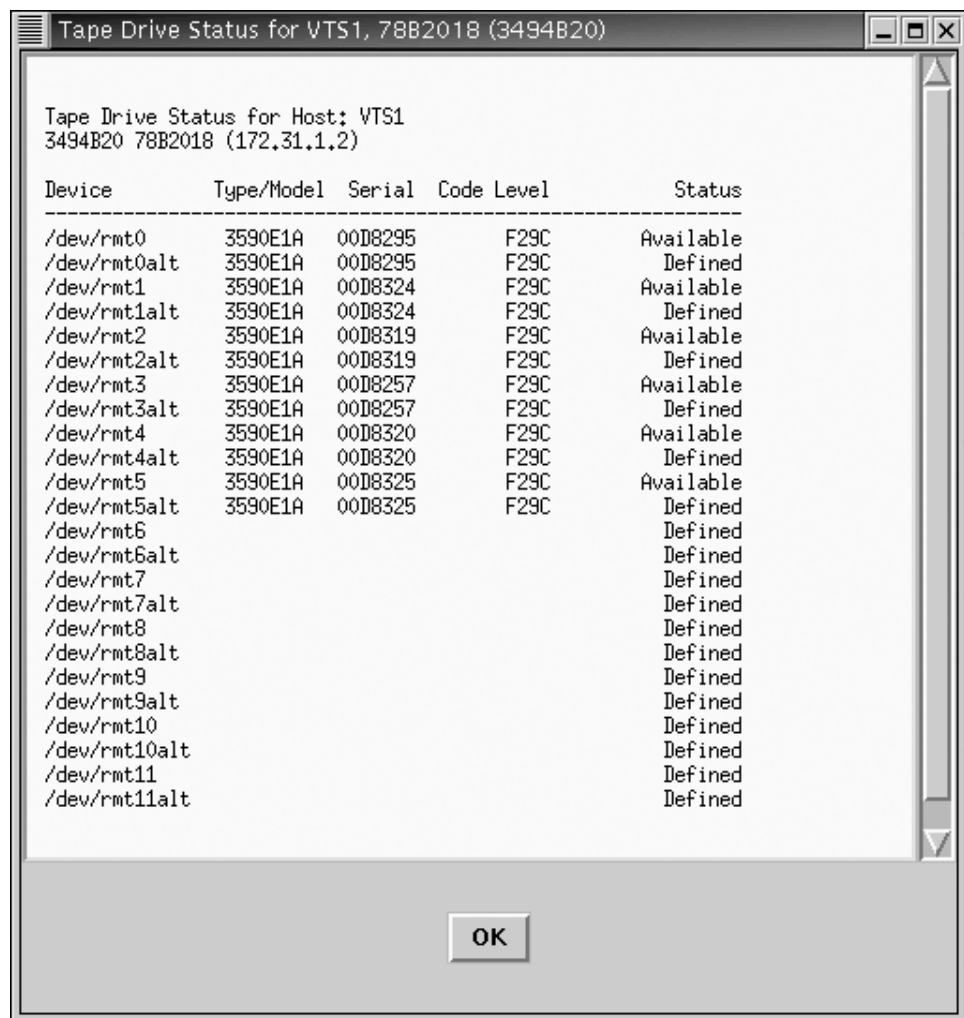


Figure 161. Tape Drive Service Information – Tape Drive Status Screen



Figure 162. View Tape Drive Service Information – Code Level V3.1.0 or Above

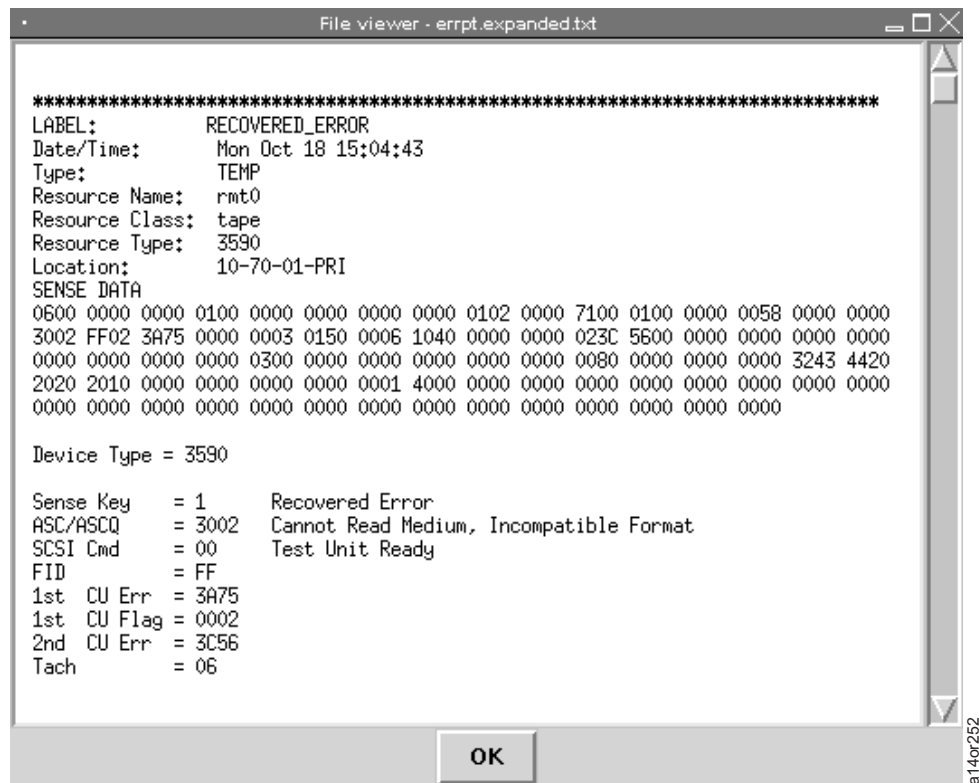


Figure 163. File Viewer Showing a File Generated by Tape Drive Service Information – Code Level V3.1.0 or Above

- Each report may be viewed by selecting one of the systems listed on the Main Screen (Figure 159 on page 117), then clicking **View Error Log** or **View Drive Status**. Systems may be selected by pointing to the system list entry, and clicking the left mouse button once. (Clicking the entry a second time deselects the system.)

For code level V3.1.0 and above, you can use the additional action **View All Files**. This action allows you to view all drive service information returned by a tape system. You also can find additional formatted or unformatted error information in these files.

- From the Main Screen in Figure 159 on page 117, select **Quit** to quit.

## Tape Drive Code Broadcast From Web Interface

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

The code level requirements are:

**TSSC** System console code version 5.3.x and above

### IBM TS7700 Virtualization Engine

TSSC must be a hardware model 8485 (x206m) or 8849 (x306m)

### IBM 3494 Virtual Tape Server and Virtual Tape Controller

Code version 2.26.xx.xx and above

### IBM 3590 A60 Tape Controller

Code version 1.16.xx.xx and above

### IBM 3592 J70 Tape Controller

Code version 1.17.xx.xx and above

### IBM 3592 C06 Tape Controller

Code version 1.20.x.x and above

### IBM 3592 C07 Tape Controller

Code version 1.25.x.xx and above

### IBM 3494 ATL (L12, L14, L22)

Not currently operational

- Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
- From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK**.
- Select **System Tools > Drive Code Broadcast**. You see Figure 164.

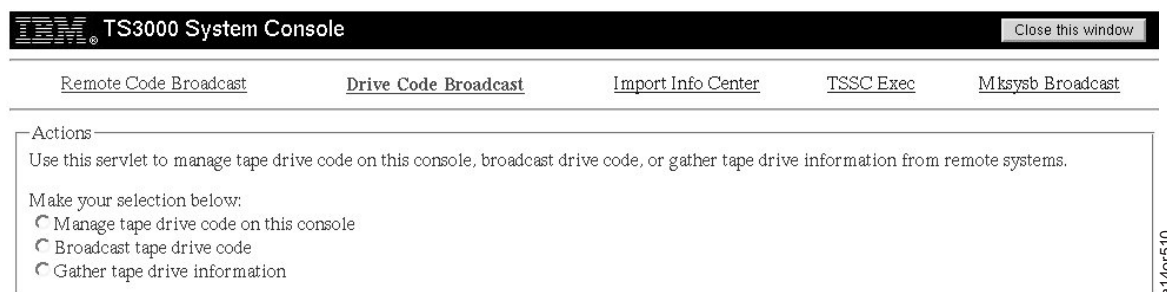


Figure 164. Drive Code Broadcast Web Interface

- Select the **Manage tape drive code on this console** option under **Actions** to view tape drive code currently on the TSSC. From this screen you may add new code to the console or delete existing code.
- To add code, click on the **Add new tape drive code to this console** button. You will be prompted to insert a CD-ROM containing tape drive code into the optical disc drive. Once the disc has been

inserted into the console, click **OK** to continue. If a valid drive code CD was inserted, you will see a listing of the drive code on the disc, similar to Figure 165. Check the box next to each entry you want to copy to the console and click **Copy selected code to console**. If you don't want to copy any code from this disc to the console, click the **Cancel** button.

**IBM TS3000 System Console**

Remote Code Broadcast      Drive Code Broadcast

---

**Actions**

Use this servlet to manage tape drive code on this console, broadcast drive

Make your selection below:

- ☒ Manage tape drive code on this console
- ☐ Broadcast tape drive code
- ☐ Gather tape drive information

---

**Manage Tape Drive Code**


Select the code images to copy to this console:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Filename	Date	Size (bytes)
<input type="checkbox"/>	D3I0_C8E.fmr	Thu Jun 12 22:51:16 UTC 2008	3596584

a14or507

Figure 165. Drive code listing. You may copy selected drive code to the console

6. Similarly, to delete existing code, place a check mark next to the code images you wish to delete. Click the **Delete selected code** button and you will be prompted to verify the delete operation. Click **OK** to continue deleting the selected drive code or **Cancel** to return to the previous screen.
7. See Figure 166 on page 123. To broadcast tape drive code to systems attached to this console, select the **Broadcast tape drive code** option under **Actions**. The display will change to show the existing code on this console and all valid broadcast targets attached to this TSSC. (Optionally, you will also see other TSSCs connected over the Grid network.) Place a check mark next to each code image to broadcast and each target system that should receive the broadcast. You must select at least one image and one attached system. Once your selections have been made, click the **Broadcast Selected Code** button. You will be prompted to verify the operation, so click **OK** to continue the broadcast or **Cancel** to return to the previous screen. The broadcast may take several minutes to complete depending on how many target systems were selected. Once the broadcast has finished, you will see a message displaying the status of each individual broadcast.


**TS3000 System Console**

Remote Code Broadcast

Drive Code Broadcast

---

Actions

Use this servlet to manage tape drive code on this console, broadcast driv

Make your selection below:

☐ Manage tape drive code on this console  
☒ Broadcast tape drive code  
☐ Gather tape drive information

---

Broadcast Tape Drive Code

Select the code images to broadcast:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Filename	Date	Size (bytes)
<input type="checkbox"/>	D3I0_C8E.fmrz	Wed Jul 21 10:04:32 UTC 2010	3596584

Select your broadcast targets:

<input type="checkbox"/>	Machine type	Serial number	Hostname	IP address
<input type="checkbox"/>	3592C06	78C5024	3590cu20	172.31.1.247
<input type="checkbox"/>	3592C06	78C5838	3590cu10	172.31.1.242

Broadcast Selected Code

Cancel


a14cr508

Figure 166. The broadcast screen will display all available code images and valid broadcast targets.

8. See Figure 167 on page 124. You may gather tape drive information from attached systems by selecting the **Gather tape drive information** option under **Actions**. The display will show all valid attached systems. Place a check mark next to each system for which you would like to see tape drive information. Once your selections have been made, click the **Gather information from selected systems** button. You will be prompted before information is gathered. Click **OK** to continue or **Cancel** to end this process. Clicking OK will proceed with the gathering process. It may take several minutes depending on the number of systems selected. Once finished, the screen will display tape drive information for the selected systems.

Chapter 3. Procedures 123




**TS3000 System Console**

---

Remote Code Broadcast

---

Successfully gathered tape drive information from all selected systems.

Actions

Use this servlet to manage tape drive code on this console, broadcast drive code, or

Make your selection below:

☐ Manage tape drive code on this console  
☐ Broadcast tape drive code  
☒ Gather tape drive information

---

Gather Tape Drive Information

Tape drive information from selected systems:

Hostname	Images	Device	Type	Serial	Code
rasc06	D3I0_C90.fmrz	/dev/rmt0priA	3592-E06	1326806	268F
	D3I1_E8B.fmrz				
	D3I1_EA8.fmrz	/dev/rmt0priB	3592-E06	1326806	268F
	D3I2_68F.fmrz				

Gather information from selected systems

Cancel

a14cr509

Figure 167. Display showing tape drive information for a selected system

## Remote Access Using NetTerm

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

When using a workstation or notebook (laptop) computer with a modem, it is first necessary to establish a connection to the system console modem. The following instructions apply for using the NetTerm tool. (Other tools also may be used.)

### Configure NetTerm for Accessing a System Console's Modem

1. From the Phone Directory window, click **OK**.
2. Start the NetTerm program.
3. From the NetTerm Start-up Window tool bar, select **File**.
4. From the File pop-up list, select **Phone Directory**.
5. From the Phone Directory window, select **Modem Test**.
6. From the Phone Directory window, modify the following fields to the values listed:

Field	Entry
Name	(select a name with which you are comfortable. An example would be Customer name.)
Phone Number of Modem	(from Configuration Sheet-Select modem attached to COM1-ttyS0)
Emulation	IBM_3151
Keys	IBM_3151



7. From the Phone Directory window, verify that the Connection field has **Modem** selected.
8. From the Phone Directory window, click **Modem Settings**. This will bring up a Communications Setup window.
9. From the Communications Setup window, click **Modems**. This will bring up a Select Modem window.
10. From the Select Modem window, click **Default**. You can be returned to the Phone Directory window or the Communications Setup window. To return to:
  - Phone Directory window, go to Step 11.
  - Communications Setup window, go to Step 12.
11. From the Phone Directory window, click **Modem Settings** to bring up the Communications Setup window.
12. From the Communications Setup window, modify the following fields to the values listed:

<b>Field</b>	<b>Entry</b>
Port:	xxxx (Select the port for your PC/Laptop modem)
Baud Rate:	56000
Data Bits:	8
Parity:	None
Stop bits:	1
Modem Initialize command-Accept Default:AT E1 V1 M1 Q0 &B1 &C1 &D2 &H1 &R2 &N0 &K1 S11=50 S7=60	

**Control Settings (click on box to change)**

DTR/DSR	box unchecked
RTS/CTS	box checked
XON/OFF	box unchecked
Tone Dialing	box checked
Direct Line	box unchecked
Ignore Carrier	box unchecked

Use TAPI            box unchecked

13. After making the changes to the Communications Setup window, click **OK**. You will be returned to the Phone Directory window.
14. From the Phone Directory window, click **Desktop**.
15. From the Desktop window, change the following settings:
  - a. Click on the **Autowrap** box to place a check mark (✓) in that box.
  - b. Click on the **Exit NetTerm on disconnect** box to remove the check mark from that box.
16. From the Desktop window, click **OK**. You will be returned back to the phone Directory window.
17. From the Phone Directory window, click **Color**.
18. From the Screen Colors window, click on the **Allow Graphics rendition code of 0 to reset colors to default** to place a check mark (✓) in that box.
19. From the Screen Colors window, click **OK**. You will be returned to the Phone Directory window.
20. From the Phone Directory window, click **Add**.

**Note:** The Phone Directory entry (the name for this activity that you selected in Step 6 on page 124) may not be displayed in the phone directory list until you exit and restart the NetTerm program.

21. From the Phone Directory window, click **OK**.

## Connecting to a System Console's Modem

1. From the NetTerm main menu, select **File**.
2. Select **Phone Directory**.
3. Select the Phone Directory Entry established for this console (entry previously created in Step 6 on page 124).

4. Select **Connect**.

**Note:** If the LAN network is down, have the service representative or the customer administrator install the 30.5-m (100-ft) serial cable that was shipped with the IBM 3953. It attaches to the S0 port (S1 port on IBM 3953).

```
CONNECT 33600

IBM TS3000 System Console Version 4.0.0-121905 Level: gint-1021

raselmc.storage.tucson.ibm.com login: |
```

Figure 168. Enter Password Screen

5. Login to the system console as user **Service** (this login is case-sensitive) Use the password provided from IBM Support to begin the authentication process. Enter your Authentication ID when prompted. This will be your unique userid also provided by IBM Support.

```
3.0.0
=
tssnet1 login: Service
Password:
Last login: Tue Apr  2 15:32:20 on ttyS0

Please enter your Authentication ID: jdoe

Group: Service
userdel: user jdoe does not exist
Creating user jdoe
Account expires on: 05/25/04
Changing password for user jdoe
New password:
Retype new password:
passwd: all authentication tokens updated successfully
Initiating broadcast to... vts1
Initiating broadcast to... vts2
Initiating broadcast to... vts3
Initiating broadcast to... vts4
Waiting for completion...
vts1: Ok
vts2: Ok
vts3: Could not execute remote command
vts4: Ok
Continue with the following key code.

Key: en7260wv93Lzg577XXLR7A2X2UxBh155bv8fjy1o5me?1

Press [c] to continue.
c
Exiting
```

Figure 169. Connect to System Console Modem Screen

**Notes:**

- This process attempts to copy your userid and password to attached VTS, VTC, or Tape Controller systems. This process may not complete successfully on all attached systems.
- Note the results after "Waiting for completion..." This indicates the success of copying your password to systems attached to the console.
- Your userid and password will be valid for the time indicated on the console and for all systems that indicate "Ok" after "Waiting for completion..."
- The "Waiting for completion..." process should not take longer than five minutes before timing out.

- For systems which do not respond with "Ok", you will need to either perform a separate authentication, or login using methods from previous code levels.
  - See "Login Options" on page 43 (Authenticated) for more information about systems that do not respond "Ok".
6. Use the mouse to highlight the line containing the "Key ..." string. From the NetTerm main menu, select **Edit** --> **Copy** to place the key on the clipboard. Enter **c**, and press **Enter** to continue and to exit the session.

**Note:** Access to an IBM Authentication Server is required to perform the following step.

7. Using the key that was generated in Step 6, login to the IBM Authentication Server to retrieve your authentication password. When requested, use the NetTerm main menu commands **Edit** --> **Paste** to provide the key to the authentication server.

```

UserId is jdoe, AccessLvl is Service
Please enter Key Code.

Key: en7260wv93Lzg577XXLR7A2X2UxBh155bv8fjy1o5me?l
Key: en7260wv93Lzg577XXLR7A2X2UxBh155bv8fjy1o5me?l

Hello jdoe Please login using password: abcd321

```

Figure 170. Userid Screen

8. Make a note of your password from the IBM Authentication Server. Continue logging in to the system console. Your password will be valid for as long as twenty-four hours.

**Note:** Do not use a Copy/Paste keyboard function to enter your password for system console login.

9. Login to the system console, by using your unique userid and the password that were provided by the IBM Authentication server.

```

IBM TS3000 System Console Version 4.0.0-121905 Level: gint-1021

raselmc.storage.tucson.ibm.com login: jdoe
Password:
COLOR NETTERM
jdoe@raselmc:"> █

```

Figure 171. Enter Password Screen

10. From the command prompt, you may perform console tasks or you may alternatively communicate with tape systems that are attached to the system console.

**Note:** It is possible that the keyboard function keys (F1, F2, and so forth) and the Backspace/Delete keys will not work as they should. When this happens, enter the following command at the command prompt **export TERM=vt100**. If the function keys still do not work as they should, use the combination **Esc+xx**, where **xx** is the number of the function key.

11. To use Telnet to connect to systems that are attached to the system console, issue the **tsys** command, and enter the number of the system to which you would like to connect (see Figure 172 on page 128). You can use the command **tsys-?** to view the choices for reordering the list.

IBM TS3000 System Console  
Connect to Attached Tape System

#	Make/Model	Serial Number	IP Address	Hostname
1:	3494B20	78B2018	172.31.1.40	rasvts
2:	3494L22	1314501	172.31.1.5	"LMA"
3:	3590A60	7000239	172.31.1.26	rasa60
4:	3592J70	100B89A	172.31.1.36	rasj70
5:	3953L05	1300004	172.31.1.11	"LMA"
6:	3953L05	1300004	172.31.1.12	"LMB"

Which system would you like to connect to (or 'q' to quit)? █

Figure 172. Choose System Prompt

You can login with your userid and password to any of the attached systems that responded with “Waiting for completion” -> “Ok” in Step 5 on page 126, above. See “Authenticated” in “Login Options” on page 43 for information on how to login to systems that did not respond “Ok”.

12. To logoff from the system console, type **exit** at the command prompt, and press **Enter**.

```
[jdoe@tssnet1 jdoe]# exit  
logout
```

Figure 173. Logout

13. From the NetTerm main screen, select **File**, then **Exit** to close the NetTerm tool.

## Call Home Queue Management

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. You see the login prompt shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application.
4. Click **Call Home Queue**. You see the Figure 174 on page 129. The various call home record types (in the "Type" column) are described in Table 12 on page 129.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to manage Call Home queues (**TSSC Menus > Call Home Functions > Call Home Queue Options**). Refer to “RAS Menus” on page 162.

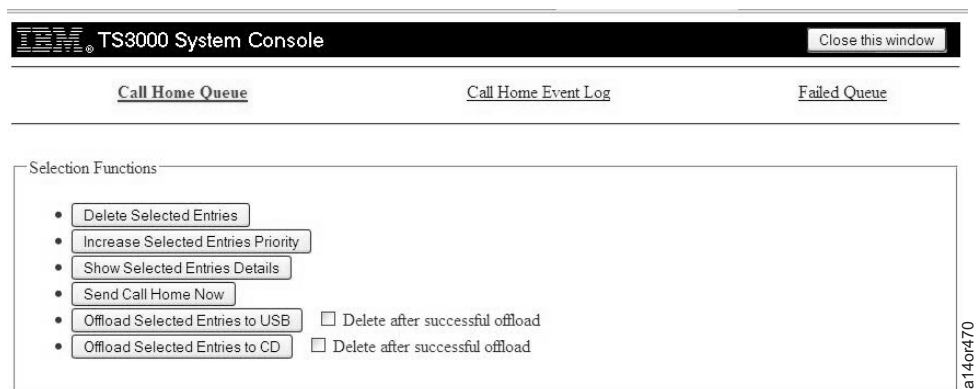


Figure 174. Call Home Queue Management - Main Screen

Table 12. Call Home Record Types. From the Type column in Figure 174.

Type	Description
DC	Data Call Home (Binary)
DI	Information - EC Install, Call Home Test
DT	Dump/Trace (Binary)
EC	EC Activation
HB	Heartbeat MRPD
IS	Install
PB	Problem Record
PE	PE Package (Binary)
PG	Problem Page
PI	Proactive / Warning
PT	Pager Test
RI	Close Problem
RL	Remote Dial-In
SW	Software Problem Record

The Queue Management tool offers the following capabilities:

- View current entries in Call Home queue on the system console
  - Delete or Change priority of entries
  - View details of specific entries
  - Offload individual packages immediately
  - Offload Call Home Entries to CD
5. To Delete or Force Delete a Call Home Queue Entry, select the entry by clicking on the check box next to the corresponding entry. Click **Delete Selected Entries**. To Show Details for a Call Home Queue Entry, select the entry by clicking the checkbox next to the corresponding entry.
  6. Click **Show Selected Entry Details**. Figure 175 displays.

**Note:** For DC and PE packages, the TSSC will provide the following features:

- To download a specific file from the call home package, click on the **Data Package** link. This will allow you to extract the files from the package, but will not affect the contents of the package when the call home file is offloaded.
- Below the package's header information you will see a listing of all of the packages in the call home file.

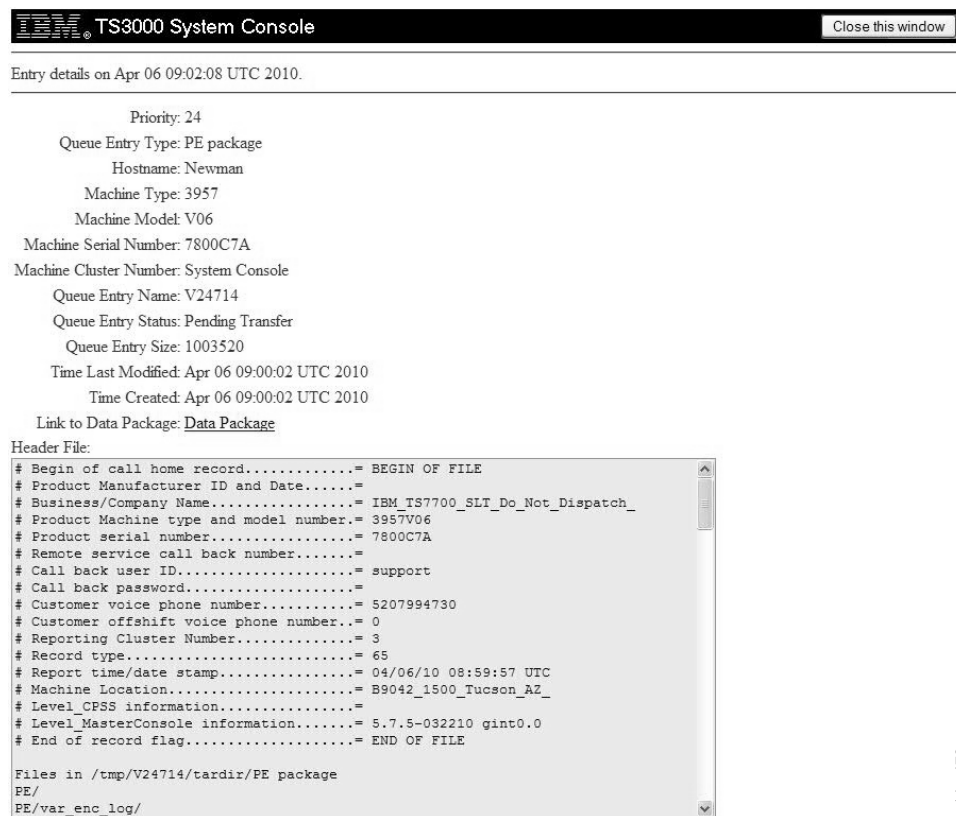


Figure 175. Call Home Queue Management – Call Home Queue Entry Details

7. To refresh the Call Home Queue listing table, select **Refresh Queue**.
8. To offload a Call Home Queue Entry to CD, select the entry by clicking the check box next to the corresponding entry.
9. Select **Offload Selected Entries to CDROM**. Figure 176 on page 131 displays.

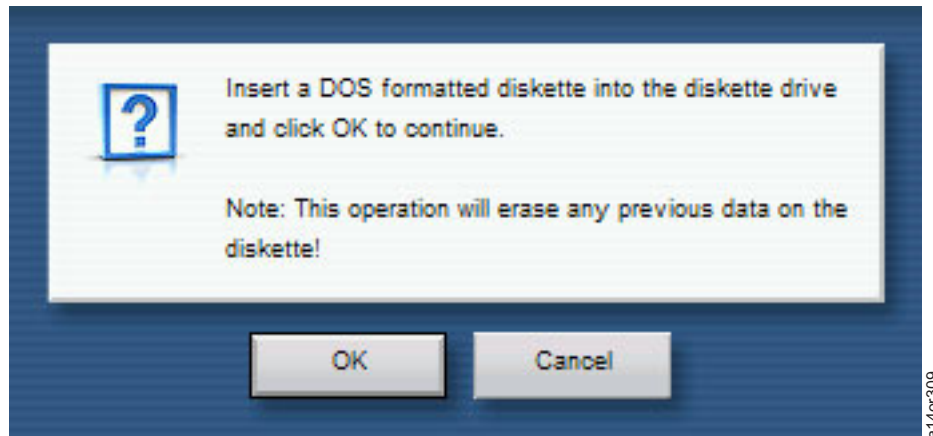


Figure 176. Call Home Queue Management – Offload Queue Entry to CD

10. Click **OK**.
11. To Offload an individual package immediately, select the check box next to the package you want offloaded and click the **Send Call Home Now** button. The page will return with a message to confirm the completed action.

## Failed Queue Management

You can use the system console to view the Failed Queue Management screens.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application.
4. Click **Call Home Queue**.
5. Click **Failed Queue** at the top of the page. You see the screen shown in Figure 177.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to manage failed Call Home queues (**TSSC Menus > Call Home Functions > Failed Call Home Queue Options**). Refer to “RAS Menus” on page 162.

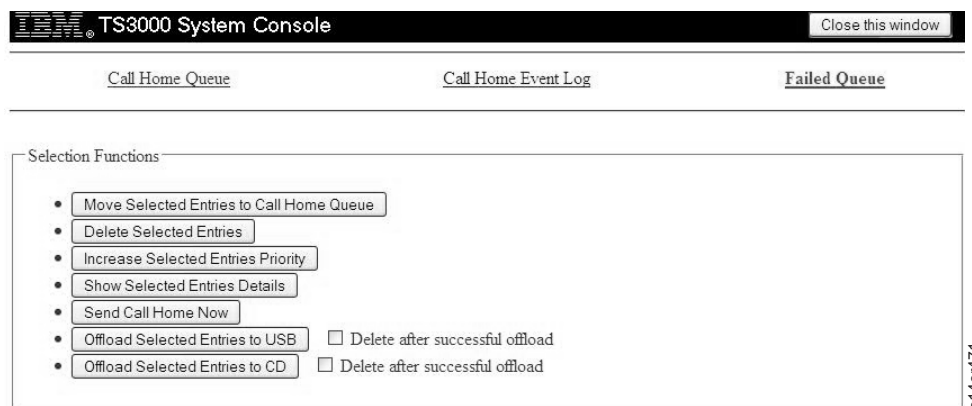


Figure 177. Call Home Queue Screen.

This screen shows the Failed Queue interface. The Failed Queue Management tool offers the following capabilities:

- a. View Call Home entries that have failed on the system console.

- b. Return a failed queue entry back to the active Call Home queue.
  - c. Delete failed queue entries.
  - d. Offload individual packages immediately
  - e. View the details and associated log files of failed queue entries.
  - f. Offload failed Call Home entries.
6. To Delete or Force Delete a Failed Call Home Queue Entry, select the entry by clicking on the check box next to the corresponding entry. Click **Delete Selected Entries**.
  7. To Show Details for a Failed Call Home Queue Entry, select the entry by clicking the checkbox next to the corresponding entry. Click **Show Selected Entry Details**. See the following figure.

**Note:** For DC and PE packages, the system console will provide the following features:

- To download a specific file from the call home package, click on the **Data Package** link. This will allow you to extract the files from the package, but will not affect the contents of the package when the call home file is offloaded.
- Below the package's header information you will see a listing of all of the packages in the call home file.

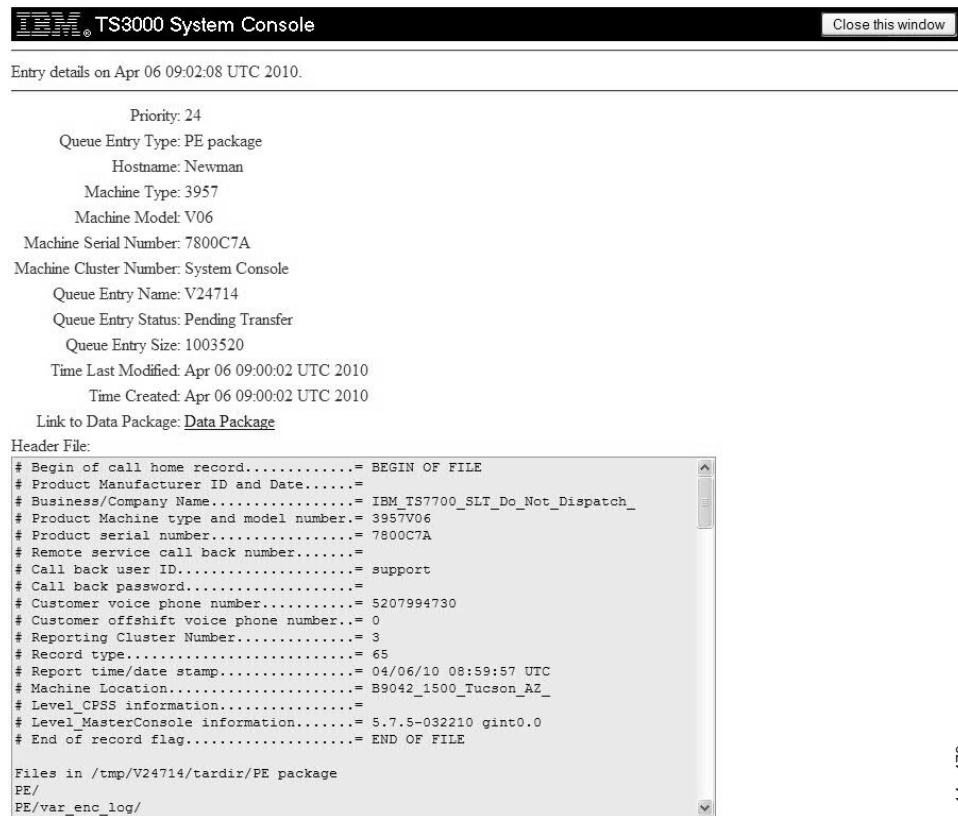


Figure 178. Call Home Queue Management. Call Home Queue Entry Details

8. To refresh the Failed Call Home Queue listing table, select **Refresh Queue**.
9. To offload a Failed Call Home Queue Entry to Diskette, select the entry by clicking the check box next to the corresponding entry.
10. Select **Offload Selected Entries to Diskette**. The following figure is displayed.



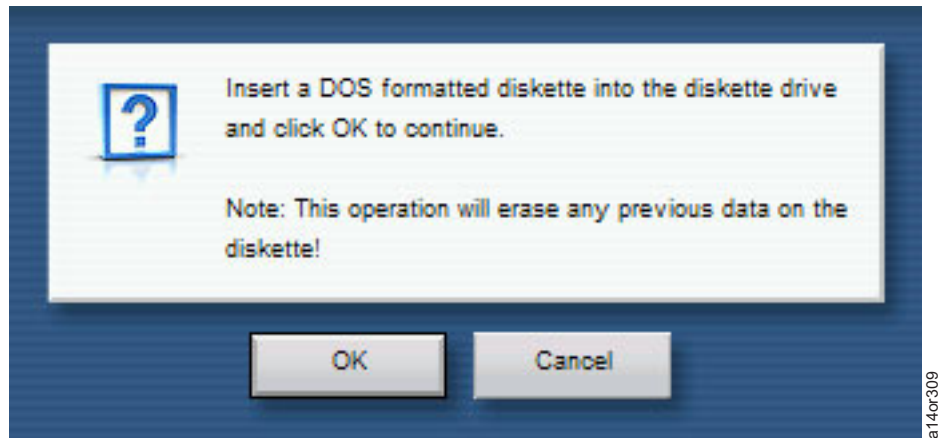


Figure 179. Call Home Queue Management. Offload Queue Entry to Diskette

11. Click **OK**.
12. To view the log for a specific Failed Call Home entry, click **view** in the Log File column for the corresponding entry. The following screen will be displayed at the bottom of the page.
13. To Offload an individual package immediately, select the check box next to the package you want offloaded and click the **Send Call Home Now** button. The page will return with a message to confirm the completed action.

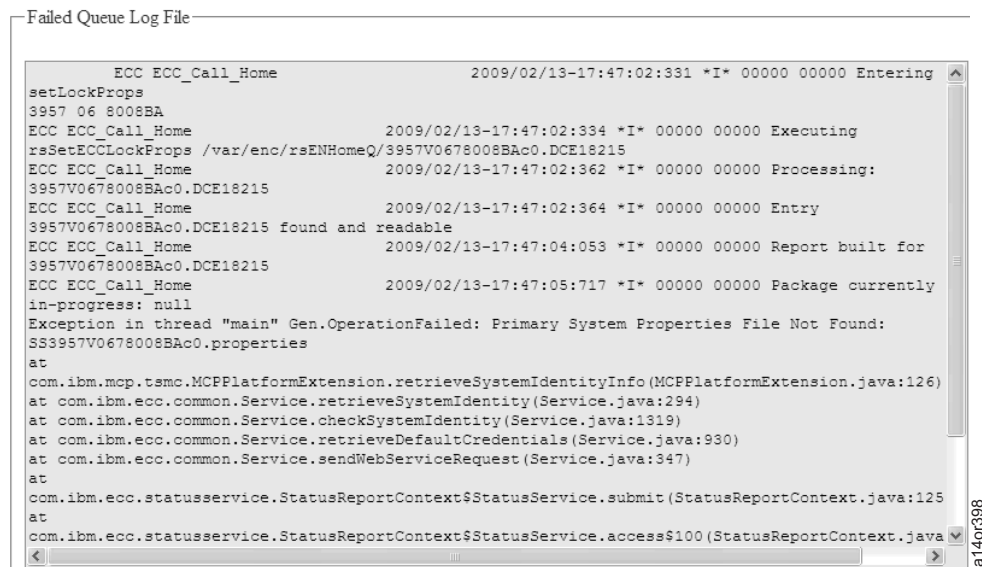


Figure 180. Failed Queue Log File.

**Note:** There are generally three cases to look for in the log file to determine why a particular call home failed.

- a. If you see a message stating the "Primary System Properties File Not Found," this means the system attempting to call home is not attached to the system console. The system must be attached to the system console before it can call home. When the machine is attached, this package can be moved back to the Call Home Queue.
- b. For logs containing "Failing Machine Type: [####] Serial: [#####] is NOT REGISTERED in the [CCPF] system," the attached machine is no longer under warranty and cannot call home. The next line of support should be contacted if further help is required.

- c. The last case will say that a "Duplicate file is in testcase." This means this call home package has already been called home, and this copy can be discarded.

# Call Home Event Log

You can use the system console to view the Call Home Event Log and see the history of Call Home packages that have been sent by the system console.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application.
4. Click **Call Home Queue**.
5. Click **Call Home Event Log** at the top of the page. You see the screen shown in Figure 181.

Left Master Console	Type	Serial	Pos	Hostname	Type	Queue Entry	PMR	SIM LABEL	Resource
2009/09/03-21:29:19	3957V06	78083EG	0	rasmatazz	DI	Dhw7138	13120		
2009/09/03-21:24:57	3957V06	78083EG	0	rasmatazz	DI	Dhw25124	13119		
2009/09/03-21:22:09	3957V06	78083EG	0	rasmatazz	DI	Dhw11828	13116		
2009/09/03-21:20:50	3957V06	78083EG	0	rasmatazz	DI	Dhw24258	13113		
2009/09/03-21:02:18	3957V06	78083EG	0	rasmatazz	DI	Dhw5569	13101		

Figure 181. Call Home Event Log.

6. You can use the Log Viewer Controls to sort the event log entries. Sort categories include the following:
  - a. Number of entries per page
  - b. Type of Call Home package
  - c. Subsystem Type
7. Certain Call Home packages offer detailed information in addition to what is displayed in the event log. When additional information is available, a **Detail** link will be displayed in the far right column. See the following figure.

2009/09/03-13:46:11	3957V06	78083EG	0	rasmatazz	PB	PB1pUa	13136	CORE_DUMP	SYSPROC	<a href="#">Detail</a>
2009/09/03-11:46:59	3957V06	78083EG	0	rasmatazz	PB	PB123Bhz	13048			<a href="#">Detail</a>
2009/09/03-00:18:11	3957V06	78083EG	0	rasmatazz	PB	PBQN3hMa	12787	OC_ENV_ERR_PERM	Router	<a href="#">Detail</a>

Figure 182. Call Home Event Log entries showing the Detail link

8. Clicking the **Detail** link brings up another window with additional event information as shown in the following figure.

Call Home Queue Entry PBT-ipUa	
Hostname	rasmatazz
System Type	3957V06
Serial Number	78083EG
Rack Position	0
PMR Number	13136
Data Record Locator	e78-083EGp0030920092035402040050
SIM Details	
RC/RQC Index	3
Message Modifier	2204
Message Data	00 00 00
SIM Identifier	4
Unit Identifier	600
Refcodes	e000 8082 0000
Label	CORE_DUMP
Identifier	A924A5FC
Resource Name	SYSPROC

a14or433

Figure 183. Detailed Event Log Information

## Offloading User Files

You can use the system console to offload user files by various means. For example, for user **service**, the directory would be /home/service/offload. If you are logging on remotely, you can use the browser to download the files onto your system.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. You see the menu shown in Figure 57 on page 46.
4. Select **Offload User Files**. You see Figure 184 on page 136. The directory setting defaults to your user's offload directory. For the user **service**, you will be prompted for the directory you wish to download the data. The suggested directory is "/home/service/offload." You can change to a different directory by adding another name in the "Specify a different offload directory" field, and clicking the **Refresh** button next to that input area. You can also change directories by clicking a directory name in the file list field.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to offload user files (**TSSC Menus > Log Collection Tools > Offload user files**). Refer to "RAS Menus" on page 162.

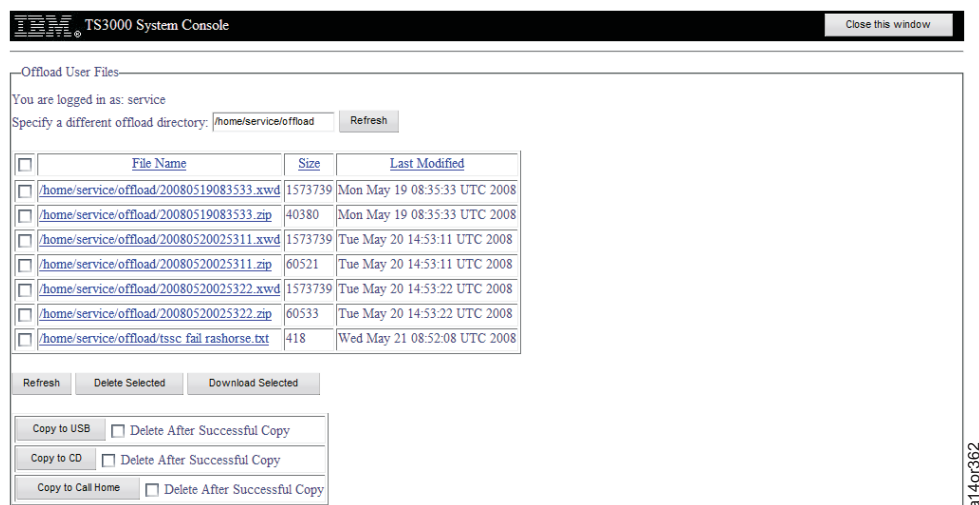


Figure 184. Offload User Files Menu Example. This example does not include Copy to Diskette.

5. Left-click the check boxes next to the file names to select individual files, or left-click the box next to the heading "File Name" to select all the files. You can press Refresh below the list to clear from the check boxes all the choices you made.

**Note:** Your hardware platform will determine the options that are available on this menu. Only those options that are available for your server type appear in the list.

6. Ensure that you have installed the media you are going to offload files to. Use Table 13 to determine the media type or the method you are going to use to offload user files.

Table 13. "Offload User Files" Options

Menu Option	Purpose
Copy to Diskette	Copies files to the media type you select
Copy to USB	
Copy to CD	
Copy to Call Home	Packages files in a data call home and places them in a Call Home queue for transmission
Delete Selected	Deletes files from the directory <b>Warning:</b> Do not delete files that are vital to system console function.
Download Selected	Compresses files into a file called ServiceOffloadBundle.zip. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You also may save a single, raw file by clicking on the filename, or right-clicking the filename and selecting "Save target as." You will be prompted with a download box. If you rename this file, do not allow in any blank spaces in the title you give it.</li> <li>Download Selected compresses the files into a smaller package to lessen the transmission time. This is used primarily by IBM Support.</li> </ul>
Refresh	Refresh the screen (Figure 184)

**Note:** Select "Delete After Successful Copy" if you want to remove the files that you are copying from the listing after you copy them.

7. You see a confirmation box. Ensure that you read all the text in the confirmation box. Click **OK** to copy the files.
8. If you are logged in remotely, you may offload the files directly to your hard drive by clicking on the filename in the table.

## Starting and Stopping Automated Log Collector

Automated Log Collector (ALC) is used to gather log data associated with specific 3584 errors.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.
2. Select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then click **OK**.
4. Select **PE Packages > Subsystem Log Retrieval**. You will see the following screen.

IBM TS3000 System Console

Close this window

System Console PE Package Subsystem Log Retrieval

Select Logs

First: Select machine type of the system you would like to retrieve logs from:

- Select a Machine Type -

Action

Please select a system to the left.

Already retrieved logs? [Click here](#) to offload the logs to call home or media.

a14or480

Figure 185. Subsystem Log Retrieval

5. In the “Select Logs” section, use the drop-down to select a 3584.

IBM TS3000 System Console

Close this window

System Console PE Package Subsystem Log Retrieval

Select Logs

First: Select machine type of the system you would like to retrieve logs from:

3584L32

Next: Select the individual machine. To match hostname and IP addresses to a specific machine, refer to the Attached Systems page. If you do not see your system in the list, make sure it is attached and can be queried successfully.

- Select an Attached System -

Action

Please select a system to the left.

Already retrieved logs? [Click here](#) to offload the logs to call home or media.

a14or481

Figure 186. Select Logs

6. From the new drop-down that appeared, select an attached system.

**TS3000 System Console**

Close this window

System Console PE Package

Subsystem Log Retrieval

Select Logs

First: Select machine type of the system you would like to retrieve logs from:  

3584L32

Next: Select the individual machine. To match hostname and IP addresses to a specific machine, refer to the Attached Systems page. If you do not see your system in the list, make sure it is attached and can be queried successfully.  

RAS3584 Serial Number: 13AAA15

Library Logs:

☒ LIBLG\_01\_OP  
☒ LIBLG\_01\_NO  
☒ LIBLG\_01\_ER  
☒ LIBLG\_01\_AC  
☒ LIBLG\_01\_NV  
☒ LIBLG\_01\_SV

Drive Logs:

☐ DRIVE\_01\_01  
☐ DRIVE\_01\_02  
☐ DRIVE\_02\_01  
☐ DRIVE\_02\_02  
☐ DRIVE\_02\_03  
☐ DRIVE\_02\_04

Action

Retrieve Logs

Once logs are retrieved, they will exist in /var/enc/offload directory.

Already retrieved logs? [Click here](#) to offload the logs to call home or media.

ALC

Error code identification strings:  

(all, none, 2FXX (separate multiple entries with a comma))

Turn on NVRAM log gathering? ☐

Turn on early termination? ☐

Turn on debugging? ☐

How long do you want ALC to run (in days):  

7

Start ALC

a140482

Figure 187. Select Attached System

- In the error code identification strings text box type the error codes you want ALC to check for. You can type **all** (which will include all error codes for log gathering), **none** (which will not gather logs for any error code), or a **list of comma-separated 4 digit hexadecimal numbers** (an X may be used as a wildcard and will match any number in its position).

If you want to turn on NVRAM log gathering, early termination, or debugging, simply check the check box next to the options you want.

Then input how many days you want ALC to run. Don't try to run ALC forever, and run only under the guidance and direction of a PFE.

- Then click **Start ALC**.

138 IBM TS3000 and TS4500 System Console Maintenance Information

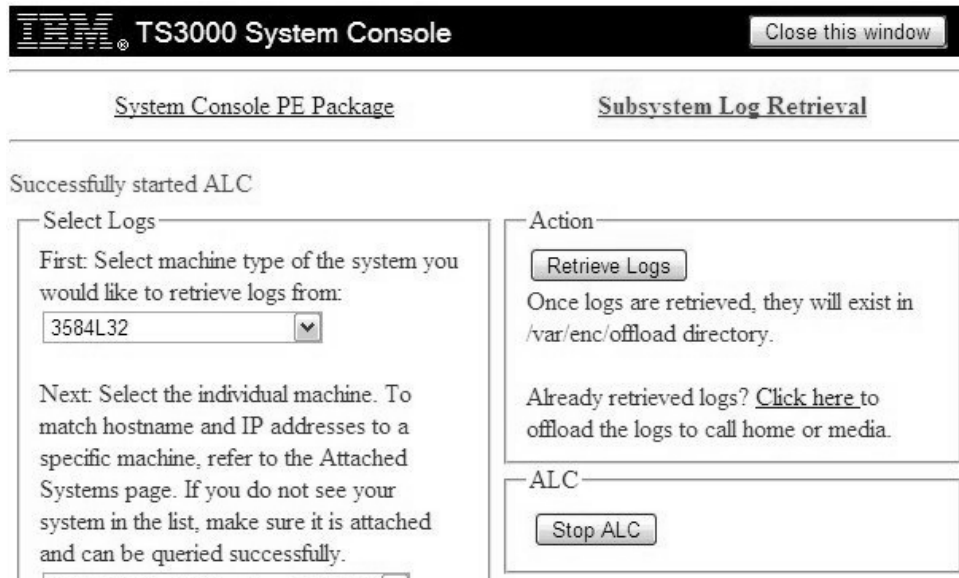


Figure 188. Successfully Started ALC

ALC has been successfully started on your selected 3584 library.  
Every heartbeat error found by ALC will be called home.

#### Stop ALC from the Web Interface

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.
2. Select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then click **OK**.
4. Select **PE Packages > Subsystem Log Retrieval**. You will see the following screen.

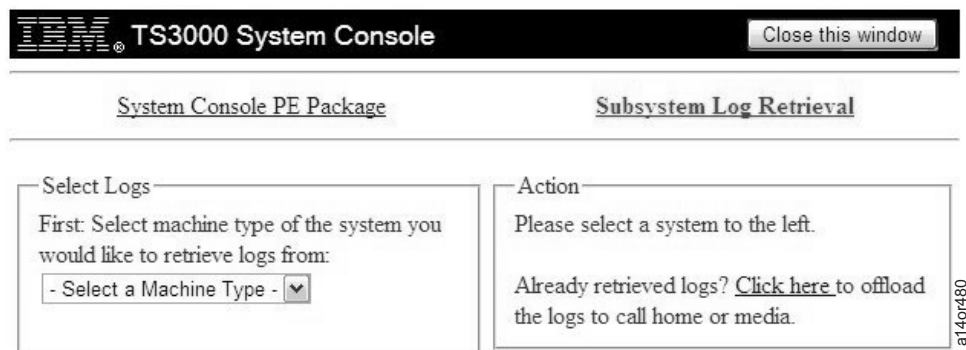


Figure 189. Subsystem Log Retrieval

5. In the "Select Logs" section, use the drop-down to select a 3584.



**IBM TS3000 System Console** Close this window

---

System Console PE Package      Subsystem Log Retrieval

---

**Select Logs**

First: Select machine type of the system you would like to retrieve logs from:

3584L32 ▼

Next: Select the individual machine. To match hostname and IP addresses to a specific machine, refer to the Attached Systems page. If you do not see your system in the list, make sure it is attached and can be queried successfully.

- Select an Attached System - ▼

**Action**

Please select a system to the left.

Already retrieved logs? [Click here](#) to offload the logs to call home or media.

Figure 190. Select Logs

- From the new drop-down that appeared, select an attached system.

**IBM TS3000 System Console** Close this window

---

System Console PE Package      Subsystem Log Retrieval

---

**Select Logs**

First: Select machine type of the system you would like to retrieve logs from:

3584L32 ▼

Next: Select the individual machine. To match hostname and IP addresses to a specific machine, refer to the Attached Systems page. If you do not see your system in the list, make sure it is attached and can be queried successfully.

**Action**

**Retrieve Logs**

Once logs are retrieved, they will exist in /var/enc/offload directory.

Already retrieved logs? [Click here](#) to offload the logs to call home or media.

**ALC**

**Stop ALC**

Figure 191. Select Attached System

- Click **Stop ALC**.



**IBM TS3000 System Console** Close this window

System Console PE Package Subsystem Log Retrieval

Successfully stopped ALC

**Select Logs**

First: Select machine type of the system you would like to retrieve logs from:  
 3584L32

Next: Select the individual machine. To match hostname and IP addresses to a specific machine, refer to the Attached Systems page. If you do not see your system in the list, make sure it is attached and can be queried successfully.  
 RAS3584 Serial Number: 13AAA15

<u>Library Logs:</u>	<u>Drive Logs:</u>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LIBLG_01_OP	<input type="checkbox"/> DRIVE_01_01
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LIBLG_01_NO	<input type="checkbox"/> DRIVE_01_02
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LIBLG_01_ER	<input type="checkbox"/> DRIVE_02_01
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LIBLG_01_AC	<input type="checkbox"/> DRIVE_02_02
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LIBLG_01_NV	<input type="checkbox"/> DRIVE_02_03
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> LIBLG_01_SV	<input type="checkbox"/> DRIVE_02_04

**Action**

Retrieve Logs

Once logs are retrieved, they will exist in /var/enc/offload directory.

Already retrieved logs? [Click here](#) to offload the logs to call home or media.

**ALC**

Error code identification strings:

(all, none, 2FXX (separate multiple entries with a comma))

Turn on NVRAM log gathering? ☐

Turn on early termination? ☐

Turn on debugging? ☐

How long do you want ALC to run (in days):  
 7

Start ALC

a140r487

Figure 192. Successfully Stopped ALC

ALC has been stopped on the selected 3584 library.

### Start ALC from the Command Line

1. Log into the system console. See Figure 55 on page 45.
2. Click anywhere on the desktop, select **Browser Functions > Launch ALC Manager**. You will see the following screen.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to manage ALC (**TSSC Menus > 3584 Options > Manage ALC**). Refer to “RAS Menus” on page 162.

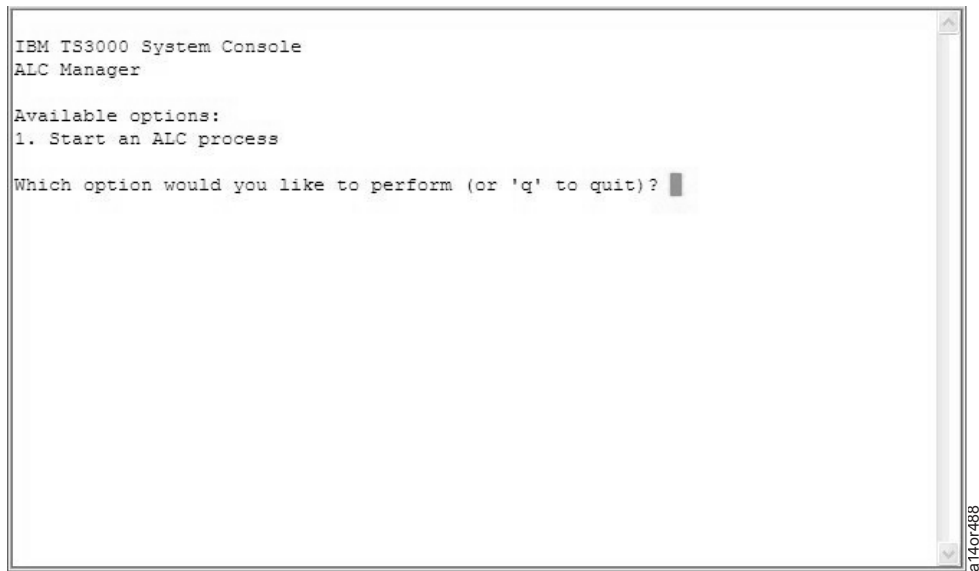


Figure 193. Start an ALC Process

**Note:** If there are 3584s to start ALC against, the option “Start an ALC process” will appear.

3. To start ALC press the **corresponding number** next to “Start an ALC process” then press **Enter**.

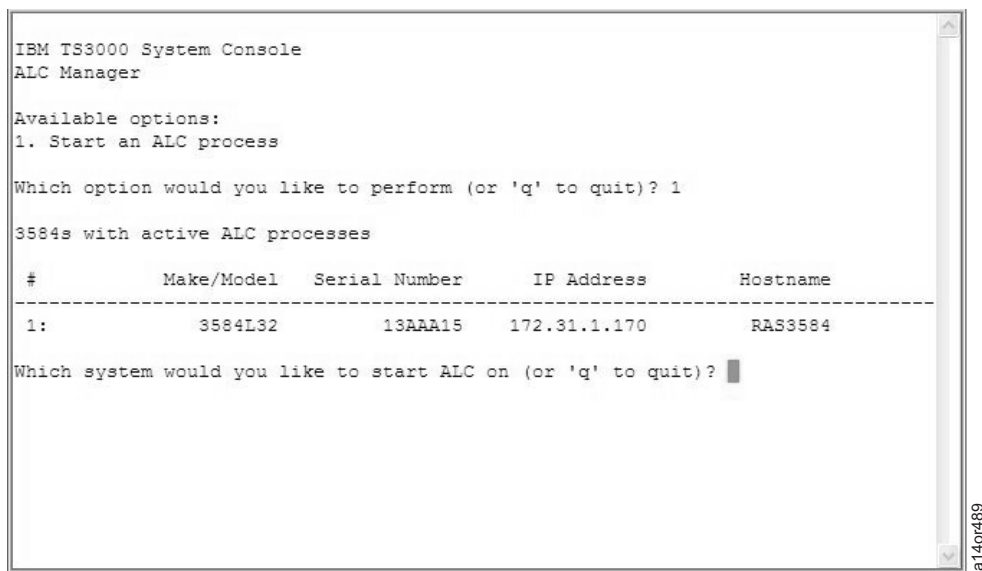


Figure 194. Start an ALC Process

A list of attached 3584 libraries appear. Libraries that already have ALC running will not show up here.

4. Find the 3584 you want to start ALC against from the list. Press the **corresponding number**, then press **Enter**.

```
IBM TS3000 System Console
ALC Manager

Available options:
1. Start an ALC process

Which option would you like to perform (or 'q' to quit)? 1

3584s with active ALC processes

#           Make/Model  Serial Number  IP Address  Hostname
-----
1:          3584L32     13AAA15      172.31.1.170  RAS3584

Which system would you like to start ALC on (or 'q' to quit)? 1

Error code identification strings (all, none, 2FXX (separate multiple entries with a comma)): 
```

Figure 195. Start an ALC Process

The script will now ask for the error code identification strings to define which error codes to check for.

5. Type **all** (which will include all error codes for log gathering), **none** (which will not gather logs for any error code), or **a list of comma separated 4 digit hexadecimal numbers** (an X may be used as a wildcard and will match any number in its position), then press **Enter**.

```
IBM TS3000 System Console
ALC Manager

Available options:
1. Start an ALC process

Which option would you like to perform (or 'q' to quit)? 1

3584s with active ALC processes

#           Make/Model  Serial Number  IP Address  Hostname
-----
1:          3584L32     13AAA15      172.31.1.170  RAS3584

Which system would you like to start ALC on (or 'q' to quit)? 1

Error code identification strings (all, none, 2FXX (separate multiple entries with a comma)): all

Turn on NVRAM log gathering? 
```

Figure 196. Start an ALC Process

You will now be asked if you want to turn on NVRAM log gathering.

6. Type **Yes** or **No**, then press **Enter**.

```
IBM TS3000 System Console
ALC Manager

Available options:
1. Start an ALC process

Which option would you like to perform (or 'q' to quit)? 1

3584s with active ALC processes

#           Make/Model   Serial Number   IP Address   Hostname
-----
1:          3584L32      13AAA15        172.31.1.170 RAS3584

Which system would you like to start ALC on (or 'q' to quit)? 1

Error code identification strings (all, none, 2FXX (separate multiple entries with a comma)): all

Turn on NVRAM log gathering? No

Turn on early termination? █
```

a14or492

Figure 197. Start an ALC Process

You now will be asked to turn on early termination.

7. Type **Yes** or **No**, then press **Enter**.

```
IBM TS3000 System Console
ALC Manager

Available options:
1. Start an ALC process

Which option would you like to perform (or 'q' to quit)? 1

3584s with active ALC processes

#           Make/Model   Serial Number   IP Address   Hostname
-----
1:          3584L32      13AAA15        172.31.1.170 RAS3584

Which system would you like to start ALC on (or 'q' to quit)? 1

Error code identification strings (all, none, 2FXX (separate multiple entries with a comma)): all

Turn on NVRAM log gathering? No

Turn on early termination? No

Turn on debugging? █
```

a14or493

Figure 198. Start an ALC Process

Next, you will be asked to turn on debugging.

8. Type **Yes** or **No**, then press **Enter**.

```

Available options:
1. Start an ALC process

Which option would you like to perform (or 'q' to quit)? 1

3584s with active ALC processes

#           Make/Model   Serial Number   IP Address   Hostname
-----
1:          3584L32      13AAA15        172.31.1.170 RAS3584

Which system would you like to start ALC on (or 'q' to quit)? 1

Error code identification strings (all, none, 2FXX (separate multiple entries with a comma)): all

Turn on NVRAM log gathering? No

Turn on early termination? No

Turn on debugging? No

How long do you want ALC to run (in days) or press enter for default (7 days)?

```

Figure 199. Start an ALC Process

Finally, you will be asked how long you want ALC to run.

9. Type a number greater than zero. Don't try to run ALC forever, and run only under the guidance and direction of a PFE.

```

Available options:
1. Start an ALC process

Which option would you like to perform (or 'q' to quit)? 1

3584s with active ALC processes

#           Make/Model   Serial Number   IP Address   Hostname
-----
1:          3584L32      13AAA15        172.31.1.170 RAS3584

Which system would you like to start ALC on (or 'q' to quit)? 1

Error code identification strings (all, none, 2FXX (separate multiple entries with a comma)): all

Turn on NVRAM log gathering? No

Turn on early termination? No

Turn on debugging? No

ALC started successfully.
raselmc:~ #

```

Figure 200. Start an ALC Process

ALC will now start.

Every heartbeat error found by ALC will be called home.

### Stop ALC from the Command Line

1. Log into the system console. See Figure 55 on page 45.
2. Click anywhere on the desktop, select **Browser Functions > Launch ALC Manager**. You see the following screen.

```
IBM TS3000 System Console
ALC Manager

Available options:
1. Stop an active ALC process

Which option would you like to perform (or 'q' to quit)? █
```

Figure 201. Stop an ALC Process

**Note:** If there are ALC processes running, you will be given the option to stop them.

3. To continue, press **the corresponding number** next to "Stop an active ALC process", then press **Enter**.

```
IBM TS3000 System Console
ALC Manager

Available options:
1. Stop an active ALC process

Which option would you like to perform (or 'q' to quit)? 1

Attached 3584s

#           Make/Model   Serial Number   IP Address   Hostname
-----
1:          3584L32      13AAA15        172.31.1.170 RAS3584

Which system would you like to stop ALC on (or 'q' to quit)? █
```

Figure 202. Stop an ALC Process

A list of 3584s with ALC running against them appear.

4. To stop ALC on one of the 3584s press **the corresponding number** of the desired library and **Enter**.

```

IBM TS3000 System Console
ALC Manager

Available options:
1. Stop an active ALC process

Which option would you like to perform (or 'q' to quit)? 1

Attached 3584s

#          Make/Model  Serial Number  IP Address  Hostname
-----
1:          3584L32      13AAA15      172.31.1.170  RAS3584

Which system would you like to stop ALC on (or 'q' to quit)? 1

The process was killed.

ALC stopped.
raselmnc:~ #

```

Figure 203. Stop an ALC Process

ALC has now stopped collecting logs against that 3584 library.

## Configuring Assist On-Site

Assist On-Site (AOS) is a tool that allows remote desktop connections over the External broadband Ethernet adapter to the TSSC. It utilizes the same network as broadband call home and will work on either HTTP or HTTPS. The AOS daemon will allow outbound connections only. It will establish connections by periodically connecting to the AOS servers to determine if remote access is needed. If so, the daemon will establish the connection and the remote user will have desktop access to the TSSC. For information on AOS, check its internal website: [https://aos.us.ihost.com/AssistOnSiteAdmin/docs/AOS\\_User\\_Guide.pdf](https://aos.us.ihost.com/AssistOnSiteAdmin/docs/AOS_User_Guide.pdf)

**Note:** A DNS is required for AOS to find the AOS servers. To establish connection to a DNS, see section “Console Settings” on page 66. Outbound traffic needs to be enabled to the following ports:

Table 14. Assist On-Site Table

Hostname	IP	Ports
aos.us.ihost.com	72.15.208.234	80, 443
aosback.us.ihost.com	72.15.223.61	80, 443
aosrelay1.us.ihost.com	72.15.223.60	80, 443
aos.uk.ihost.com	195.171.173.165	80, 443

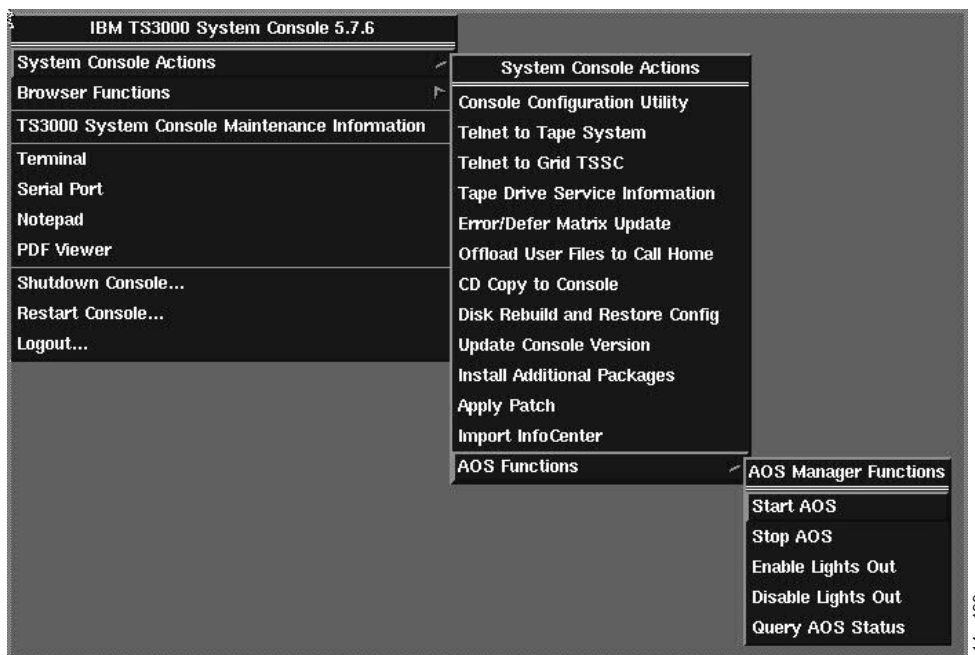


Figure 204. AOS Manager Functions

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to manage AOS settings (**TSSC Menus > AOS Settings**). Refer to “RAS Menus” on page 162.

#### To Enable AOS Lights Out:

Right-click the desktop, select **System Console Actions > AOS Functions > Enable Lights Out**.

This will enable AOS to allow for remote access without the need to confirm the remote takeover of the TSSC.

#### To Disable AOS Lights Out:

Right-click the desktop, select **System Console Actions > AOS Functions > Disable Lights Out**.

This will set AOS to require local confirmation of the remote takeover TSSC.

#### To Start AOS:

Right-click the desktop, select **System Console Actions > AOS Functions > Start AOS**.

This will launch the AOS daemon and will enable AOS to run and establish connections based on the AOS settings on the TSSC.

#### To Stop AOS:

Right-click the desktop, select **System Console Actions > AOS Functions > Stop AOS**.

This will stop the AOS daemon from making any new connections. Any sessions currently in progress will not be stopped. The remote user or a local user will be required to stop any established connections if there are any.

#### To Query AOS:

Right-click the desktop, select **System Console Actions > AOS Functions > Query AOS Status**.

The function will show you the current AOS settings on the TSSC. The query command checks the following settings:

- If Lights out is enabled or disabled
- If AOS is running or not



- The customer name that will be presented by the AOS client for establishing a connection to this TSSC. AOS currently reports the hostname of the TSSC.

**Note:** If your TSSC is set to the default tssnet1, it will be very difficult to find your TSSC in the AOS client. We strongly suggest updating the hostname to a unique hostname.

- The AOS customer number. All TSSC's customer number is 1010000, and this field is not configurable.
- Tests connectivity to the AOS site, and if it is not successful, the script displays the reason for not being able to connect to the URL.

**Note:** A DNS server is required for AOS to find the appropriate IP for establishing the connection with the AOS server. To set a DNS server, see section: “Console Settings” on page 66.

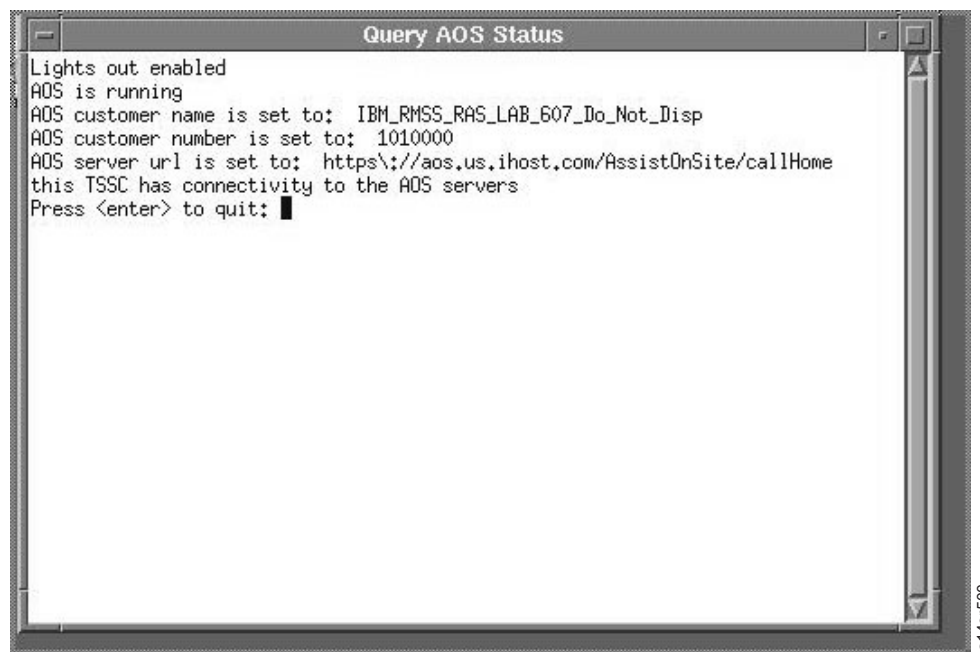


Figure 205. AOS Manager Functions

### To Configure a Proxy Server:

1. Right click the desktop, select **System Console Actions > AOS Functions > Configure Proxy Server**.

This function will allow you to configure a proxy server for use with AOS Lights Out.

You will be prompted for three pieces of information. This information is all provided by the customer.

- the proxy server hostname (or IP address)
- the proxy server port
- the (optional) authentication credentials.

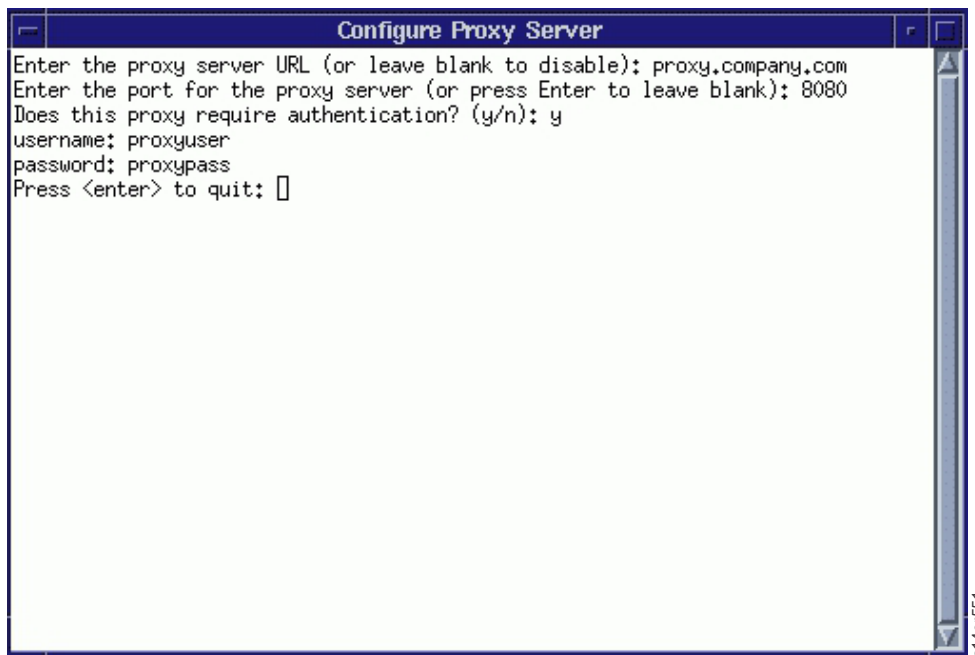


Figure 206. Manage Port Forwarding Interface

### To Configure Port Forwarding:

1. Right-click the desktop, select **System Console Actions > AOS Functions > Manage Port Forwarding**.



Figure 207. Proxy Example

You will see an interface like the image above. There are three possible actions to take:

1. To add a port forwarding target, press **a** and hit enter.

You will be prompted for a port forwarding hostname. This is the target to receive the forwarded traffic. For example, if you want to forward traffic back to the TSSC itself, enter **localhost**, or if you want to forward traffic to a machine at 172.31.1.10, enter that address.

Next, you will be prompted for the port to be forwarded. This port will depend on the traffic you wish to forward. Some common choices can be found in the table below:

Port	Service
22	SSH
23	Telnet
7080	TSSC Web GUI

Press **Enter** to save your new entry.

2. To remove a port forwarding target, press **r** and hit enter.

You will be asked to enter a number corresponding to the entry you wish to delete.

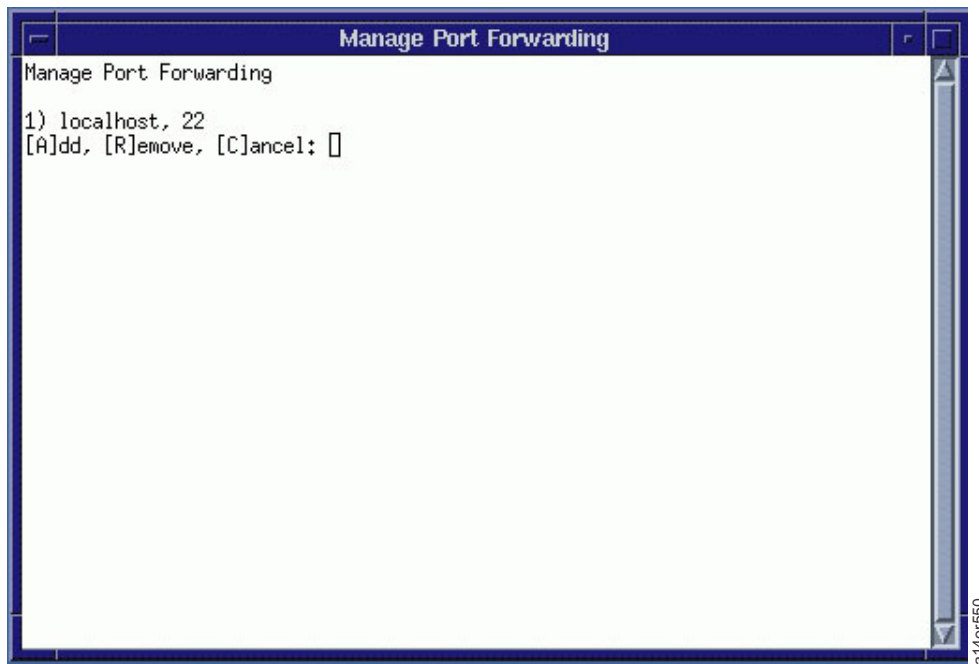


Figure 208. Port Forwarding Target List

For example, to delete the entry corresponding to *localhost*, 22 (in the picture above) choose 1.

Enter the entry to delete and press **Enter**.

3. To simply cancel without making any changes, press **c** and hit **Enter**.

## Offloading User Files to Call Home Database (For Remote Users)

In addition to offloading files to various media types, you can offload larger files, files for later use, and files requested by your next level of support to be sent to the RMSS Call Home Database:

<https://callhomedata.tucson.ibm.com>. The files must reside in the user's offload directory. For example, for the user "service" the directory would be /home/service/offload. Subdirectories will not be included.

**Note:** Files that you offload to the Call Home Database use the same call home path as normal call homes. Call Home Setup must be complete in order to use this function. See "Configuring Call Home Settings Electronic Customer Care" on page 81 for more information on Call Home Setup.

1. From the main menu, select **System Console Actions > Offload User Files to Call Home**. If you are using a dial-in session, issue the command **offloadpkg**. File offload begins. The window depicted in Figure 209 on page 153 appears.

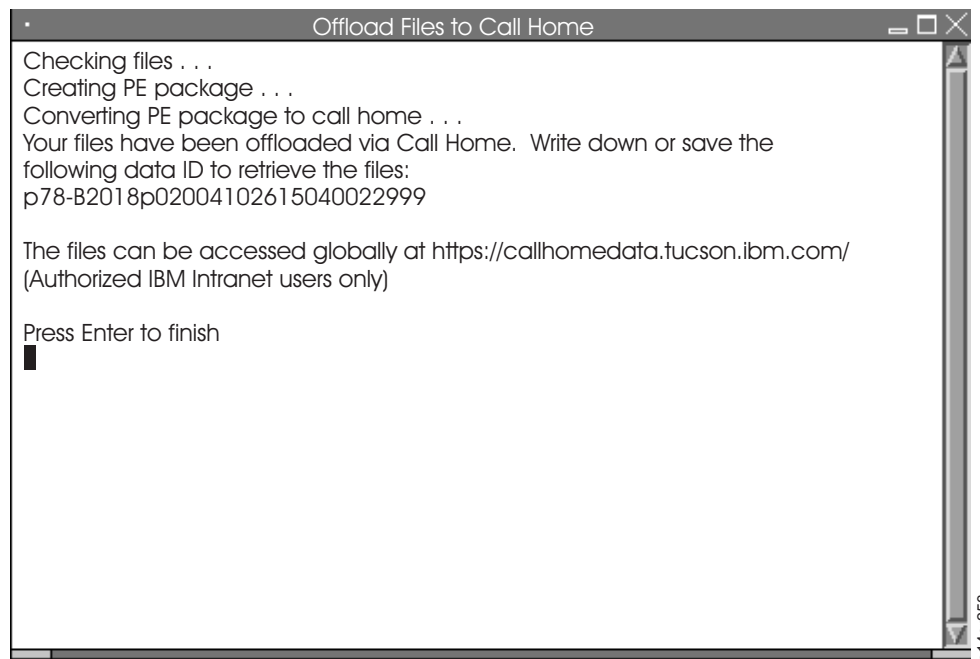


Figure 209. Offload Files to Call Home

**Notes:**

- If the user's files exceed 10 MB, a warning displays that includes a prompt to abort. Before you offload files larger than 10 MB, consider that this may delay other call home activity on this system console. Additionally, if subdirectories are found in the user's offload directory, a warning displays reminding the user that subdirectories are not included. The user may choose to abort at this warning and move the files if the files within subdirectories are desired to be included.
  - An attempt to offload user files will fail if there are no files to be found in the user's offload directory.
2. See Figure 209. A data ID is assigned to the user's files. This data ID must be entered to retrieve the files on the RMSS Call Home Database. Make note of this ID for future reference. If the ID is lost, the user's files can still be found by locating call homes from the system console's Primary System on the Call Home Database. The Primary System is set in Call Home Setup (see "Configuring Call Home Settings Electronic Customer Care" on page 81). To assist in recording the ID, note that the ID always takes the form described in the following example.

Example Data ID: p78-B2018p02004102615040022999

**p78-B2018p02004102615040022999**

p - The first character in the data ID is always a p

**p78-B2018**p02004102615040022999

78-B2018 - The serial number of the Primary System, with a dash (-) in the 3rd position

**p78-B2018p02004102615040022999**

p0 - A p followed by position in frame (always 0 except for when a VTC is the primary system)

**p78-B2018p02004102615040022999**

20041026 - The date in the form YYYYMMDD

**p78-B2018p02004102615040022999**

150400 - The time (24-hr) in the form HHMMSS

**p78-B2018p02004102615040022999**

22999 - These digits, usually the process ID of the Offload Files program, uniquely identify this call home

Figure 210. Data ID Sample

You can use the above information to confirm that you have correctly noted (for later use) a data ID.

3. The user's files are sent using a special call home package. Because this package must propagate through the normal call home path it can take a few minutes to arrive at the Call Home Database. Once it arrives, you can locate it by using the data ID given.

4. Once loaded on the Call Home Database, the user's files will appear as a regular call home, arriving from the system console's Primary System, as set in Call Home Setup (see "Configuring Call Home Settings Electronic Customer Care" on page 81).
5. To locate the offloaded data that is on the Call Home Database, use a web browser on the IBM intranet to go to the address: <https://callhomedata.tucson.ibm.com/>
6. From the left-side of the menu, choose **Single System**.
7. At the Call Home ID prompt, enter the data ID that appeared while files were unloading.
8. Click **Look Up Call Home Data ID**.
9. After the call home has been loaded, scroll down to the Files section to find the file you offloaded from the system console. You can use a web browser to download these files by clicking on the filename.

## Console PE Package

**Note:** For 3956 CC6 (DS6000) PE Package creation, refer to "problem determination DS6000" in IBM Knowledge Center (<http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter>).

You can use the System Console to create a PE (Product Engineering) package, then send that package to IBM RETAIN by using the call home path. You derive this PE Package from console events log files and trace files which reside on the System Console. Use the console creation tool to tailor the PE Package to specific requirements, and to investigate and diagnose System Console problems.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45).
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. You see login prompt shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. You see the Console Configuration Application screen shown in Figure 57 on page 46.
4. Click the **PE Packages** icon. You see Figure 211 on page 155.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to create a PE package (**TSSC Menus > Log Collection Tools > PE Package**). Refer to "RAS Menus" on page 162.

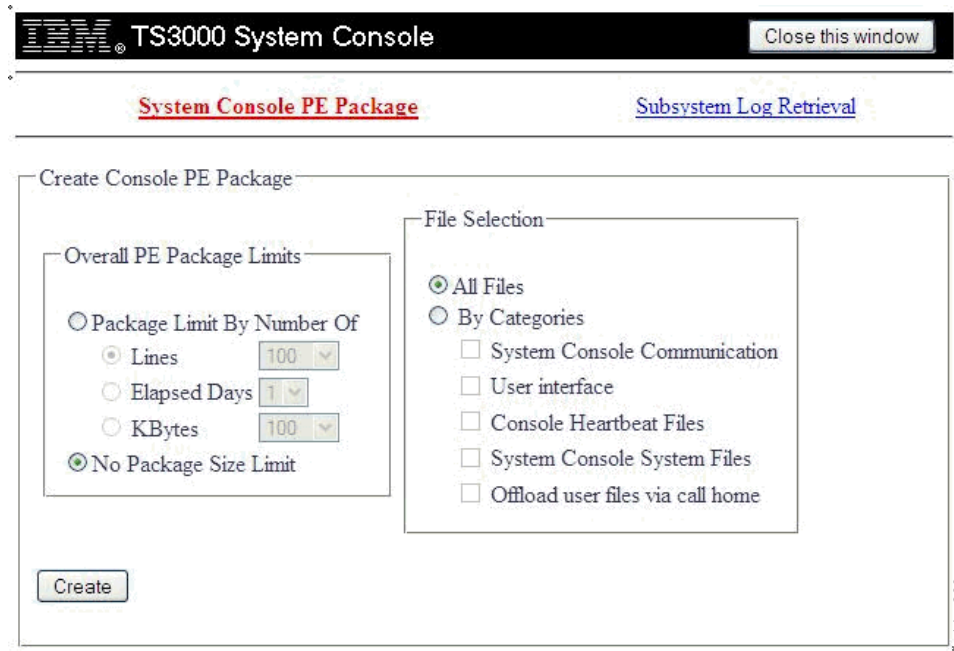


Figure 211. Create Console PE Package Menu

5. Choose one of the selections in the **Overall PE Package Limits** box.
    - Lines - Number of lines
    - Elapsed Days - Number of days
    - KBytes - Size of package

-- OR --

    - No Package Size Limit - Accepts any size
  6. Choose one of the selections in the **File Selection** box.
    - All files - Include all the files

-- OR --

    - By Category - Choose those which apply to your installation
  7. Click on the **Create** button. If the PE package has been created, a successful message will be displayed.
- If there are no files for the category that you selected an error message will be displayed. For example:
- PE package could not be created because the "Offload user files via call home" option was selected and there are no files in any of the directories listed in `/var/enc/config/User.category`.
- The `/var/enc/config/User.category` file lists the directory `$HOME/offload`. Verify that the offload directory located in your home directory is not empty

## Retrieving Subsystem Logs

Complete this task to retrieve subsystem logs.

1. Right click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**
3. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. You see the Console Configuration Application screen shown in Figure 213 on page 156.

- Click the **PE Packages** icon. You see Figure 212.

Figure 212. Create Console PE Package Menu

- Click the **Subsystem Log Retrieval** tab at the top of the page. You see Figure 213. Follow the instructions in the Select Logs box to select an attached system from which you would like to retrieve logs.

Figure 213. Subsystem Log Retrieval Menu

**Notes:**

- The list you see will contain only those subsystems which are eligible for log retrieval through the system console.
- Some early levels of subsystem code do not support Subsystem Log Retrieval.
- If you do not see your system listed, verify that it is attached and can be queried successfully from the attached systems page.

After you have selected your desired subsystem, you see one of the following options:

- 3957** - A getlogs options menu displays. All selections are optional. You may specify a start time, including month, day, and hour for which to gather logs. All logs will be gathered from this time forward. You also may specify one or more components to gather logs from as well as a specific file you would like to gather.



TS3000 System Console
Close this window

[System Console PE Package](#)
**Subsystem Log Retrieval**

Select Logs

First: Select machine type of the system you would like to retrieve logs from:

Next: Select the individual machine. To match hostname and IP addresses to a specific machine, refer to the Attached Systems page. If you do not see your system in the list, make sure it is attached and can be queried successfully.

Start Time:   
Day:   
Hour [1-24]:   
Component:

Specify a File:

Action

Once logs are retrieved, they will exist in /var/enc/offload directory.  
  
Already retrieved logs? [Click here](#) to offload the logs to call home or media.

a14or358

Figure 214. Retrieve Log - 3957 Menu

- **3592** - A minimal getlogs menu displays. All selections are optional. You may specify a start time, including month, day, and hour for which to gather logs. All logs will be gathered from this time forward. You also may specify a specific file you would like to gather.

TS3000 System Console
Close this window

[System Console PE Package](#)
**Subsystem Log Retrieval**

Select Logs

First: Select machine type of the system you would like to retrieve logs from:

Next: Select the individual machine. To match hostname and IP addresses to a specific machine, refer to the Attached Systems page. If you do not see your system in the list, make sure it is attached and can be queried successfully.

Start Time:   
Day:   
Hour [1-24]:   
Specify a File:

Action

Once logs are retrieved, they will exist in /var/enc/offload directory.  
  
Already retrieved logs? [Click here](#) to offload the logs to call home or media.

a14or359

Figure 215. Retrieve Log - 3592 Menu

- **Library Manager** - A savelogs options menu displays. All selections are REQUIRED. You must specify a start time and an end time, including year, month, day, and hour. You must specify at least one log type. You can specify multiple log types.

TS3000 System Console

Close this window

System Console PE Package

Subsystem Log Retrieval

Select Logs

First: Select machine type of the system you would like to retrieve logs from:

3494L22

Next: Select the individual machine. To match hostname and IP addresses to a specific machine, refer to the Attached Systems page. If you do not see your system in the list, make sure it is attached and can be queried successfully.

RASLMS Serial Number: 1314501

Start Time (All fields are required)

Year:

Month: Month

Day:

Hour [1-24]:

End Time (All fields are required)

Year:

Month: Month

Day:

Hour [1-24]:

Log Type:

Hold CTRL to select multiple

All Types

DB2

DMP

Action

Retrieve Logs

Once logs are retrieved, they will exist in /var/enc/offload directory.

Already retrieved logs? [Click here](#) to offload the logs to call home or media.

a14or360

Figure 216. Retrieve Log - Library Manager

- **3584** - After you select an individual 3584, the system console will query the library for the list of logs that are available for download. When the log query is successful, the available logs display for you to select. Select the logs you would like to retrieve.

**Note:** The system console uses HTTP sessions to gather the 3584 logs. If gathering the log takes excessive time between queries, the session will expire. Refresh the page to open a new session.

TS3000 System Console

Close this window

System Console PE Package

Subsystem Log Retrieval

Select Logs

First: Select machine type of the system you would like to retrieve logs from:

3584L32

Next: Select the individual machine. To match hostname and IP addresses to a specific machine, refer to the Attached Systems page. If you do not see your system in the list, make sure it is attached and can be queried successfully.

RAS3584 Serial Number: 13AAA15

Library Logs:

☒ LIBLG\_01\_OP

☒ LIBLG\_01\_NO

☒ LIBLG\_01\_ER

☒ LIBLG\_01\_AC

☒ LIBLG\_01\_NV

Drive Logs:

☐ DRIVE\_01\_01

☐ DRIVE\_01\_02

☐ DRIVE\_02\_01

☐ DRIVE\_02\_02

☐ DRIVE\_02\_03

Action

Retrieve Logs

Once logs are retrieved, they will exist in /var/enc/offload directory.

Already retrieved logs? [Click here](#) to offload the logs to call home or media.

a14or363

Figure 217. Retrieve Log - 3584

- **3958** - You will be prompted for a start time and day, the components you want to retrieve, and the package size. You must select either a component or you must specify a filename.

**Note:** The "Big" option is not available in TSSC v 5.8 and higher with ProtecTIER RAS levels 7121 and higher.

Figure 218. Retrieve Log - 3958

6. After you have selected a means of retrieving a log, click **Retrieve Logs** in the Action box. system console gathers your logs. You see a message when your request is fulfilled. The logs are gathered and are placed in the /var/enc/offload directory.
7. Click on **Click here** to offload the logs you gathered.

## Console Status

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**.
3. To login from the system console, enter **service** in the Username field, enter **service** in the Password field, and select OK to start the Console Configuration utility. You see Figure 57 on page 46.

-- OR --

To login remotely (from another system console), you must obtain an authentication ID (see "Login Options" on page 43 for information on obtaining an ID). Launch your browser.

- a. Enter the system console location into the Address field.
  - b. Type your Authentication ID into the Username field, and your password into the Password field. Click **OK** to start the Console Configuration utility. You see Figure 57 on page 46.
4. Click **Console Status**. You see Figure 219 on page 160.

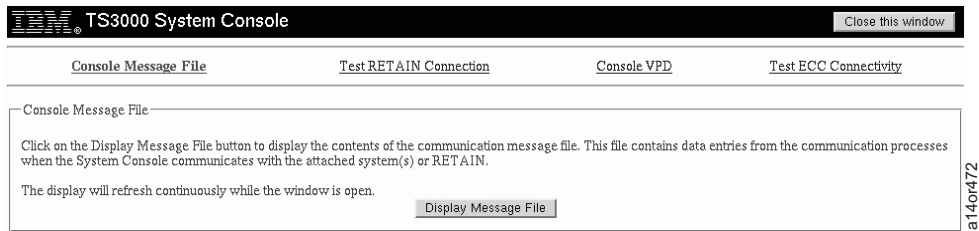


Figure 219. Console Message File Screen

5. Use Table 15 to determine the path which you wish to follow.

Table 15. Console Status Tool Function

Function	Description
Console Message File	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Displays the contents of the communication message file</li> <li>Provides a "Find..." tool for searching the file for a specific word or phrase</li> </ul> <p>See "Console Message File."</p>
Test RETAIN Connection	Tests the telecommunication path between the system console and RETAIN (see "Test RETAIN Connection - As a Service Procedure" on page 161)
Console VPD	Displays Vital Product Data (VPD) information for the system console (see "Console VPD" on page 161)
Test ECC Connectivity	Test communication path between the system console and Electronic Customer Care. This can also be used to show ECC configuration info. (See "Test Electronic Customer Care (ECC) Connectivity" on page 98).

## Console Message File

1. From the Console Message File screen shown in Figure 219, select **Console Message File**.
2. Click **Display Message File** to view the message file. You see Figure 220.

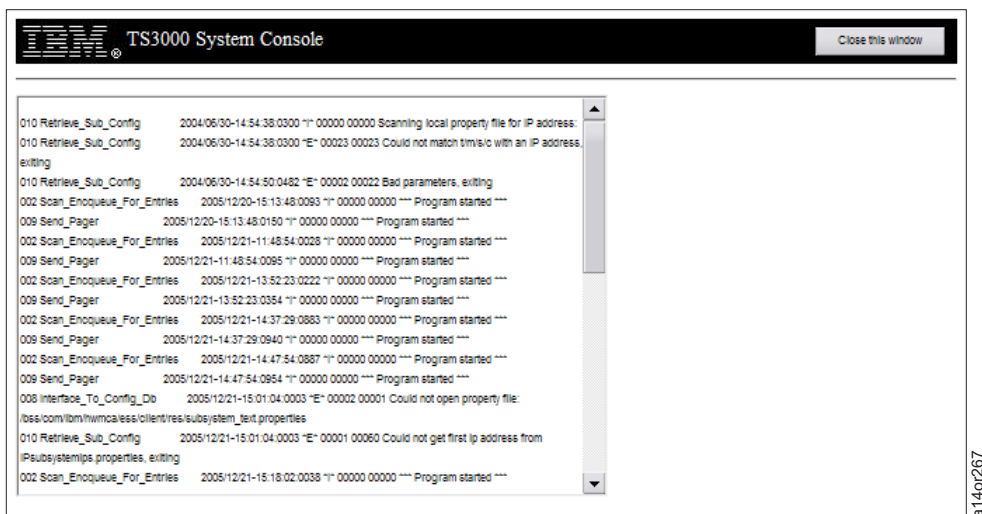


Figure 220. Message File Screen

# Test RETAIN Connection - As a Service Procedure

1. From the Console Message File screen shown in Figure 219 on page 160, select **Test RETAIN Connection**. You see Figure 221.

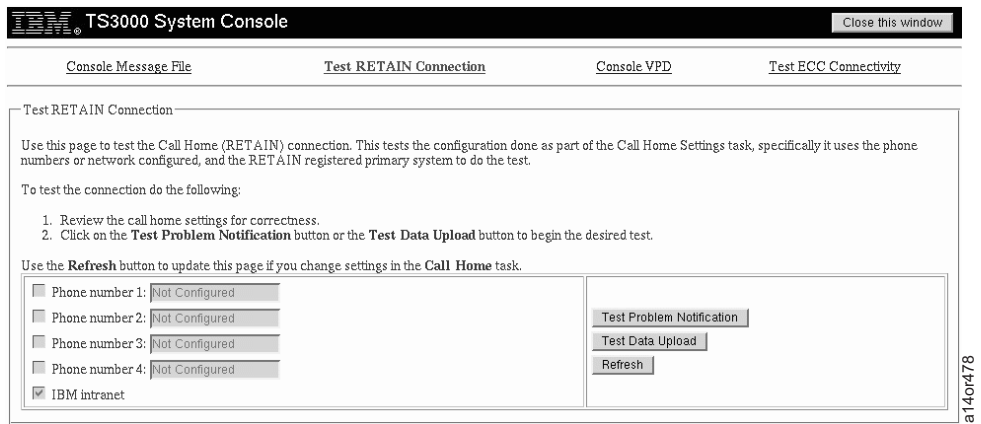


Figure 221. Test RETAIN Connection Request Screen - As a Service Procedure

2. Select the test you want to run from the list on this menu. You see Figure 222.

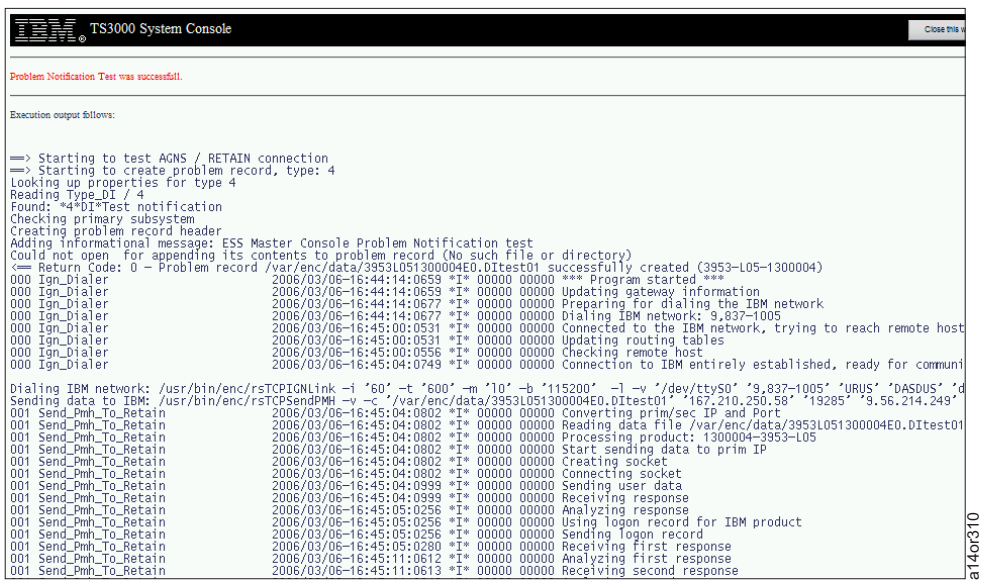


Figure 222. Test RETAIN Connection Results Screen - As a Service Procedure

3. Select **Close This Window** after you have performed your choice of tests.

## Console VPD

From the Console Message File screen shown in Figure 219 on page 160, select **Console VPD**. You see Figure 223 on page 162. The VPD information is listed for you in the System Console Product Information box.

**TS3000 System Console** Close this window

[Console Message File](#)   [Test RETAIN Connection](#)   [Console VPD](#)   [Test ECC Connectivity](#)

---

System Console Product Information

BIOS Level	FAE145AU
Machine Serial Number	KQH8X8
System Board Serial Number	
Machine Type - Model	8485-12U
Hostname	issnet1
IP Address	172.31.1.5
Default Gateway	
DNS	
Installed RAM (MBytes)	2028
Hard Drive Size (MBytes)	74234
Hard Drive Usage (MBytes)	11569
LIC Levels	5.7.4-022510

a140r473

Figure 223. Console VPD Screen

## RAS Menu

The RAS Menu system is a comprehensive tool used to enhance remote support capabilities from the command line. It is an interactive, menu-driven tool that provides the same service functionality as the web interface.

```

Terminal
=====
# TSSC Menu                                     #
#                                               #
# 1. Attached Systems ...                       #
# 2. Log Collection Tools ...                   #
# 3. Call Home Functions ...                   #
# 4. Network Settings ...                     #
# 5. External GUI Options ...                 #
# 6. AOS Settings ...                         #
# 7. Mount Options ...                       #
# 8. 3584 Options ...                         #
# 9. SNMP Options ...                       #
# 10. Shutdown Options ...                   #
#                                               #
# E. Exit                                     #
=====
Choice: 
  
```

a140r514

Figure 224. The top-level menu as displayed in a terminal window

The following menu tree outlines the available RAS Menu options.

#### TSSC Menus

1. Attached Systems
  1. tsys
  2. tsys\_tssc
  3. Add Attached System
  4. Query one Attached System
  5. Query all Attached Systems
  6. Update and View Health of an Attached System
  7. Query Standby Mode
  8. Enable Standby Mode
  9. Disable Standby Mode
  10. Delete Attached System
  11. Download Control Unit Configuration
  12. View Control Unit Configuration
2. Log Collection Tools
  1. Offload user files
  2. Get 3584 Logs
  3. PE Package
3. Call Home Functions
  1. Call Home Options
    - \_\_ 1. Configure Call Home Values
    - \_\_ 2. Unlock ECC
    - \_\_ 3. Test ECC Connectivity
    - \_\_ 4. Delay Call Home for 2 hours
  2. Call Home Queue Options
    - \_\_ 1. View Call Home Queue
    - \_\_ 2. Send Call Home Now
  3. Failed Call Home Queue Options
    - \_\_ 1. View Failed Queue
    - \_\_ 2. View Failed Call Home Log
    - \_\_ 3. Move Failed Call Home to Home Queue
    - \_\_ 4. Send Failed Call Home Now
  4. Software Call Home Queue Options
    - \_\_ 1. View Software Queue
    - \_\_ 2. Move Software Call Home to Home Queue
    - \_\_ 3. Send Software Call Home Now
  5. Modem Transmission
    - \_\_ 1. Query Modem Transmission
    - \_\_ 2. Cancel Modem Transmission
  6. Incoming Modem Connections
    - \_\_ 1. Allow Inbound
    - \_\_ 2. Disallow Inbound
    - \_\_ 3. Check current setting

4. Network Settings
  1. View All Adapter Values
  2. View Specific Adapter Values
  3. Run TCP Dump
  4. View Route Table
  5. View and Update Firewall Settings
  6. Add/Change Internal Network Alias IP Address
  7. Remove Internal Network Alias IP Address
5. External GUI
  1. Storage Manager Options
    - \_\_ 1. Install Storage Manager
  2. DS6000 GUI Options
    - \_\_ 1. Install DS6000 GUI
    - \_\_ 2. Reset DS6000 Password
  3. ProtecTIER GUI Options
    - \_\_ 1. Install ProtecTIER GUI
    - \_\_ 2. Upgrade ProtecTIER GUI
6. AOS Settings
  1. Check AOS status
  2. Enable Lights Out
  3. Enable Lights On
  4. Start AOS Processes
  5. End AOS Processes
  6. Restart AOS Processes
  7. Configure Proxy Server
  8. Manage Port Forwarding
  9. Change SSL Setting
  10. Enable Debug Trace
  11. Disable Debug Trace
7. Mount Options
  1. Mount USB Device
  2. Mount CDROM
  3. Unmount USB Device
  4. Unmount CDROM
8. 3584 Options
  1. Start TSR
  2. Stop TSR
  3. Manage ALC
  4. Manage SRC Firmware
9. SNMP Options
  1. Enable SNMP Trap Alerts
  2. Disable SNMP Trap Alerts
  3. Enable Control Unit SNMP Trap Forwarding
  4. Disable Control Unit SNMP Trap Forwarding
  5. Enable ProtecTIER SNMP Trap Forwarding



6. Disable ProtecTIER SNMP Trap Forwarding
10. Shutdown Options
  1. Restart TSSC
  2. Shut Down TSSC

## Local access

To access the RAS menu system locally:

1. Right click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the main menu, select the **Terminal** entry.
3. Enter the command `rsRasMenu` to open the RAS menus. The interactive menu system will display in the terminal as seen in “RAS Menus” on page 162.
4. The main menu is broken down into categories. Make a selection by entering the number next to any top-level menu entry. You will be taken to submenus that correspond to your selection.
5. You may exit the menus at any time by pressing **E**. To navigate back to the previous menu, enter **B** when prompted.

## Remote access

To access the RAS menu system remotely:

1. Connect to the target TSSC via an SSH session or modem.
2. Authenticate as a Service or Enhanced RMSS user and log in to the TSSC.
3. Once logged in at the command line, enter the `rsRasMenu` command. The interactive menu system will be displayed as seen in “RAS Menus” on page 162.
4. The main menu is broken down into categories. Make a selection by entering the number next to any top-level menu entry. You will be taken to submenus that correspond to your selection.
5. You may exit the menus at any time by pressing **E**. To navigate back to the previous menu, enter **B** when prompted.

---

## Taking Console Screenshots

1. To take a screen shot of the system console, press the **Print Screen** button on the console keyboard.
  - It is sometimes useful to delay the screen shot command. If you would like to initiate a delayed screen shot press **Shift + PrintScreen** on the console keyboard. This will capture the screen five seconds later.
2. Screen shots will be placed in the offload directory of the currently logged in user. For example, if the service user is logged in, this would be `/home/service/offload`.
3. To offload these screenshots, see “Offloading User Files” on page 135.

---

## System Console Code Upgrade

There are three methods to upgrade the system console code.

1. “System Console Code Load/Hard Drive Rebuild” on page 166 (new install - recommended for 7.3.x)
2. “Disk Rebuild and Restore Configuration” on page 167
3. “System Console Code Update” on page 169 (method will be phased out starting with 7.2.x)

## System Console Code Load/Hard Drive Rebuild

### Attention:

- Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the system console code level.
- Rebuilding the hard disk drive will permanently destroy any local data present on the drive. Using the Product Recovery CD-ROM will return the system console to its "as shipped" state.
- Do not load or attempt to use the Product Recovery CD-ROM on any machine type other than 2583, 4252, 4362, 7978, 7946, 8485, 8836, or 8849. If you use the Product Recovery CD-ROM on any other machine type, the installation will fail and that machine will be unusable.

### Notes:

- Backup the system console configuration files before you re-image the hard drive. See "Backing Up Configuration Data" on page 90 and "Restoring Configuration Data" on page 93).
  - Do not attempt to restore configuration settings from a V1.x.x system console onto a V3.x.x or higher system console. The files are incompatible. V2.x.x files are compatible with V3.x.x or higher.
  - After you use this procedure, you will need to reload some software packages if you have TS7700s in the Attached Systems list. Some examples of affected packages might include:
    - "Installing the DS6000 Graphical User Interface" on page 58
    - "Installing the Storage Manager Graphical User Interface" on page 59
    - "Importing InfoCenter From CD-ROM" on page 188
1. If this is an existing system console that is being upgraded, then backup the system console configuration files to USB or CD before you re-image the hard drive. See "Backing Up Configuration Data" on page 90
  2. Place the System Console Product Recovery Disc 1 CD-ROM in the CD Drive.
  3. Log out of the system console by right-clicking the desktop area and choosing **Logout**. Click **OK**.
  4. After returning to the login screen, click **Restart** in the lower left area of the screen, and click **Ok** when prompted to restart.
- If you are upgrading a model M3 server, or earlier, the prompt in Figure 225 appears after the system console reboots (with the CD-ROM in place in the CD drive).

```
This will install the Console onto /dev/sda which will erase everything on that device.  
Continue? ('yes' or 'no')  
Abort
```

Figure 225. Pre-Installation Menu

Type **y** (or **yes**) and press **Enter** to start the hard drive re-image process.

**-OR-**

If you are upgrading a model M4 or M93p server, the prompt in Figure 226 appears after the system console reboots (with the CD-ROM in place in the CD drive).

```
Backup your System Console configuration before installing the Console code or it will be lost!  
This will install the Console onto Bank0 which will erase everything on that device.  
If you didn't backup current configurations, you need to backup them to Hydra, memory stick, or CD.  
Disk rebuild/restore functionality does not present the option to restore when moving to this release.  
Configuration will be completely wiped.  
Continue? ('yes' or 'no')
```

Figure 226. Pre-Installation Menu

Type **y** (or **yes**) and press **Enter**. Then, when prompted, type **y** and press **Enter** again to start the hard drive re-image process.

5. When prompted, remove the Product Recovery Disc 1 from the CD drive and insert the Product Recovery Disc 2. Wait for the light on the drive to stop blinking, then press **Enter**. See Figure 227.

Insert the Product Recovery Disc 2 and wait for the light on the drive to stop blinking.  
Press Enter to continue

Figure 227. Insert Disc 2 screen

6. You can monitor the progress of the installation from the screen. After the re-image is complete, the system console will reboot automatically. Remove the CD-ROM from the CD drive.

**Notes:**

- This procedure can take as long as 15 minutes to complete.
  - You must be present at the completion of a reboot or the re-image will restart automatically. If you are not present to remove the CD-ROM from the CD drive tray, the tray will retract into the CD drive and the installation will start again. At the confirmation screen, type **no**, and press **Enter**. Remove the CD-ROM from the CD drive, and allow the reboot to occur.
7. After initial reboot, the software will discover the machine type and model number of the computer, automatically configure the appropriate drivers and settings, and automatically reboot the system console. During the second boot-up, the start up background and text might look slightly different. The second boot will produce the login screen shown in Figure 53 on page 43. If the software determines that the machine type is not 2583, 4252, 4362, 7978, 7946, 8485, 8836, or 8849, a warning message will display on the screen and the system console will halt. This will continue each time the system console is powered on. Similar symptoms occur after software installation if the system console is unable to determine its machine type and model.

**Note:** If a product with a machine type of 2583, 4252, 4362, 7978, 7946, 8485, 8836, or 8849 reports a different machine type during an installation, the BIOS might have been corrupted. Reboot the server, and make the appropriate selection during the reboot to enter BIOS setup. In the BIOS, check the machine type that is configured. If the machine type does not match the specific server, you should reinstall the system BIOS. Refer to the server documentation to reinstall the BIOS and to set the correct machine type.

8. If you backed up the configuration, restore it now. See “Restoring Configuration Data” on page 93.

## Disk Rebuild and Restore Configuration

**Attention:**

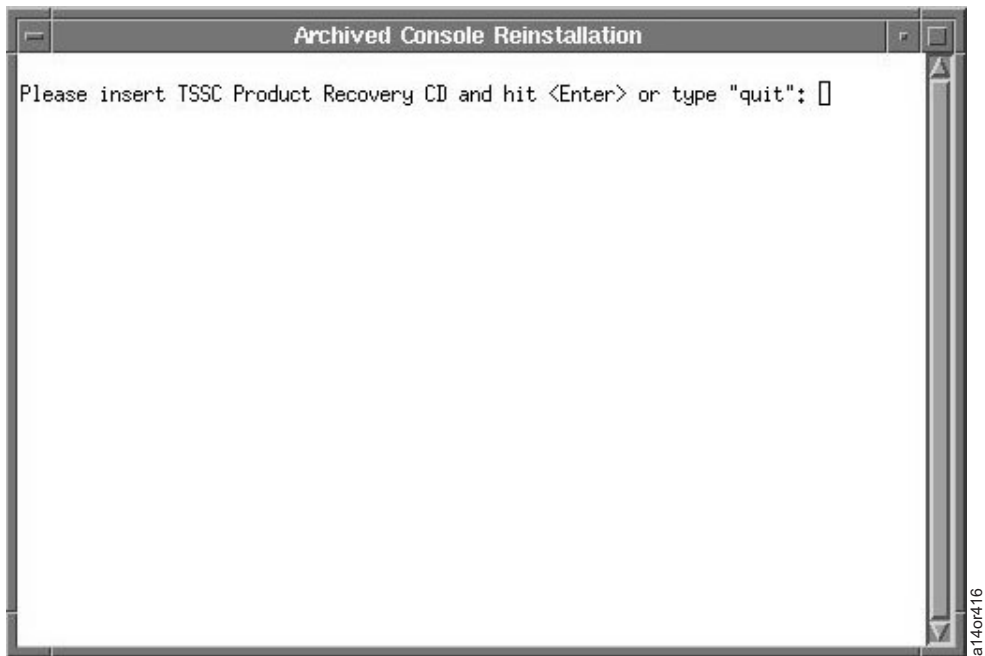
- Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.
- Rebuilding the hard disk drive will permanently destroy any local data present on the drive. Using this feature will reinstall the system console while preserving all existing settings.

**Notes:**

- Backup the Console configuration files before you re-image the hard drive. See “Backing Up Configuration Data” on page 90.
- Do not attempt to restore configuration settings from a V1.x.x system console onto a V3.x.x or higher system console. The files are incompatible. V2.x.x files are compatible with V3.x.x or higher.
- After you use this procedure, you will need to reload some software packages if you have TS7700s in the Attached Systems list. Some examples of affected packages might include:
  - “Installing the DS6000 Graphical User Interface” on page 58
  - “Installing the Storage Manager Graphical User Interface” on page 59
  - “Importing InfoCenter From CD-ROM” on page 188

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.

2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Disk Rebuild and Restore Config**. You will see Figure 228.



*Figure 228. Prompt for TSSC Product Recovery CD.*

3. Place the System Console Product Recovery Disc 1 CD-ROM in the CD drive and press **Enter**. The current system console code level and the system console code level on the CD-ROM will be displayed then the system console will reboot.
4. When prompted, type **y** (or **yes**) and press **Enter** to start the hard drive re-image process.
5. When prompted, remove the Product Recovery Disc 1 from the CD drive and insert the Product Recovery Disc 2. Wait for the light on the drive to stop blinking, then press **Enter**.
6. After several minutes the installation will complete and you will be brought back to the login screen. After the re-image is complete, the system console will reboot automatically. Remove the CD-ROM from the CD drive.

## System Console Code Update

- | **Attention:** Starting with 7.2.x system console code level, this method is no longer used. The
- | recommended method to upgrade to 7.2.x or higher is to do a “System Console Code Load/Hard Drive
- | Rebuild” on page 166.

Use this procedure to upgrade the system console code version to a higher level. This procedure cannot be used for all system console code levels. If upgrades are not supported, the update process will prompt you for “System Console Code Load/Hard Drive Rebuild” on page 166 if you are updating from 5.7.8 and higher.

Refer to the following table to determine whether a system console code update will work.

*Table 16. System Console Code Upgrade Table*

Release Levels		
From:	To:	Update Available?
< 5.12.x	5.12.x or higher	No
5.11.5	5.11.23	Yes
< 5.11.5	5.11.23	No
<5.11.5	5.11.5	No
< 5.10.X	5.10.X	No
< 5.9.X	5.9.X	No
< 5.8.X	5.8.X	No
< 5.7.X	5.7.X	No
5.5.22	5.5.28 - 5.6.5	Yes
< 5.5.22	5.5.22 - 5.5.28	No
< 5.5.12	5.5.12	No
5.3.7 - 5.4.11	5.3.7 - 5.4.11	Yes
< 5.3.7	5.3.7 - 5.4.11	No
5.0 - 5.2.11	5.0 - 5.2.11	Yes
< 5.0	5.0 - 5.2.11	No

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu, shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Update Console Version**. A Terminal screen appears and requests you to insert the TSSC Product Recovery CD.
3. Insert the CD labeled "IBM System Console Product Recovery CD." Press **Enter**.

**Note:** You can use this procedure only to upgrade to a later version of system console code. To reload this level of system console code or to load an earlier version of system console code, use the procedure in “System Console Code Load/Hard Drive Rebuild” on page 166.

The tool will compare the system console code version on the CD with the version on the system console. The tool will inform you that the versions are compatible for upgrade, and that the upgrade will begin. If the levels are not compatible for upgrade, the tool will prompt you to perform a “System Console Code Load/Hard Drive Rebuild” on page 166. The update process can take as long as 15 minutes.

4. After a successful upgrade, right-click on the desktop of the main menu to logout.
5. Select **Logout**. You are returned to the login screen seen in Figure 1 on page 2. This screen displays the new system console code level.
6. Click the **Restart** button to restart the system console. After the system console restarts, you are returned to this same login screen. The system console code upgrade is complete.

## Updating TS7700 Virtualization Engine Microcode

You can use the Mksysb Broadcast option from the web interface to update the TS7700 microcode.

**Note:** This process keeps only one version of the mksysb images. If you have a previous level on the 3957 and system console, this process removes it before it downloads the new version.

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

The code level requirements are:

### System Console:

System console code version 5.5.20 and higher. DVD drive is required for this process. TSSCs with DVD drives are: 2583, 4252, 4362, 8485, 8849, 7978, 7946.

3957 - 8.6.x and higher

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Action > Console Configuration Utility**.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then click **OK**.
4. Select **System Tools > Mksysb Broadcast**. The following screen displays.

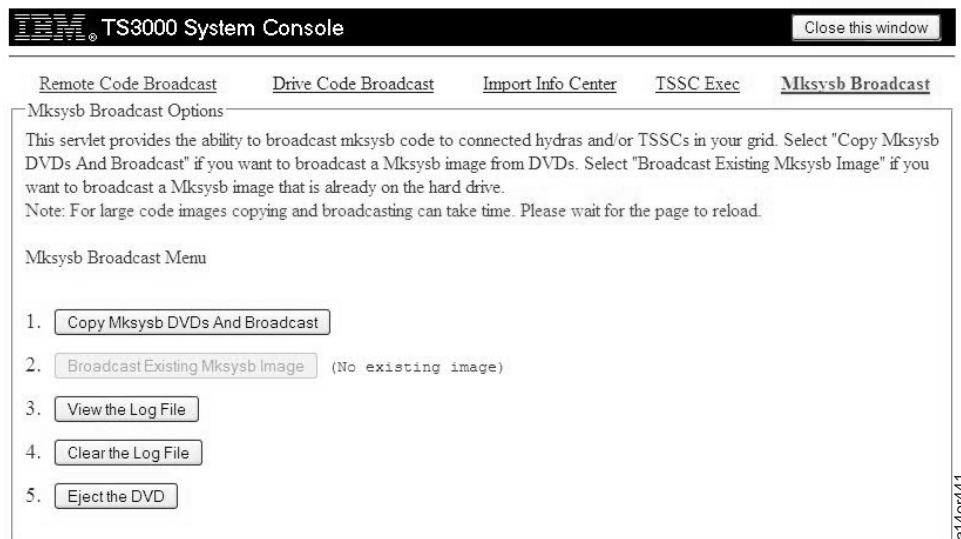


Figure 229. Mksysb Broadcast Screen

If you have already downloaded an image that you want to broadcast, skip to step 8 on page 171, otherwise, continue to the next step.

5. Select the **Copy Mksysb DVDs And Broadcast** button. This prompts you to enter the first DVD and select **OK**. Once you insert the first DVD, select **OK** to continue. The process of downloading the first disk can take up to 20 minutes.
6. When the download is complete, you are prompted to insert the second DVD and continue:

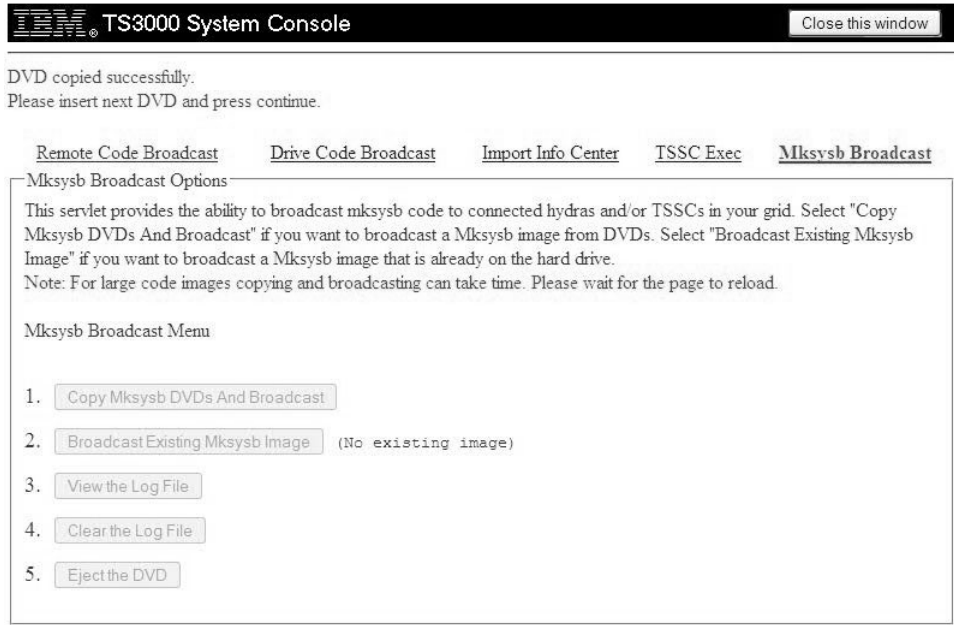


Figure 230. Mksysb Broadcast Screen - DVD Copy OK

The continue button is located above the log output. Remove the first DVD, insert the second DVD, and press the **Continue** button as shown in the following screen. If you want to cancel this process, press the **Cancel Copy** button, and you return to the initial screen.

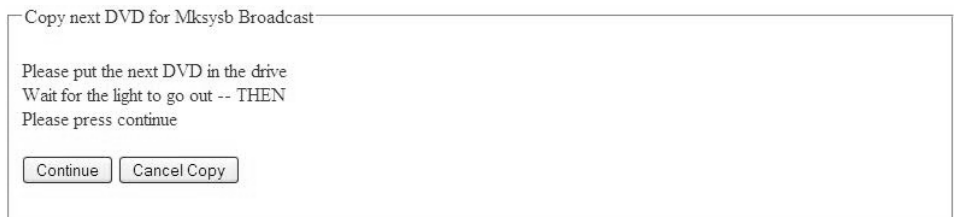


Figure 231. DVD Copy for Mksysb Broadcast

7. When the download of the second DVD is complete, a success message, "Broadcast list created successfully. Please select machines to broadcast to" will display.
8. Below the logs, you are able to select which machines you can broadcast this new mksysb image to.



Choose Systems for Code Broadcast

Select systems for broadcast by typing in the box below the numbers you wish to broadcast to separated by spaces, or leave it empty. (e.g. 0 1 2 3)  
 If you wish to broadcast to all systems, type "all" and hit submit  
 If you wish to control the order of the broadcasts, just specify them in the order you would like them to be broadcasted in. (e.g. 2 3 0 1 will broadcast to 2 first, 3 second, and so on)  
 If you wish to broadcast to some systems in parallel, instead of using a space to separate the systems use a tilde (~). (e.g. 0~1~2 3 will broadcast 0, 1, and 2 at the same time, then 3 once 0, 1, and 2 are finished)

Systems to choose from:

NO	MODEL	SERIAL	IP ADDRESS	HOSTNAME	CODE LEVEL	EXISTING IMAGE
0	3957	V06	7800D0A	172.31.1.230	lilrascal	8.6.0.86 8.6.0.86 copied on Sep 03 21:46
1	3957	V06	7800A6A	172.31.1.70	wilma	8.6.0.86 8.6.0.86 copied on Sep 03 23:50
2	3957	V06	780085A	172.31.1.190	rashydra	8.6.0.82 8.6.0.82 copied on Aug 21 22:39
3	7946	PAR	KQMHTVP	10.1.1.4	raselmc	5.5.15 Copied on Sep 4 09:10

Systems for Code Broadcast:

a140r438

Figure 232. Choose Systems for Code Broadcast

- When submitting your systems for broadcasting you can send to an attached 3957-V06/V07 and 3957-VEA/VEBs, as well as other system consoles with 5.5.20 or higher system console code levels in the same AOTM network. The list of available systems are presented as shown in the previous screen. The screen presents the Machine Type, Model, Manufacturing Code and Serial number, Local IP address, Hostname, Code Level, and if the system has a copy of a mksysb image already present as well as the date and time the file was sent.

**Note:** The 3957 keeps only one level of mksysb on the machine at a time.

Select systems for broadcast by typing the numbers in the box you want to broadcast to (separated by spaces) or leave it empty (for example 0 1 2 3).

- If you want to broadcast to all systems, type "all" and press submit
- If you want to control the order of the broadcasts, specify them in the order you would like them to be broadcast. (for example 2 3 0 1 will broadcast to 2 first, 3 second, 0 third, and 1 fourth)
- If you want to broadcast to some systems in parallel, then instead of using a space to separate the systems use a tilde (~). For example 0~1~2 3 will broadcast 0, 1, and 2 at the same time. Then 3 will broadcast as soon as 0, 1, and 2 have finished.

When the image broadcasting is complete, the screen will return and will present logs of the transactions.

- Select **System Tools > Mksysb Broadcast**. See Figure 229 on page 170. Make the appropriate selection(s) as follows:
  - Select **3. View the Log File**
  - Select **4. Clear the Log File**
  - Select **5. Eject the DVD**

## Updating TS7700 Cache Controller Microcode

**Note:** Before you begin this procedure, you must obtain the CD-ROM that includes the latest level of the DS6000 microcode and the SEA.jar file. You should receive a CD-ROM whenever there is an update to the DS6000 microcode.

Use this procedure to update the TS7700 Cache Controller microcode.

- Ensure that you close all TSSC browser sessions. From the TSSC menu, click **File > Close**.



2. Insert the microcode CD-ROM into the CD drive of the TSSC.
3. Right click from anywhere in the Desktop, and select **System Console Actions > CD Copy to Console**. You see Figure 233.

```
Select Save Location:
1. /var/enc/cdrom/
2. /home/root/offload/
3. /home/service/offload/
4. Exit Program

Your Selection: █
```

a14or345

Figure 233. Select Save Location Screen

4. At the command prompt (Your Selection ), type **1** to select **/var/enc/cdrom**. Press **Enter**. Expect a delay as the CD drive copies information from the CD-ROM. This can take as long as 15 minutes to complete. You will see Figure 234 when the copy is complete.

```
SUCCESS: Disk contents can now be found in
/var/enc/cdrom

Press <Enter> to exit █
```

a14or346

Figure 234. TS7700 Cache Microcode Copy Complete Screen

**Note:** If the directory has an existing microcode image installed, you will be prompted to overwrite that existing image with the new image. Select **Yes** to continue.

5. Right click the desktop of the TSSC, and select **Browser Functions > DS6000 Functions > Launch GUI**. This action invokes the TS7700 Cache Controller graphical user interface.
6. Login by typing the username **admin** and the password **ibm2serv**.
7. From the left hand navigation menu, select **Real Time Manager > Manage Hardware > Storage Units**. You must wait for several minutes while the system builds the list of storage devices.
8. If you found in the list, the TS7700 Cache Controller onto which you want to install the DS6000 microcode, go to Step 10.

-- OR --

If you did **not** find the TS7700 Cache Controller onto which you want to install the DS6000 microcode, go to “Launching the DS6000 Graphical User Interface” on page 181 to add the TS7700 Cache Controller to the TS7700 Virtualization Engine. Return here to Step 9.

9. Click **Refresh** to highlight the TS7700 Cache Controller in the list.
10. Click the check box to select the TS7700 Cache Controller on which you want to upgrade the microcode.
11. In the drop-down menu for Select Action, select **Apply Firmware Update**.
12. Ensure that the drop-down box for Apply Firmware Update Real Time is set to **Concurrent**.
13. Click **Select a file**.
14. Select the file directory, or type the file directory path to where you downloaded the SEA.jar file in Step 2 through Step 5. As shown in this example, you would scroll to (or type) the directory name **/var/enc/cdrom**.
15. Click **Open**, then click **OK**. This action copies the SEA.jar file to the TS7700 Cache Controller.
16. Scroll to and click **Transfer File**. The microcode is copied to the TS7700 Cache Controller. This task can take as long as fifteen minutes to complete.
17. Click **Activate** after the Transfer File task completes. This Activate task can take as long as 1.5 hours to complete.

---

## System Console Specialist

IBM service personnel and the customer (usually an administrator) can use the System Console Specialist for the following purposes:

- Change the system console display language
- Perform tape drive code updates
- Launch library manager and Peer-to-Peer VTS specialists
- Administer users

Online help is available from the System Console Specialist by clicking the (?) Help icon located in the upper, right of each screen. Online help is provided using Eclipse technology. For further information, access the website at:

<http://www.eclipse.org>

## Customer Access to System Console via Specialist

The customer user (usually an administrator) can login to the system console by using a userid (use “customer”) and a password (use “customer” again). After logging in, the customer user sees the System Console Specialist screen.

### Notes:

- A customer user can add users, delete users, or change passwords for any users in the customer group who use the Administer Users tools.
- The 'customer' userid cannot be deleted.
- Anytime a customer user exits the System Console Specialist, the customer user will be logged out of the system console.
- A customer user cannot make changes to the user ids for service users, but service users can make changes to customer group users.

## Tape Drive Code Update via Specialist

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

The code level requirements are:

### System Console

Code version 2.5.0 and above

### IBM 3494 Virtual Tape Server

Code version 2.30.xx.xx and above

### IBM 3590 A60 Tape Controller

Code version 1.16.7.xx and above

### IBM 3592 J70 Tape Controller

Code version 1.17.4.xx and above

### IBM 3592 C06 Tape Controller

Code version 1.20.x.x and above

### IBM 3592 C07 Tape Controller

Code version 1.25.x.xx and above

### IBM 3494 ATL (L12, L14, L22)

Not currently operational

1. Ensure that the tape drives that are attached to 3590 A60 and 3592 tape controllers are varied offline at the host before attempting a microcode update.

2. Launch the System Console Specialist by selecting **Main Menu > Browser Functions > System Console Specialist**. A Welcome Page displays, with links (in the left navigation area) to functions.
3. Click **Update Drive Code**. A screen appears which allows you to filter which drives are displayed and are available for updating.
4. Select the drive types you wish to display, and select the sorting preference. Click **Submit**. A page displays which presents the controllers that meet the selected criteria and that are currently available for a code update.
5. Select drives to update by clicking the small plus sign next to the Controller Type column of the controller that contains the drives to update. This will expand the entry in the table for that controller, listing the available drives. The current code level will be displayed in the Current Code Level column. Select a new code level from the Available Code Levels column.
6. Once all desired code level updates are selected, proceed with the update by clicking **Update Code**.
7. Verify that the microcode level update is complete by viewing the History table. This table will show when each code update has started and when it has completed. It also will indicate if the process has failed. It will be necessary to refresh the page periodically to view the status of the operation. Clicking an entry in the History table displays details for the entry. See Table 17 for control unit error codes and see Table 18 on page 176 for single tape drive error codes.
8. Click **Refresh** to refresh the status. You can click on an entry in the History table to obtain more information about it.
9. Vary online all drives that are attached to 3590 A60 and 3592 control units which were previously varied offline.

**Note:** Consult with your next level of support for questions and/or direction on code levels to apply to tape drives.

*Table 17. Control Unit Error Codes*

This error code...	...informs you that...
0	Code update process is completed and all code updates are complete
22	Code update process is completed with some incomplete code updates
23	Code update process is completed with errors
24	Could not receive codeloadstatus file from subsystem. Code update process completed
1	Code activation is currently in progress on the specified subsystem
2	Subsystem code activation function did not receive the code update request file
3	rsENDriveCodeLoad.pl -L already running on system console
4	Could not retrieve configuration for the subsystem with specified IP address
5	Specified subsystem does not support code updates through the system console
6	No requested images are available on system console
7	Error creating drive code package
8	Error creating drive code update request file
9	Subsystem does not have enough storage space available for code transfer
10	Communications error prevented a command from being sent to the subsystem
11	Incorrect arguments sent to subsystem drivecodecheck program
12	Warning: the subsystem could not remove the temporary archive file
13	Code image extraction failed on subsystem
14	Code image permissions change failed on subsystem.
15	Code image archive not received on subsystem
16	Subsystem command execution failed for an unknown reason

Table 17. Control Unit Error Codes (continued)

17	Lost process synchronization between system console and subsystem
18	Status of code update is unknown. fork() call to launch drive code update command failed
19	Multiple status update failures while waiting for drive code update process
20	Code update process did not return, status of code update unknown
21	Code update process returned with unexpected failure code

Table 18. Single Drive Error Codes

This error code...	...informs you that...
25	Unable to communicate with drive
26	Device is open and in use (for example, not offline)
27	Device has no more internal memory
28	Device rejected command, incompatible or corrupted microcode file
29	Non-tape drive error when loading drive code
30	Code update process has been started

## Launching Specialists

1. Launch the System Console Specialist by selecting **Main Menu > Browser Functions > System Console Specialist**. A Welcome Page displays, with links (in the left navigation area) to functions.
2. Click the **Launch Specialists** link in the left navigation area of the System Console Specialist user interface. A screen appears, which displays links to Specialist user interfaces for library managers and peer-to-peer Virtual Tape Server controllers that are attached to the system console.
3. Click the link of the Specialist user interface that you wish to launch.

### Notes:

- If unique hostname aliases have not been assigned to library managers, all of the displayed names will be the same for the library manager specialists. The IP address displays in the bottom status bar of the browser.
- Web specialists for tape systems are optimized for certain Microsoft Windows-based web browsers. You might receive a warning message that states this when you attempt to display the tape system specialist. The tape system specialists display and operate by using the system console's browser. However, it is possible that some functions might not display or operate correctly. Discontinue using the system console's browser for tape system specialists if this occurs.
- The specialists must be operational on the tape systems in order to view them on the system console. Refer to the Maintenance Information manual for the appropriate tape system for activating and configuring its web specialist.

## Administer Users

Launch the System Console Specialist by selecting **Main Menu > Browser Functions > System Console Specialist**. A Welcome Page displays, with links (in the left navigation area) to functions. Click the **Administer Users** link in the left navigation area of the system console user interface. A screen will load with options to add users, delete users, or change user passwords.

### Adding a User

To add a user to the customer group, under the Add User heading:

1. Enter a new user id in the User ID field (8-character maximum).
2. Enter a password in the New Password field and repeat the password in the Confirm Password field. (8-character maximum).
3. Click **Add**.

### Deleting a User

To delete a user from the customer group, under the Delete User heading:

1. Select a user ID from the User ID drop-down list.
2. Click **Delete**.

### Changing a User Password

To change a user's password, under the Change User Password heading:

1. Select a user ID from the User ID drop-down list.
2. Enter a password in the New Password field and repeat the password in the Confirm Password field.
3. Click **Change**.

---

## Remote Customer Access to TSSC

The customer user (usually an administrator) can access the TSSC remotely through a web browser.

The customer can use the remote access for the following purposes:

- Update drive code
- Launch specialists
- Administer users
- SNMP trap forwarding
- AOS settings
- Modem connections
- Attached systems

To connect to the TSSC through a web browser, perform the following steps:

1. In the address bar of a supported browser, enter **http://** followed by the TSSC IP address or host name, followed by **/wi/en/en-us/index.htm**.  
For example: **http://<TSSC IP ADDRESS>/wi/en/en-us/index.htm**  
or **http://<TSSC HOSTNAME>/wi/en/en-us/index.htm**.
2. Press the **Enter** key on your keyboard or the **Go** button on your web browser.
3. The login page for the TSSC loads. The default login name is **customer** and the default password is **customer**.

---

## Error or Defer Matrix Updates

Occasionally, updates become available for the Error Call Home and Deferred Call Home capabilities of attached subsystems. You can use the system console to broadcast and activate these updates to attached subsystems or to remove previously-applied updates. Do not manually download the updates. The system console will automatically download these updates as they become available.

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

The code level requirements are:

### System Console

Code version 3.2.0 and above

### IBM 3494 Virtual Tape Server and Virtual Tape Controller

Code version 2.32.xx.xx and above

### IBM 3592 J70 Tape Controller

Code version 1.19.xx.xx and above

### IBM 3592 C06 Tape Controller

Code version 1.20.x.x and above

### IBM 3592 C07 Tape Controller

Code version 1.25.x.xx and above

## Broadcast and Activate Updates

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.
2. Select **System Console Actions > Error/Defer Matrix Updates** to start the Error and Defer Matrix updates tool. The dialog window in Figure 235 on page 179 displays. This tool enables copying error/defer matrix updates at the system console to attached VTS, VTC, or tape controller systems over the local network.

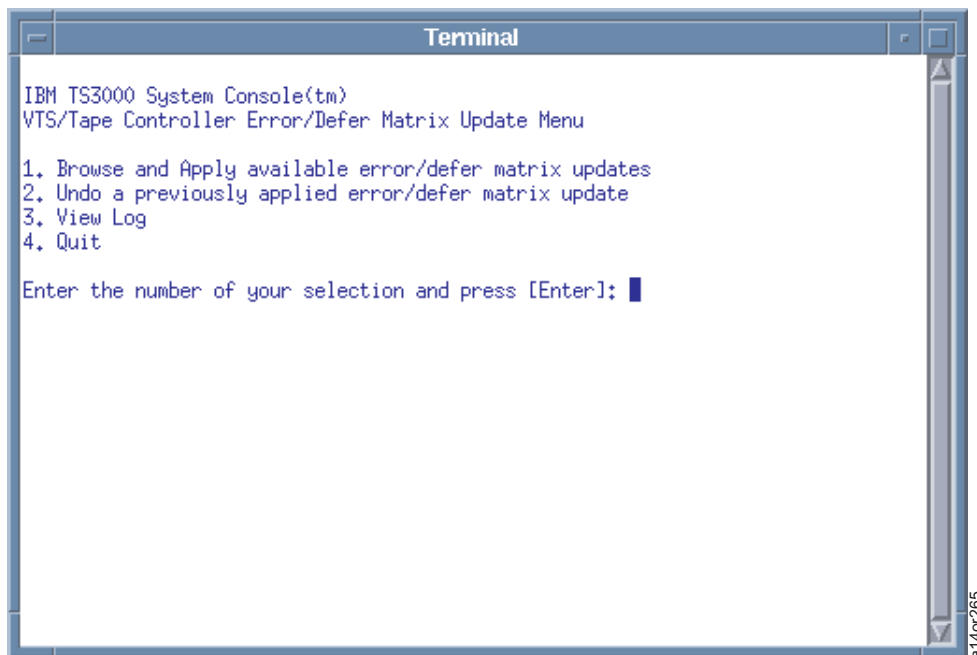


Figure 235. VTS, VTC, or Tape Controller Error or Defer Matrix Update Menu

3. Type **1** to select 'Browse and Apply available error/defer matrix updates,' and press **Enter** to display Figure 236.

```

IBM TS3000 System Console(tm)
VTS/Tape Controller Error/Defer Matrix Update Menu

1. Browse and Apply available error/defer matrix updates
2. Undo a previously applied error/defer matrix update
3. View Log
4. Quit

Enter the number of your selection and press [Enter]: 1
Reading files...

#      Update name      Date      Compatibility
-----
[1]    FID80B9          3/18/2005  3494-B20
                                3494-B10

Select error/defer matrix update to activate
Enter selection or just press [Enter] when complete:
  
```

Figure 236. Error or Defer Matrix Update Menu

4. Enter the number of the update you wish to apply or remove, and press **Enter**. A description of the update displays (Figure 237 on page 180). Read the description of the update. To apply the update, type **y** at the prompt, and press **Enter**.

Enter selection or just press [Enter] when complete:

```
1
Selection:
FID80B9
# Filename: FID80B9
# Compatibility: 3494-B20 3494-B10
# Created: 3/18/2005
#
# Defer call home for SIMs with refcode1 of
# 60B9.
#
```

Please read the update description above.

Are you sure you want to use this update? [y/N]

y

Figure 237. Error or Defer Matrix Menu - Apply Update

5. A list of compatible subsystems appears (Figure 238). Only subsystems that are compatible with the selected update are shown. Select any subsystems for which you want to activate this update by typing their numbers into the input area of the screen ('1' in this example). Press **Enter**.

Select compatible systems to activate matrix update.

Only compatible systems are shown.

NO	MODEL	SERIAL	HOSTNAME	IP ADDRESS	SELECT
1	3494B10	78B1510	raselvts	172.31.1.150	No

Enter selections (or de-selections) separated by spaces (ex: 1 3 5 7)  
or press [Enter] when complete:

1

Figure 238. Error or Defer Matrix Menu - Compatible Systems

6. When you have finished selecting systems, with your cursor in an inactive area on the screen (on a blank line), press **Enter**. The update will be broadcast to each system, 'Yes' will replace 'No,' and the status of the update will be shown as 'complete.' See Figure 239.

Select compatible systems to activate matrix update.

Only compatible systems are shown.

NO	MODEL	SERIAL	HOSTNAME	IP ADDRESS	SELECT
1	3494B10	78B1510	raselvts	172.31.1.150	Yes

Enter selections (or de-selections) separated by spaces (ex: 1 3 5 7)  
or press [Enter] when complete:

Applying changes to raselvts...complete

Figure 239. Error or Defer Matrix Menu - Systems Selection Broadcast

### Remove Previously-Applied Updates

This utility also can remove previously applied error and defer matrix updates. Removing or attempting to remove an update from a system that did not have the update has no effect.

7. To remove an update, select 2 from the main menu. A list of available updates appears, as shown in Figure 240 on page 181.



```

IBM TS3000 System Console(tm)
VTS/Tape Controller Error/Defer Matrix Update Menu

1. Browse and Apply available error/defer matrix updates
2. Undo a previously applied error/defer matrix update
3. View Log
4. Quit

Enter the number of your selection and press [Enter]: 2
PLEASE NOTE: You are deactivating an error matrix update. This action will
have no effect on systems that never had the update applied.
Reading files...

#      Update name      Date      Compatibility
-----
[1]    FID80B9          3/18/2005    3494-B20
                        3494-B10

Select error/defer matrix update to DEACTIVATE
Enter selection or just press [Enter] when complete:

```

Figure 240. Error or Defer Matrix Menu - Available Updates

8. Repeat Step 4 on page 179 through Step 6 on page 180 to remove an update.

## Launching the DS6000 Graphical User Interface

Use this procedure to launch the DS6000 graphical user interface (GUI). To read about installing the GUI, see “Installing the DS6000 Graphical User Interface” on page 58.

**Attention:** Many procedures in this book are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the code level.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.
2. From the Main Menu, select **Browser Functions > DS6000 Functions > Launch GUI**. You see the browser window in Figure 241.

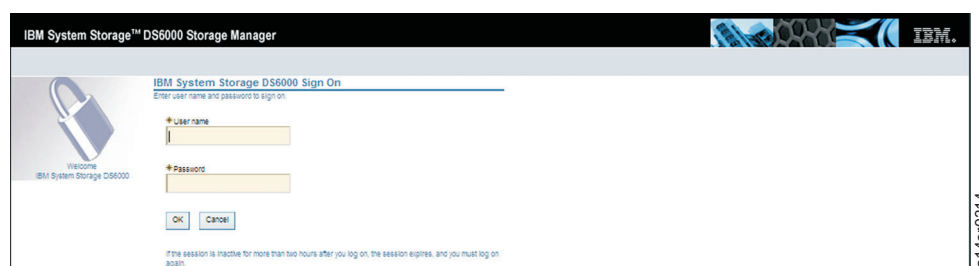


Figure 241. DS6000 GUI Login Username and Password Screen

3. At the login screen, enter the username “admin” and the password “ibm2serv”.

**Note:** If an excess quantity of failed user-authentication attempts occurred, the GUI will lock out users who attempt to login. If this occurs, return to the system console desktop screen. Right-click to bring up the main menu. Select **Browser Functions > DS6000 Functions > Reset GUI Password**. You will see Figure 242 on page 182, which provides status on the password reset.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to reset the DS6000 password (**TSSC Menus > External GUI > DS6000 GUI Options > Reset DS6000 Password**). Refer to “RAS Menus” on page 162.



Figure 242. Reset DS6000 GUI Password Screen

When the reset has completed, press **Enter**. Return to Step 2 on page 181 to continue.

4. Once the DS6000 GUI is launched, Figure 243 displays.

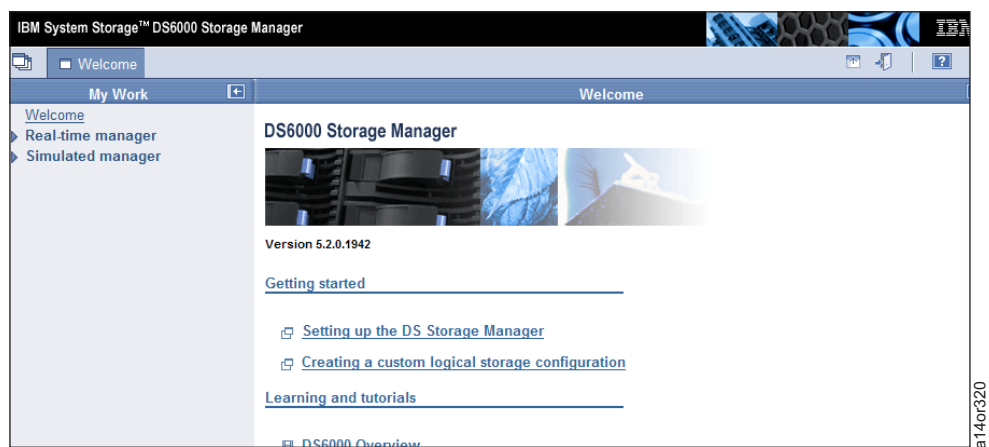


Figure 243. Storage Manager Welcome Screen

5. To set up communication with a TS7700 cache subsystem, from the Welcome column in the left frame, click on **Real-time manager**.
6. From the resulting list (not shown), select **Manage hardware**, then select **Storage complexes** from that resulting list. Figure 244 on page 183 displays.

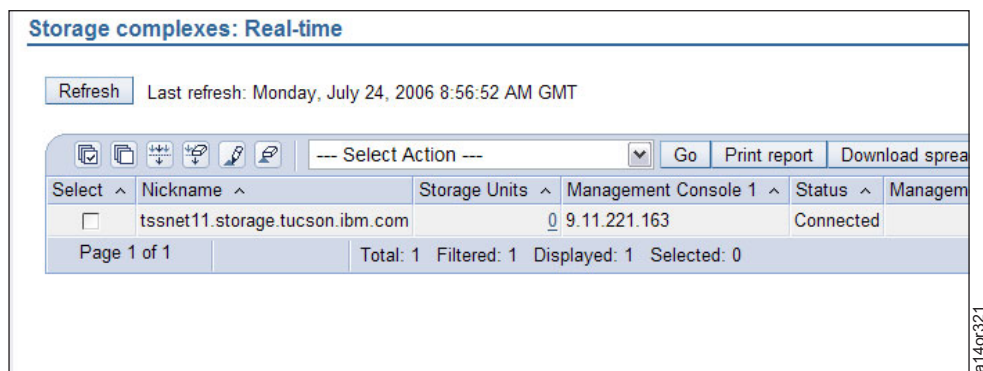


Figure 244. Storage Complexes : Real-time Screen

7. Click on **Select Action**, and from the resulting drop-down menu select **Add Storage Complex**. Click **Go**. Figure 245 displays.

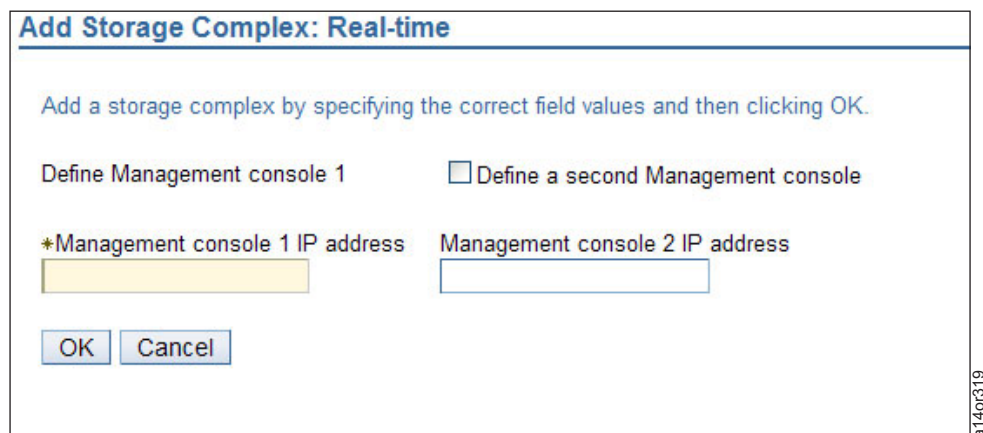


Figure 245. Add Storage Complex Screen

8. Enter into the "Management console 1 IP address" field the TS7700 IP address that was used for TSSC attachment. This address should be in the form '172.31.1.x'. Select **OK**. This returns you to Figure 244. Your storage complex should now be listed. For all further DS6000 service information including firmware upgrade, refer to IBM Knowledge Center (<http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter>).

## Launching the Storage Manager Graphical User Interface

Use this procedure to launch the Storage Manager graphical user interface (GUI). To read about installing the GUI, see "Installing the Storage Manager Graphical User Interface" on page 59.

**Attention:** Many procedures in this book are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the code level.

1. If you are not already logged into the TSSC, login. In the field for **Username**, type *service*, and in the field for **Password**, type *service*.
2. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
3. From the Main Menu, select **Browser Functions** > **Storage Manager GUI Functions** > **Launch GUI**. You see the browser window in Figure 246 on page 184.

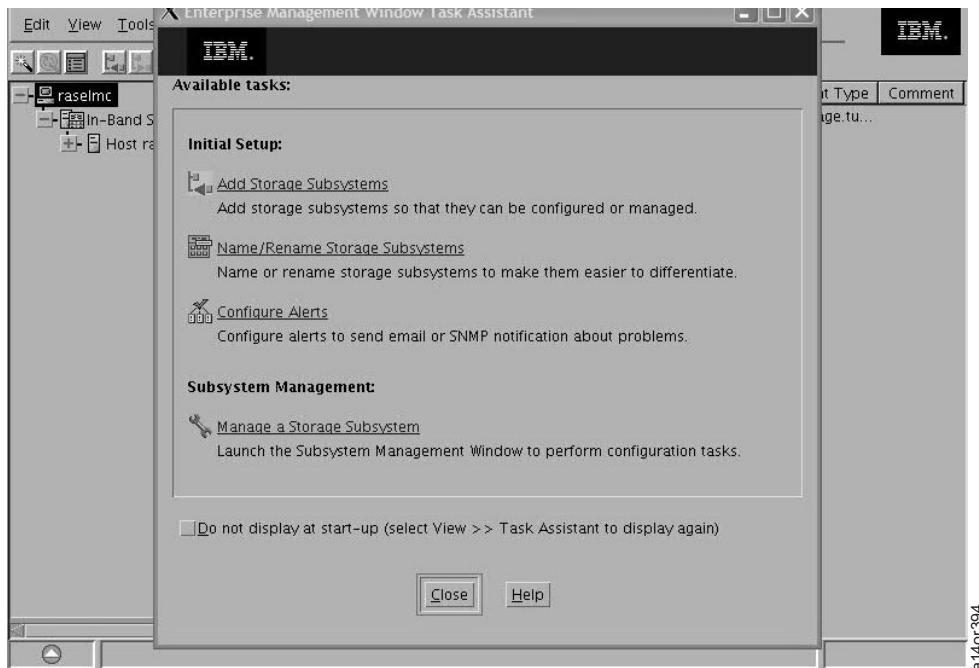


Figure 246. Storage Manager GUI Initial Screen

4. From the Enterprise Management Window Tape Assistant screen, select **Add Storage Subsystems** to add a storage subsystem.
5. If you just installed this GUI for the **first time**, or want to add another subsystem, perform the following. If not, go to Step 8. From the Select Addition Method screen, choose one of these options:
  - **Automatic** - to interrogate for storage subsystems and to add storage subsystems that are with in the local subnetwork. Go to Step 6
  - - OR - -
  - **Manual** - to add a storage subsystem that is outside the local subnetwork. Go to Step 7
6. From the Automatic Discovery screen, select **OK** to begin an automatic discovery of storage subsystems on the local sub-network, or select **Cancel** to discontinue. When this is completed, go to Step 8.
7. Select **Additional Method > Manual** and press **OK**.
  - a. From the dialog box for **Add Storage Subsystem - Manual**, select the radio button for **In-band management**, then type the TCP/IP address for the TS7700 in the field for **Host (DNS/Network name, IPv4 address, or IPv6 address)**.
 

**Note:** The address you type should be 172.31.1.xxx that is listed in Table 19 on page 185.
  - b. Click **Add**.
  - c. If you add a storage subsystem successfully, you will see a dialog box that says: *The specified host was added successfully.*
  - d. If you have more than one storage subsystem to add, click **Yes**, otherwise click **No**.
8. From the navigation for **IBM System Storage Manager**, select **Devices**.
9. Verify that the status is optimal. If so, exit. If not, contact the next level of support.
10. Return to the procedure that sent you here.

Table 19. TSSC IP Addresses

Field	Value	Notes
Master Console IP address	172.31.1.1	IP address of the Master Console.
Master Console Hostname	tssnet1	This is the recommended hostname for the Master Console.
3957-VEA / VEB IP address on the Master Console Network	172.31.1.xx	This is the recommended IP address for the first TS7720 attached to a master console. The last octet of this IP address must be in an increment of 10 between 10 and 240 (that is, 10, 20 ... 230, 240). The TS7720 router configuration will utilize this and the following 9 IP addresses (example: .150 - .159) so no other device should be set to an IP address in this range.
Subnet Mask on the Master Console Network	255.255.0.0	

## Launching the ProtecTIER Manager Graphical User Interface

Use this information to launch the ProtecTIER Manager graphical user interface (GUI). To read about installing the GUI, see “Installing the ProtecTIER Manager Graphical User Interface” on page 62.

**Attention:** Many procedures in this book are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the code level.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **Browser Functions > ProtecTIER Functions > Launch GUI**.
3. Refer to the TS7650 User's Guide (3958 family) for additional launching instructions.

## Accessing Subsystem Interfaces

Use this procedure to access available subsystem web interfaces including Specialists and the IBM TS7700 Management Interface.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. You see the login prompt shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. You see the Main Configuration screen shown in Figure 247 on page 186.

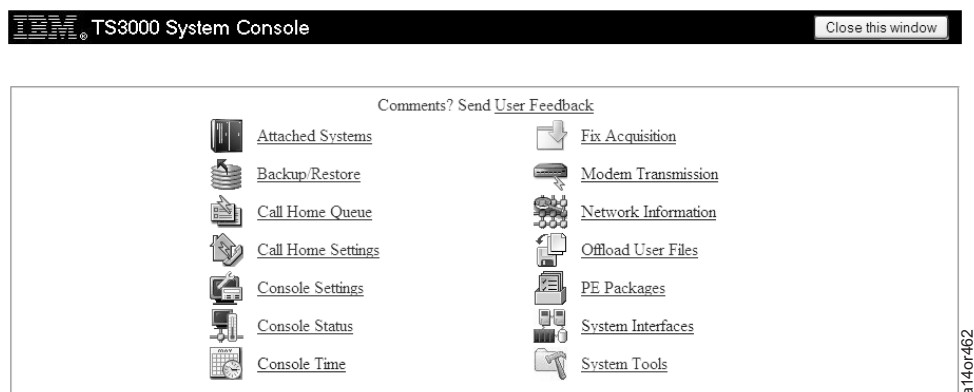


Figure 247. Main Configuration Screen

4. Select **System Interfaces**. You see the screen shown in Figure 248.

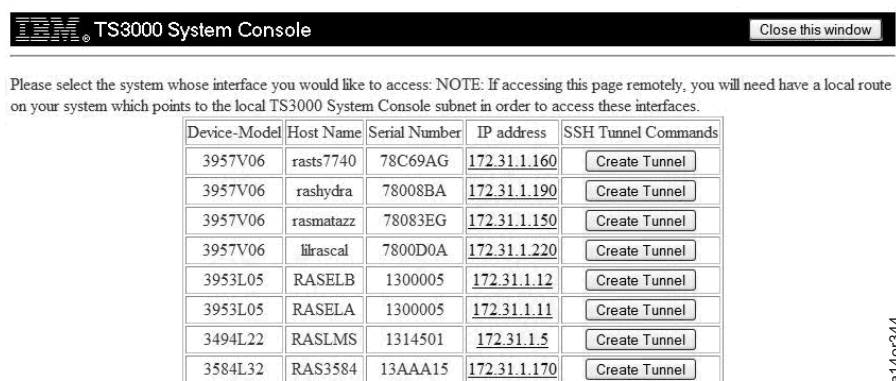


Figure 248. System Selection Screen

5. Click on the system you would like to connect to. This opens a browser tab that is connected to the system you selected. The tab contains either the Specialist or the TS7700 Management Interface for the system you selected. Refer to the documentation that applies to your selected system for more help.

## Managing the InfoCenter from Web Interface

Use this web interface as an alternate way to add the Information Center (InfoCenter), or to launch the InfoCenter from or to delete an InfoCenter level from the system console.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Action > Console Configuration Utility**.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then click **OK** to start the Console Configuration application. You see the menu shown in Figure 57 on page 46.
4. Select **System Tools > Manage InfoCenter**. You see Figure 249 on page 187.

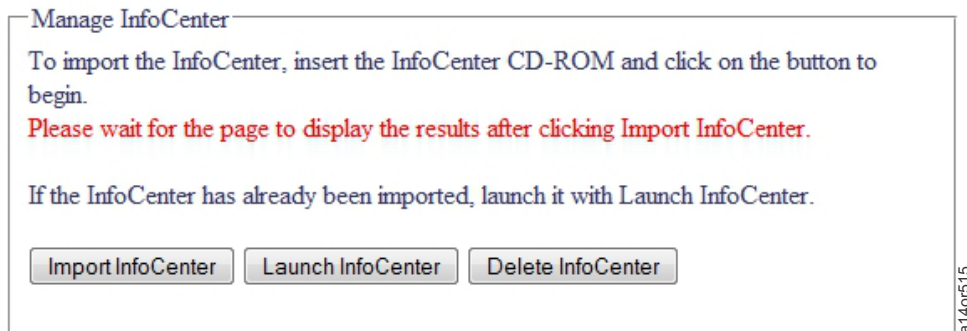


Figure 249. Manage InfoCenter from Web Interface

5. To import the InfoCenter from a CD-ROM, insert the CD-ROM into the CD drive of the system console, and click **Import InfoCenter**.
6. After the import completes, the CD ejects. The page displays at the top if it was a success or if an error occurred.
7. To launch the InfoCenter, from Figure 249, click **Launch InfoCenter**. A new window opens in your browser which points to the InfoCenter.
8. To delete a level of InfoCenter, from Figure 249, click **Delete InfoCenter**. If there is at least one level of InfoCenter installed it will be displayed in a box similar to the one shown in Figure 250.

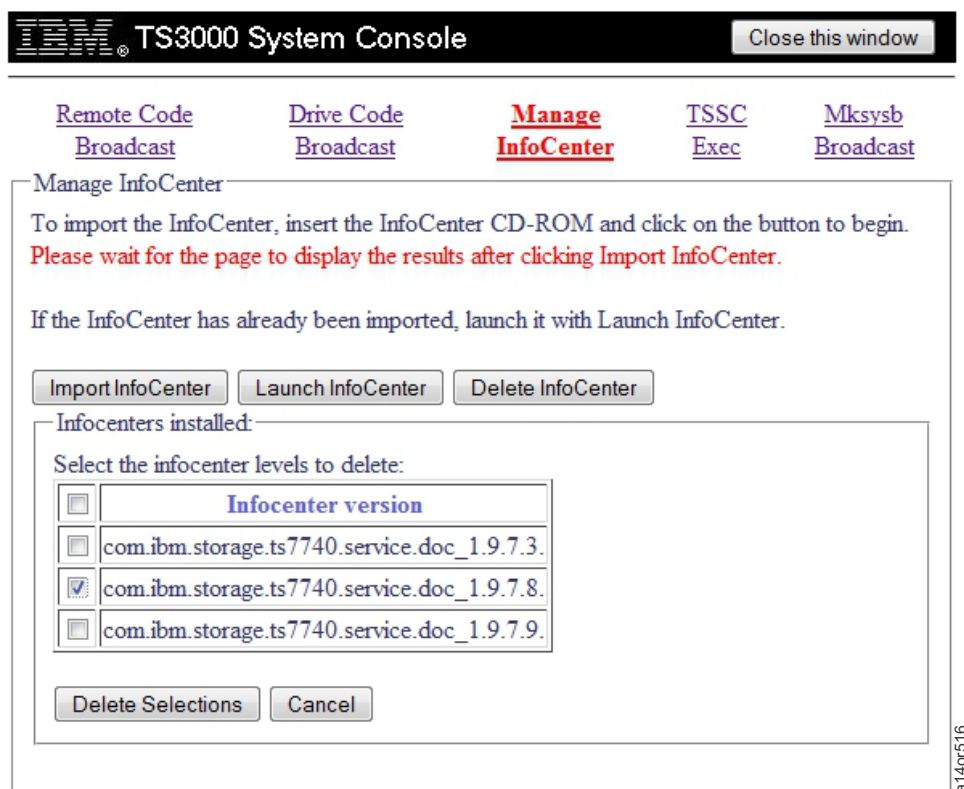


Figure 250. Different InfoCenter levels installed

9. From this box select the InfoCenter Level(s) you want to be deleted and click **Delete Selections** to confirm.



---

## Importing InfoCenter From CD-ROM

1. Right click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions** -> **Import InfoCenter**. The Terminal screen shown in Figure 251 appears, and asks you to insert the InfoCenter CD.

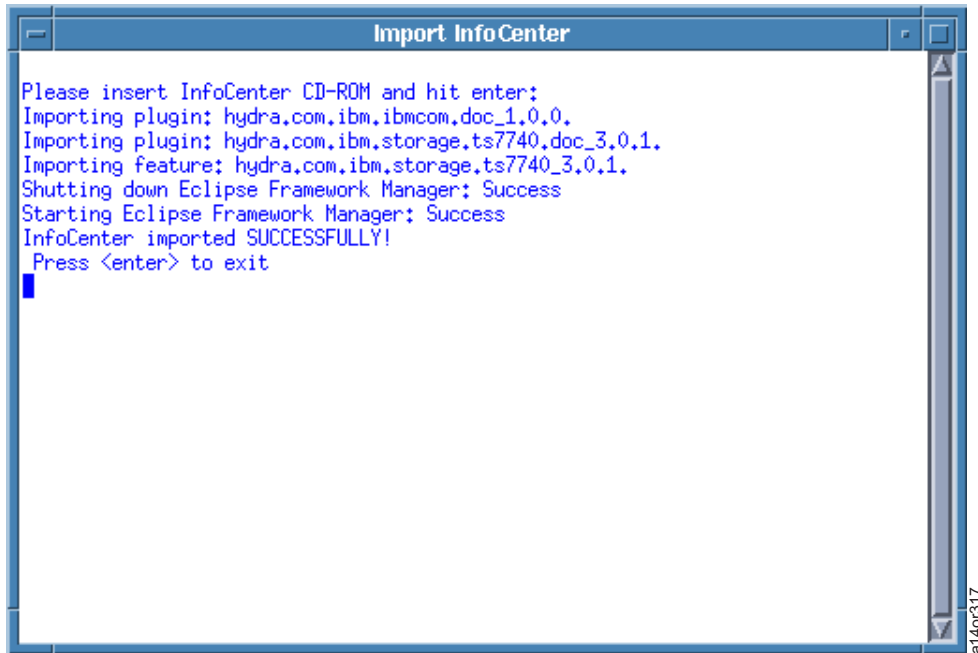


Figure 251. Insert InfoCenter CD Screen

3. Insert the InfoCenter CD-ROM for the desired product, and press **Enter**. You will see the imported Eclipse plugins and features. Eclipse restarts.
4. You may now Launch the InfoCenter. The imported information appears. Go to “Launching InfoCenter.”

---

## Launching InfoCenter

Use this procedure to launch the InfoCenter. To read about installing the InfoCenter, see “Importing InfoCenter From CD-ROM.”

1. Right click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **Browser Functions** > **Launch InfoCenter**. A browser window appears, as seen in Figure 252 on page 189. This can take as long as 15 seconds to open.



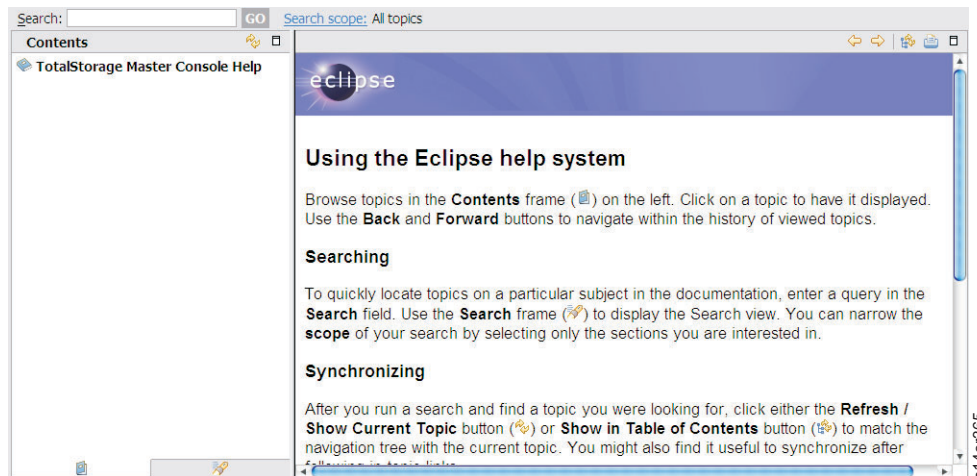


Figure 252. Launching InfoCenter Window. Though not shown here, your selection will appear below "TotalStorage Master Console Help."

3. You should see the TSSC InfoCenter topics, as well as any imported InfoCenter in the column to the left. You may select your appropriate topic or use the search box to navigate through the help information.

---

## Delete InfoCenter

Use this procedure to delete an InfoCenter level.

1. Right click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **Browser Functions > Delete InfoCenter**. A Terminal screen appears displaying the different InfoCenter levels that are installed. (If there are no InfoCenter installed, a message indicating this will be displayed). The user can select the Infocenter to delete by entering the number of InfoCenter displayed on screen.

---

## Resetting Modem

**Attention:** Many procedures in this book are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, "Maintenance Starting Point," on page 1 to determine the code level.

If your modem is hung after you dial in, you can use this information to use the Reset Modem button.

**Note:** Some modems have internal locks which prevent a software reset. If you are unsuccessful using the procedure, you might need to power cycle the modem. Consult the modem documentation for procedures.

1. Right click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility > Call Home Settings**. You see the screen shown in Figure 253 on page 190.

Figure 253. Modem Reset Settings

3. Under Call Home Communication Setup on this screen, select the Modem Port from the list. Click **Reset Modem**.

## Opening SSH Tunnel

### Notes:

- Use this only when directed by your next level of support.
- This function may not be available for all levels of TS7700 code.
- To use this function to remotely access any of the interfaces that are listed, you need a local route on your system that points to the local TSSC.

Your Support contact might ask you to open a tunnel so that they can gain access. Use this procedure to open a Secure SHell (SSH) tunnel to access one of the attached subsystems from a remote location.

1. Right click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility > System Interfaces**. You see the screen shown in Figure 254 on page 191

Tunnel open to 172.31.1.12

Device-Model	Host Name	Serial Number	IP address	SSH Tunnel Commands
3957V06	rasts7740	78C69AG	172.31.1.160	Create Tunnel
3957V06	rashydra	78008BA	172.31.1.190	Create Tunnel
3957V06	rasmatazz	78083EG	172.31.1.150	Create Tunnel
3957V06	lilrascal	7800D0A	172.31.1.220	Create Tunnel
3953L05	RASELB	1300005	172.31.1.12	Close Tunnel
3953L05	RASELA	1300005	172.31.1.11	Create Tunnel
3494L22	RASLMS	1314501	172.31.1.5	Create Tunnel
3584L32	RAS3584	13AAA15	172.31.1.170	Create Tunnel

Figure 254. SSH Tunnel Settings

3. Click **Create Tunnel** next to the system to which you want to open a tunnel. You are granting system access to a Support person.
4. After you and Support are satisfied with your activity, click on **Close Tunnel** to release the connection.

**Note:** If you do not close this tunnel, it will close automatically after four hours regardless of any current operating status. You will need to reopen the tunnel to continue your activity.

## Sending User Feedback

Use this information to send a comment to an IBM support group about the system console. For comments about this MI, see "Sending comments" on page xvi.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility > User Feedback**. Enter information into the User Name, User email address, and Comments fields.

**Note:** Do not add or allow spaces in the username.

3. Click **Send Comments**. This will create and send a PE package. You can review your comments in a file entitled "userFeedback(firstname.lastname).(timestamp).txt" that is located in the /var/enc/log/feedback directory.

## Adding PFE Execs from Web Interface

You can add PFE Exec patches to the system console from the web interface. This web interface allows an alternate way to add a PFE Exec patch to the system console, other than using menu options from the desktop menu.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. Type **service** in the Username field, type **service** in the Password field, then click **OK**.
3. Select the **System Tools** link.
4. Select the option at the top for TSSC Exec. You see Figure 255 on page 192

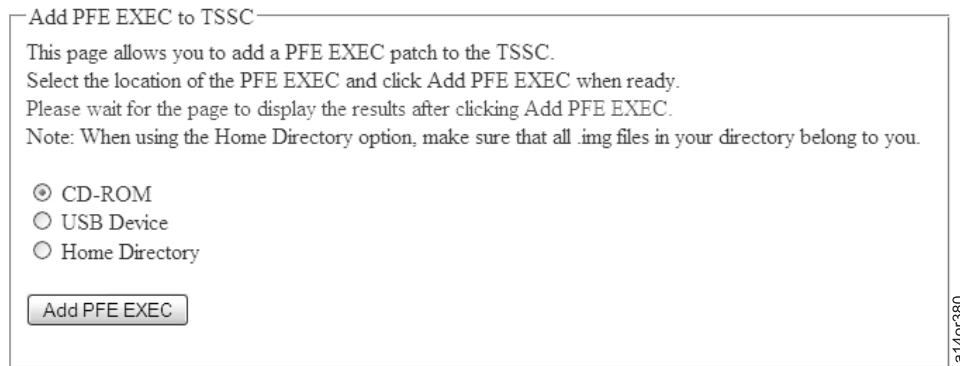


Figure 255. Adding PFE Exec from Web Interface

5. If you wish to use a CD-ROM that has the patch:
  - a. Insert the CD-ROM that has the patch on it.
  - b. Select **CD-ROM > Add PFE EXEC**.

-- OR --
6. If you wish to use a USB Device that has the patch on it:
  - a. Plug in a USB device that has the patch on it.
  - b. Select **USB Device > Add PFE EXEC**.

-- OR --
7. You also can add the patch if it is in your Home Directory.
  - a. If you know the patch is in your Home Directory, select **Home Directory > Add PFE EXEC**.
8. You see the window in Figure 256 which prompts you to verify that the PFE EXEC patch is on the selected media. Select **OK**.

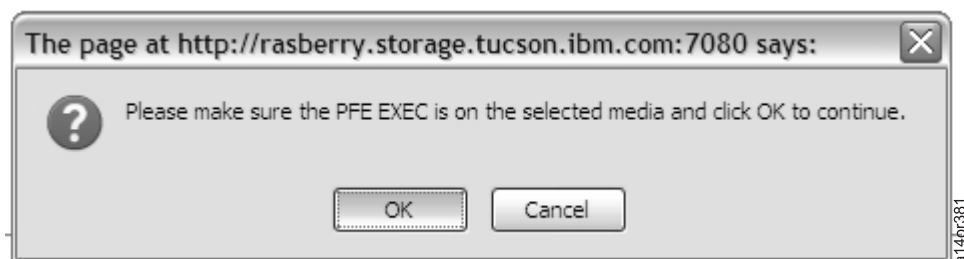


Figure 256. PFE Exec Patch

9. A box showing the available PFE EXEC patches on the selected media is displayed:

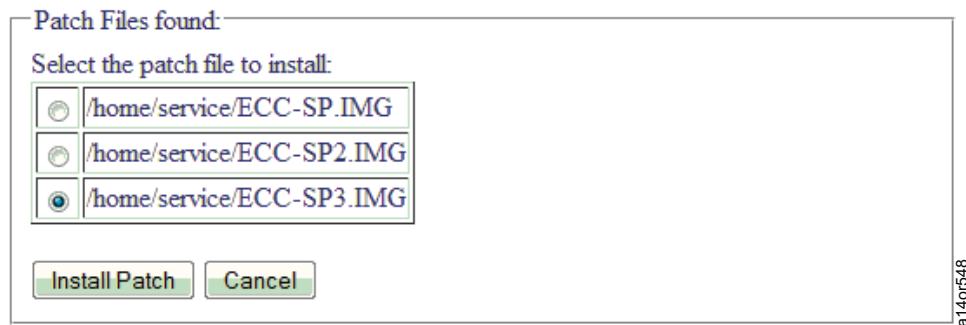


Figure 257. Multiple patch options

10. Select the desired patch and click **Install Patch**.
11. The process proceeds, then the page reloads. A message appears above the text depicted in Figure 255 on page 192, noting the success or providing an error message.

---

## Applying a PE Package Patch

You can apply a PE package patch to the system console by using menu options from the desktop menu or remotely by using the command line interface (CLI). The following sections detail the methods that you can use to apply a PE package patch.

### Applying a patch locally using a CD-ROM

1. Burn the image `PEPackage.iso` to a CD-ROM.

**Note:** The `.iso` name might be different depending on the package type.

2. Log into the system console.
3. Right-click from anywhere in the desktop to view the Main Menu.
4. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Apply Patch**.
5. When prompted for the location to load the patch from, select **Option 1. CD-ROM**.
6. When prompted, insert the CD-ROM and press Enter.
7. The script presents the patch's information and prompts you to continue, press `y`, then Enter. The patch is applied and the following output confirms the successful application of the patch:

```
/dev/cdrom/PEPackage.IMG Installed Successfully!
```

8. The script might require the user to reboot or log out and log back into the system console in order for the patch to be installed properly. The package will display a message if it is needed.
9. Press Enter to complete the procedure.

### Applying a patch locally using a USB drive

1. Copy the `PEPackage.IMG` file on to a USB drive.

**Note:** The `.IMG` name might be different depending on the package type.

2. Insert the USB drive into any available USB port on the system console.
3. Log into the system console.
4. Right-click from anywhere in the desktop to view the Main Menu.
5. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Apply Patch**.
6. When prompted for the location to load the patch from, select **Option 2. USB Device**.

7. When prompted, enter the USB device and press Enter.
8. The script presents the patch's information and prompts you to continue. Press **y**, then Enter. The patch is applied and is confirmed with a successful message.
9. The script might require the user to reboot or log out and log back into the system console in order for the patch to be installed properly. The package will display a message if it is needed.
10. Press Enter to complete the procedure.

## Applying a patch remotely

1. FTP the PEPackage.IMG file to the /home/<userid>/ directory.

**Note:** The .IMG name might be different depending on the package type.

2. From the system console CLI, run **sudo rsTSSCPFE\_EXEC.sh**.
3. When prompted for the location to load the patch from, select **Option 3. /home/<userid>**.
4. The script presents the patch's information and prompts you to continue. Press **y**, then Enter. The patch is applied and is confirmed with a successful message.
5. The script might require the user to reboot or log out and log back into the system console in order for the patch to be installed properly. The package will display a message if it is needed.
6. Press Enter to complete the procedure.

---

## Setting 3958 and 3592 SNMP Trap Forwarding

**Note:** To use this to forward SNMP traps to the customer's network, you must obtain the IP address from the customer.

1. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility > Call Home Settings > SNMP Settings**.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to manage SNMP traps (**TSSC Menus > SNMP Options**). Refer to "RAS Menus" on page 162.

3. You will see a box for ProtecTIER SNMP Trap Forwarding if a 3958 is attached, and a box for Control Unit SNMP Trap Forwarding if a 3592 is attached. You will see one of the following screens:

Figure 258. Enabling ProtecTIER SNMP Trap Forwarding

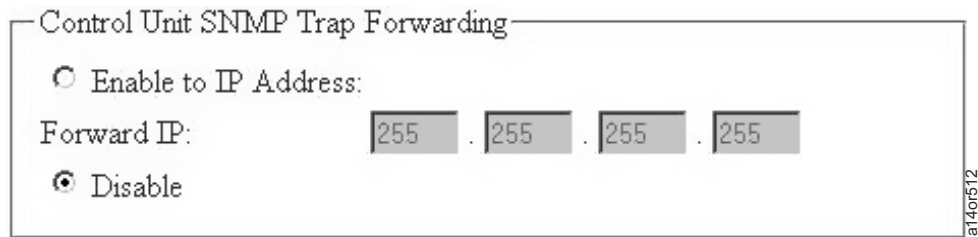


Figure 259. Enabling Control Unit SNMP Trap Forwarding

4. Select the **Enable to IP Address** button. This allows you to enter the IP address into the fields on this screen.
5. Enter the IP address to which you want to forward SNMP traps. Select **Apply**.

**Note:** Select **Disable** to stop sending traps to the customers network.

---

## Tape System Reporter

**Note:** The Tape System Reporter (TSR) is a tool developed by the 3584 team that gathers statistical information about the usage of the 3584 libraries attached to the TSSC. TSR data will be sent to the Call Home Database when the TSSC performs a Heartbeat call home. See Figure 111 on page 81.

### Starting TSR

1. Log into the TSSC.
2. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
3. From the Main Menu, select **Browser Functions > TSR Functions > Start TSR**.

**Note:** If TSR is running when a backup and restore is issued, TSR will restart. Also when the TSSC reboots, TSR will restart.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to start TSR (**TSSC Menus > 3584 Options > Start TSR**). Refer to “RAS Menus” on page 162.

### Stopping TSR

1. Log into the TSSC.
2. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
3. From the Main Menu, select **Browser Functions > TSR Functions > Stop TSR**.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to stop TSR (**TSSC Menus > 3584 Options > Stop TSR**). Refer to “RAS Menus” on page 162.

---

## Fix Acquisition

Use this feature to find and download system and microcode updates for IBM Tape Storage devices.

1. Right click anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu as shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Action --> Console Configuration Utility**. You see the login prompt shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then single click **OK**.
4. Select the Fix Acquisition link. You will see the following image:



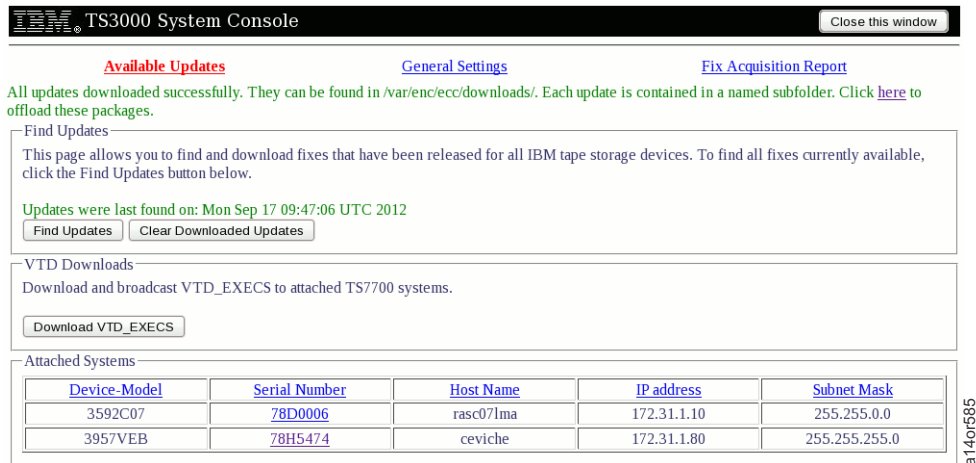


Figure 260. Fix Acquisition Main Menu

- To find all available updates, click the **Find Updates** button. Once the updates have been found, they will be displayed on a screen similar to the image shown below:

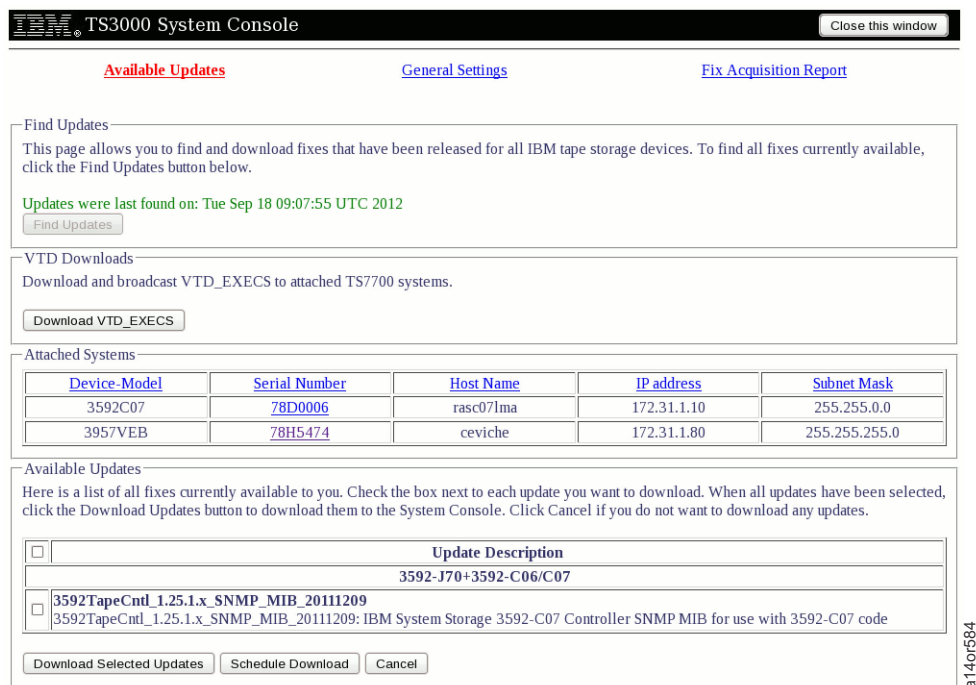


Figure 261. Fix Acquisition Updates

- Place a check in the box next to each update you wish to download. When the download selections have been made, click the **Download Selected Updates** button to continue. If you want to exit without downloading any updates, click the **Cancel** button instead.
- Once all updates have been downloaded, you will see a success message.
  - All downloaded updates can be found in the /var/enc/ecc/downloads folder. Each update is placed in its own unique subdirectory.
  - The TSSC can be used to offload these packages, see “Offloading User Files” on page 135.



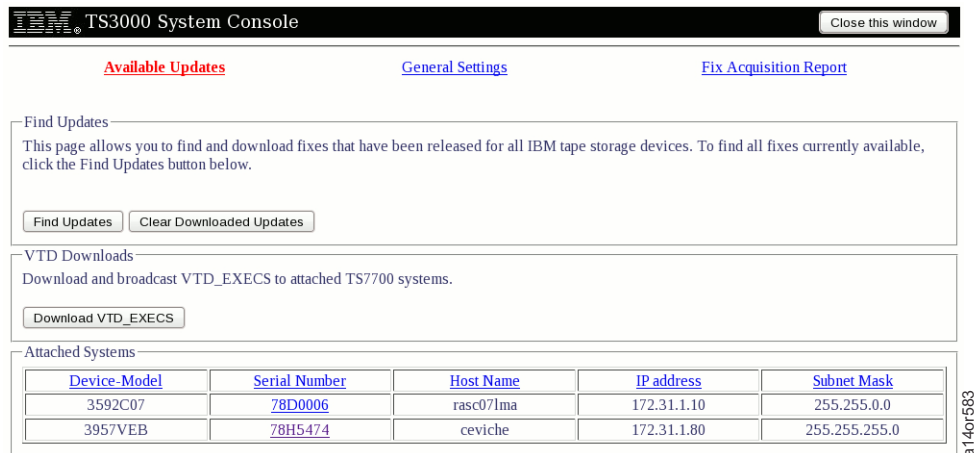


Figure 262. Fix Acquisition Success

8. To delete previously downloaded updates from the TSSC, click the **Clear Downloaded Updates** button as shown on Figure 260 on page 196

## VTD Downloads

This section is available only if a TS7700 system is attached. The TSSC will query Fix Central for any applicable VTD\_EXECS, and they will be downloaded and broadcasted to all appropriate machines.

1. Right click anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu as shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Action --> Console Configuration Utility**. You see the login prompt shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then single click **OK**.
4. Click on Fix Acquisition.
5. Click the **Download VTD\_EXECS** button
6. Once the process has completed, you will see a success message.

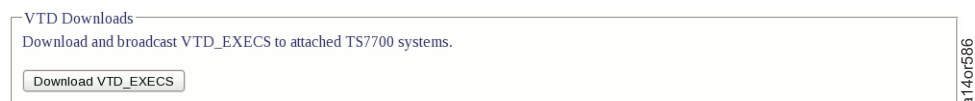


Figure 263. Fix Acquisition VTD Downloads

## Installed VTD\_EXECS

Use this section to query the attached TS7700 systems to know the installed vtd\_execs. This feature is compatible with TS7700 systems with code level 8.3 and above.

### Authentication Service Users/Groups Location

1. Right click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Console Configuration Utility**. You see the login prompt.
3. Type your credentials, then single click **Log in**.
4. Click on **Fix Acquisition**.
5. Click on **Installed VTD\_EXECS** tab.

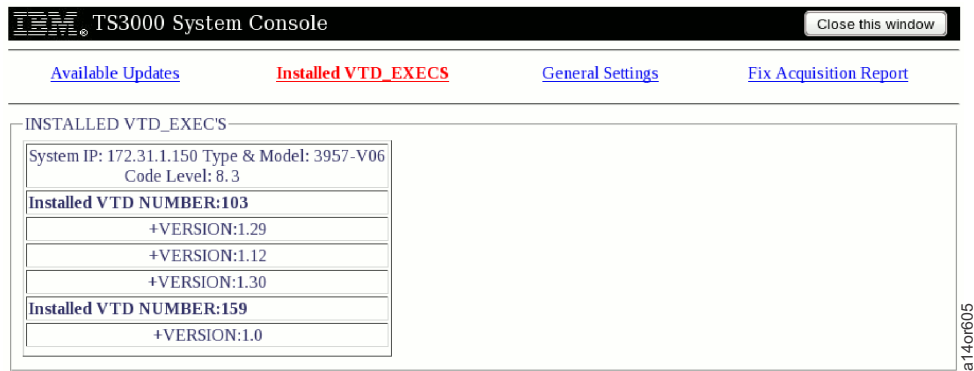


Figure 264. Installed VTD\_EXECS

## Fix Acquisitions General Settings

Use this settings page to enable and set the interval of the auto VTD\_EXEC downloads. The interval is the number of days between checks for VTD\_EXEC packages on Fix Central.

1. Right click anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu as shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Action** --> **Console Configuration Utility**. You see the login prompt shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then single click **OK**.
4. Select Fix Acquisition, then click on the General Settings header. You will see the following screen:

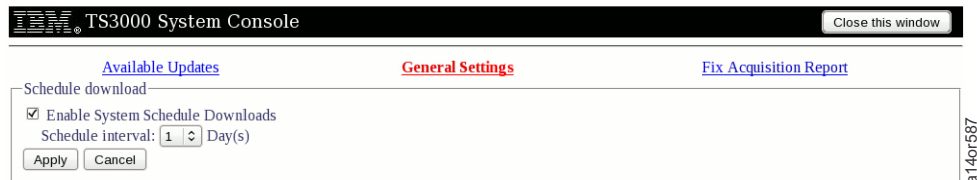


Figure 265. Fix Acquisition General Settings

5. Select Enable System Schedule Downloads to activate the auto VTD\_EXEC downloads feature.
6. Set the Schedule Interval and click **Apply** for changes to take effect.

## Fix Acquisition Report

You can see the results of manual and scheduled VTD\_EXEC downloads in this section.

1. Right click anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu as shown in Figure 55 on page 45.
2. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Action** --> **Console Configuration Utility**. You see the login prompt shown in Figure 56 on page 46.
3. Type **service** in the Username field, **service** in the Password field, then single click **OK**.
4. Click on Fix Acquisition, then click on the Fix Acquisition Report header.
5. You will see the following screen:

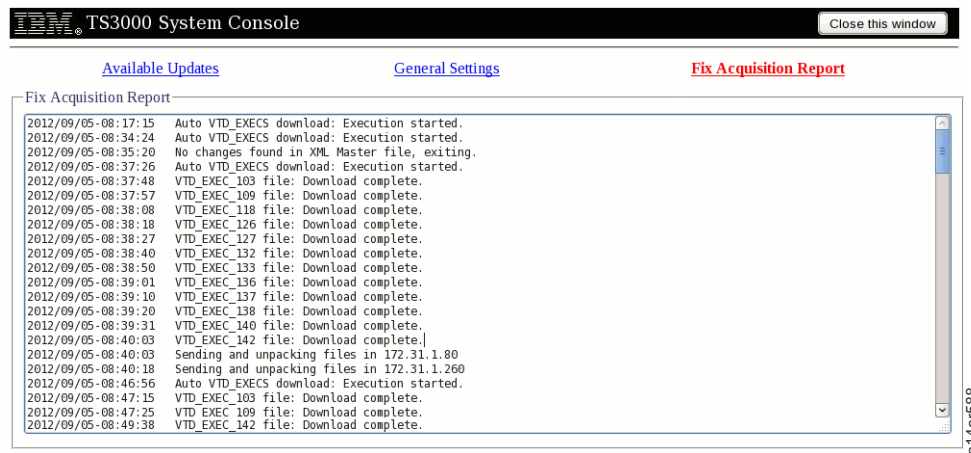


Figure 266. Fix Acquisition Report

## Mount/Unmount USB or CD-ROM

To mount and unmount a USB device or CD-ROM, perform the following steps.

1. Ensure the desired USB device is connected to the system console, or a usable disk is inserted in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Right-click from anywhere in the Desktop to view the Main Menu.
3. From the Main Menu, select **System Console Actions > Mount Functions**.
4. If a USB device has been connected and needs to be mounted, select **Mount USB**. If a disk was inserted and needs to be accessed, select **Mount CD-ROM**. Select **Unmount USB** or **Unmount CD-ROM** if the USB device or CD-ROM is no longer in use.

**Note:** The menu-driven command line tool **RAS Menu** can be used as an alternative method to mount or unmount a USB device or CD-ROM (**TSSC Menus > Mount Options**). Refer to “RAS Menus” on page 162.

## Mount/Unmount USB or CD-ROM Remotely

A user can mount and unmount USB devices and CD-ROMs remotely through the command line.

1. To mount a USB device remotely type **rsMount.sh usb** and press Enter.
2. To unmount a USB device remotely type **sudo rsUnmount.sh usb** and press Enter.
3. To mount a CD-ROM remotely type **rsMount.sh cd** and press Enter.
4. To unmount a CD-ROM remotely type **sudo rsUnmount.sh cd** and press Enter.



---

## Chapter 4. Repair/Troubleshooting

---

### System Console Repair

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

In most cases, the standard procedures for PC repair apply for the system console. The IBM TS3000 and TS4500 System Console Documentation CD contains the file XXXXSVC.PDF (the XXXX represents the PC Type, that is, 6579, 6792, 8480, 8482, 8836, or 8849) which is the Hardware Maintenance Information for the earlier model PCs.

The later model PC documents are named differently. Use the following table to select the PDF document that is needed.

PDF name	Model/Type	Description
m83m93p_hmm.pdf	ThinkCentre M93p	Hardware Maintenance Manual
00D3170.pdf	x3250 M4 Type 2583	Problem Determination and Service Guide
81Y6119.pdf	x3250 M3 Types 4251, 4252, and 4261	Problem Determination and Service Guide
59Y7404.pdf	x3550 M2 Type 7946	Problem Determination and Service Guide
7978SVC.pdf	x3550 Type 7978	Problem Determination and Service Guide

This system console MI details repair and replacement procedures for the system console, and does not address PC repair.

There are three procedures which will require additional attention:

- **Hard Disk Drive Replacement:** When replacing the hard disk drive, replace it with at least a (30 GB) drive. After replacing the hard disk drive, follow the procedure outlined in “System Console Code Load/Hard Drive Rebuild” on page 166 to install the system console code (Model 8482 requires (80 GB) serial ATA HDD; see Chapter 5, “Parts Listings,” on page 205).
- **Planar Replacement:** When replacing the system planar, transfer the microprocessor and memory modules from the removed system planar to the new system planar [at least 268 MB (256 MiB) of RAM is required]. It also is important to reset the BIOS settings for Console Date/Time and Drive Selection Startup Sequence, as outlined in Table 20 on page 202.

It might be necessary to download the BIOS for a new planar upon installation. For downloadable files for your machine type and model, see the IBM Support Portal (<http://www.ibm.com/support/us>).

- **Lithium Battery Replacement:**

For instructions on removing or replacing the M93p lithium coin cell battery, see the Lenovo Support website ([http://support.lenovo.com/en\\_US/detail.page?DocID=PD027402](http://support.lenovo.com/en_US/detail.page?DocID=PD027402)).

When replacing the lithium coin cell battery in the PC, or when replacing the M93p PC, refer to the following notice.

#### Statement 2



**CAUTION:**

When replacing the lithium coin cell battery, use an equivalent type battery recommended by the manufacturer. The battery contains lithium and can explode if not properly used, handled, or disposed of.

*Do not:*

- Throw or immerse into water
- Heat to more than 100°C (212°F)
- Repair or disassemble

Dispose of the battery as required by local ordinances or regulations.

---

## Troubleshooting the System Console

**Attention:** Many procedures in this document are code specific. Before starting any procedure, go to Chapter 1, “Maintenance Starting Point,” on page 1 to determine the system console code level.

*Table 20. Troubleshooting*

You are here for this reason	Perform this action
User interface "Lock Up" (mouse/menu items inoperative)	Simultaneously press the <b>Alt</b> , <b>Ctrl</b> , and <b>Backspace</b> keys to end the session and return to the login screen.
External modems connected and powered ON but cannot be detected, and call home does not function	Use the reset modem function in call home settings to reset the firmware settings for external modems. See “Configuring Call Home Settings Electronic Customer Care” on page 81 for instructions.
Simultaneously pressing the Alt + Ctrl + Backspace keys does not properly end session	(Only to be done as a last resort; can result in loss of data) Disconnect the power cord, wait 10 seconds, reconnect the power cord, and power ON the system console.
Review hardware maintenance manual for IBM PC	Insert the Product Recovery CD-ROM into a computer with Adobe Acrobat Reader (version 4.0 or later). Open the file on the CD-ROM entitled XXXXSVC.PDF (the XXXX represents the PC Type, such as 6579, 6792, 8480, or 8482).  <b>Attention:</b> Do not attempt to install the Product Recovery CD-ROM into any machine other than a system console. You will cause permanent and unrecoverable damage to that other machine.
Perform the procedure to set console date and time. (See also “Setting the Console Date and Time” on page 95.)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Power OFF the system console for at least 10 seconds.</li> <li>2. During power-up initialization, press <b>F1</b> to enter the BIOS Configuration/Setup Utility. Power ON the system console.</li> <li>3. Use the Up/Down keyboard arrow keys to navigate to Date/Time, then press <b>Enter</b>.</li> <li>4. Enter the correct time of day HH:MM:SS (HH is 00 to 24; use the arrow keys to navigate).</li> <li>5. Enter the correct date MM:DD:YYYY.</li> <li>6. Press <b>ESC</b> when finished.</li> <li>7. Use the down arrow to select Save Settings. Press <b>Enter</b> to continue.</li> <li>8. Use the down arrow to select Exit Setup. Select <b>Yes</b> to exit the Setup Utility.</li> </ol> <p>Normal reboot should now occur.</p>

Table 20. Troubleshooting (continued)

You are here for this reason	Perform this action
<p>Perform the procedure to reset the proper drive selection startup sequence. In the event of a planar replacement, it will be necessary to reset the boot-up sequence to <b>Floppy Drive &gt; CD-ROM &gt; Hard Disk Drive</b> in order for the TSSC to boot the CD-ROM, if present.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. During power-up initialization, press <b>F1</b> to enter the BIOS Configuration/Setup Utility. Power ON the system console.</li> <li>2. Use the Up/Down keyboard arrow keys to navigate to <b>Start Options</b>, then press <b>Enter</b>.</li> <li>3. Press <b>Enter</b> again to set the Startup Sequence.</li> <li>4. Use the arrow keys to navigate and to set the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• [Diskette Drive 0]</li> <li>• [CD-ROM]</li> <li>• [Hard Disk 0]</li> <li>• [Disabled] Automatic Power On Startup Sequence</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. Press the <b>Esc</b> key twice when finished.</li> <li>6. Use the Down arrow key to select <b>Save Settings</b>. Press <b>Enter</b> to continue.</li> <li>7. Use the Down arrow key to select to Exit Setup. Select <b>Yes</b> to exit the Setup Utility.</li> </ol> <p>Normal reboot should now occur.</p>

Table 20. Troubleshooting (continued)

You are here for this reason	Perform this action
<p>If the IMC does not start up from a device such as the USB-DVD as expected, perform the procedure to access the BIOS and set the boot sequence on the M93p.</p>	<p><b>Selecting a startup device</b></p> <p>If the IMC does not start up from a device such as the USB-DVD as expected, do one of the following to select the startup device you want.</p> <p><u>Selecting a temporary startup device</u></p> <p>Use this procedure to select a temporary startup device.  <b>Note:</b> Not all discs and hard disk drives are bootable.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn off your computer.</li> <li>2. Repeatedly press and release the <b>F12</b> key when turning on the computer. When the Startup Device Menu window displays, release the <b>F12</b> key.</li> <li>3. Select the desired startup device and press <b>Enter</b>. The computer will start up from the device you selected.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note:</b> Selecting a startup device from the Startup Device Menu window does not permanently change the startup sequence.</p> <p><u>Selecting or changing the startup device sequence</u></p> <p>To view or permanently change the configured startup device sequence, do the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Start the Setup Utility program. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Make sure your computer is turned off.</li> <li>b. Repeatedly press and release the <b>F1</b> key when turning on the computer. When you hear multiple beeps or see a logo screen, release the <b>F1</b> key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note:</b> If a Power-On Password or an Administrator Password has been set, the Setup Utility program menu will not be displayed until you type the correct password.</p> </li> <li>2. From the Setup Utility program main menu, select <b>Startup</b>.</li> <li>3. Make sure that CSM is enabled.</li> <li>4. Select the devices for the Primary Boot Sequence, the Automatic Boot Sequence, and the Error Boot Sequence. Read the information displayed on the right side of the screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USB CDROM</li> <li>• SATA1 (internal drive)</li> <li>• USB HDD</li> <li>• USB FDD</li> <li>• USB KEY</li> <li>• Other Device</li> <li>• Network 1</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. Press <b>F10</b> to save changes and exit the Setup Utility program.</li> </ol>



---

## Chapter 5. Parts Listings

The topics in this section provide parts listings for current and previous system console servers.

Refer to the following list to locate field replaceable unit (FRU) information for your specific system console server model.

- “Model M93p FRU List” on page 206
- “Model x3250 (M4) Type 2583 FRU List” on page 207
- “Model x3250 (M3) Type 4252 Model PCJ FRU List” on page 209
- “Model x3550 (M2) Type 7946 FRU List” on page 211
- “Model x3550 (type 7978) FRU List” on page 214
- “Model x3200 FRU List” on page 216
- “Model 306m FRU List” on page 218
- “Model 206m FRU List” on page 220

For additional information related specifically to the PC, insert the IBM TS3000 and TS4500 System Console Documentation CD in a Windows PC or notebook with Adobe Acrobat Reader (version 4.0 or later). The CD contains the file XXXXSVC.PDF (the XXXX represents the PC Type, that is, 6579, 6792, 8480, 8482, 8836, or 8849) which is the Hardware Maintenance Information for the earlier model PCs.

The later model PC documents are named differently. Use the following table to select the PDF document that is needed.

PDF name	Model/Type	Description
m83m93p_hmm.pdf	ThinkCentre M93p	Hardware Maintenance Manual
00D3170.pdf	x3250 M4 Type 2583	Problem Determination and Service Guide
81Y6119.pdf	x3250 M3 Types 4251, 4252, and 4261	Problem Determination and Service Guide
59Y7404.pdf	x3550 M2 Type 7946	Problem Determination and Service Guide
7978SVC.pdf	x3550 Type 7978	Problem Determination and Service Guide

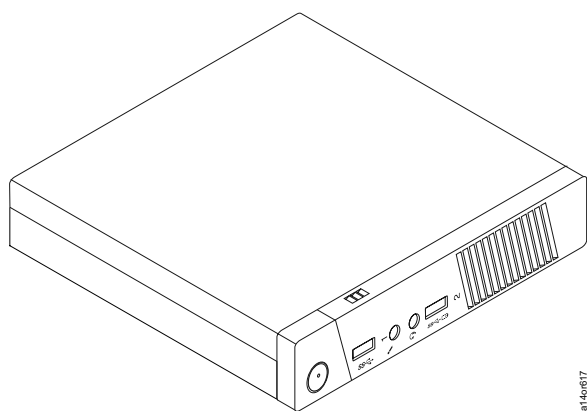
## Model M93p FRU List

Table 21 lists the part numbers and descriptions of the FRUs associated with the TS4500 IMC model M93p.

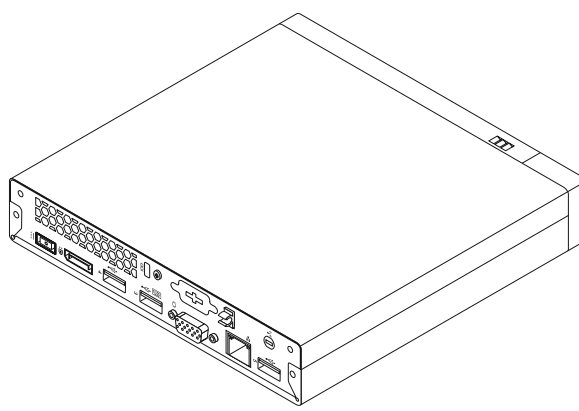
*Table 21. TS4500 IMC model M93p FRU list*

FRU Part Number	Description
12X4664	Tiny PC (M93p)
12X4665	Cable, 3.2 m Ethernet - IMC
12X5154	IMC Keyboard
12X5155	Tiny PC Power Brick
35P2251	Optical Drive, DVD
35P2709	USB to Ethernet Dongle
39M5546	Power Cable, IMC
95P2984	IMC Monitor/Mounting Asm
95P9290	Keyboard Tray Latch
98Y3992	USB Modem

Figure 267 and Figure 268 show the M93p, which might differ slightly from your hardware.



*Figure 267. M93p front view*



*Figure 268. M93p rear view*

## Model x3250 (M4) Type 2583 FRU List

Table 22 lists the part numbers and descriptions of the components of the x3250 (M4) type 2583.

Table 22. Model x3250 M4 FRU list

Ref #	Part Number	Description
<b>1</b>	81Y7455	Top cover
<b>2</b>	81Y7457	PCI-E riser card assembly
<b>3</b>	81Y7453	DIMM air baffle
<b>4</b>	44T1575	Memory, 4 GB RDIMM
<b>5</b>	81Y6301	Power supply, 300 Watt, fixed, non-redundant
<b>6</b>	81Y7456	Chassis
<b>7</b>	43W7753	Hard disk drive, simple-swap, 3.5-inch SATA II, 250 GB <b>Note:</b> Order this part number if your server currently has a 250 GB Hard Disk Drive.
<b>7</b>	39M4517	Hard disk drive, 500 GB Hard Disk Drive <b>Note:</b> Order this part number if your server currently has a 500 GB Hard Disk Drive.
<b>8</b>	39M4343	Filler panel, 3.5-inch simple-swap hard disk drive
<b>9</b>	81Y7458	Front bezel
<b>10</b>	90Y5298	Operator information panel assembly
<b>11</b>	44W3256	Drive, CD R/W - DVD R/W
<b>12</b>	81Y7454	System fan
<b>13</b>	00D8551	System planer board
<b>14</b>	81Y7506	Microprocessor 2.6 GHz
<b>15</b>	81Y7495	Heat sink
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 98Y3992</li> <li>• 33F8354</li> <li>• 81Y7494</li> <li>• 81Y7463</li> <li>• 81Y7464</li> <li>• 39M4351</li> <li>• 81Y7459</li> <li>• 24P1121</li> <li>• 81Y7507</li> <li>• 49Y7947</li> <li>• 39M5508</li> <li>• 59Y3229</li> <li>• 81Y7508</li> <li>• 81Y7509</li> <li>• 81Y7461</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USB Modem</li> <li>• Battery, 3.0 volt</li> <li>• PCI riser card</li> <li>• Cable, front USB and operator information panel</li> <li>• Cable, backplate, 3.5-inch simple-swap, SATA (2 cables)</li> <li>• Bracket, EAR</li> <li>• Misc Parts Kit</li> <li>• 1U tool-less kit</li> <li>• Service label</li> <li>• Dual Port Ethernet Adapter</li> <li>• Power Cord, 2 meter</li> <li>• Cable, Odd SATA</li> <li>• Label, CRU/FRU</li> <li>• Label, HDD Installation</li> <li>• Cage, HDD</li> </ul>

Figure 269 shows the major components of the x3250 (M4) type 2583, which might differ slightly from your hardware.

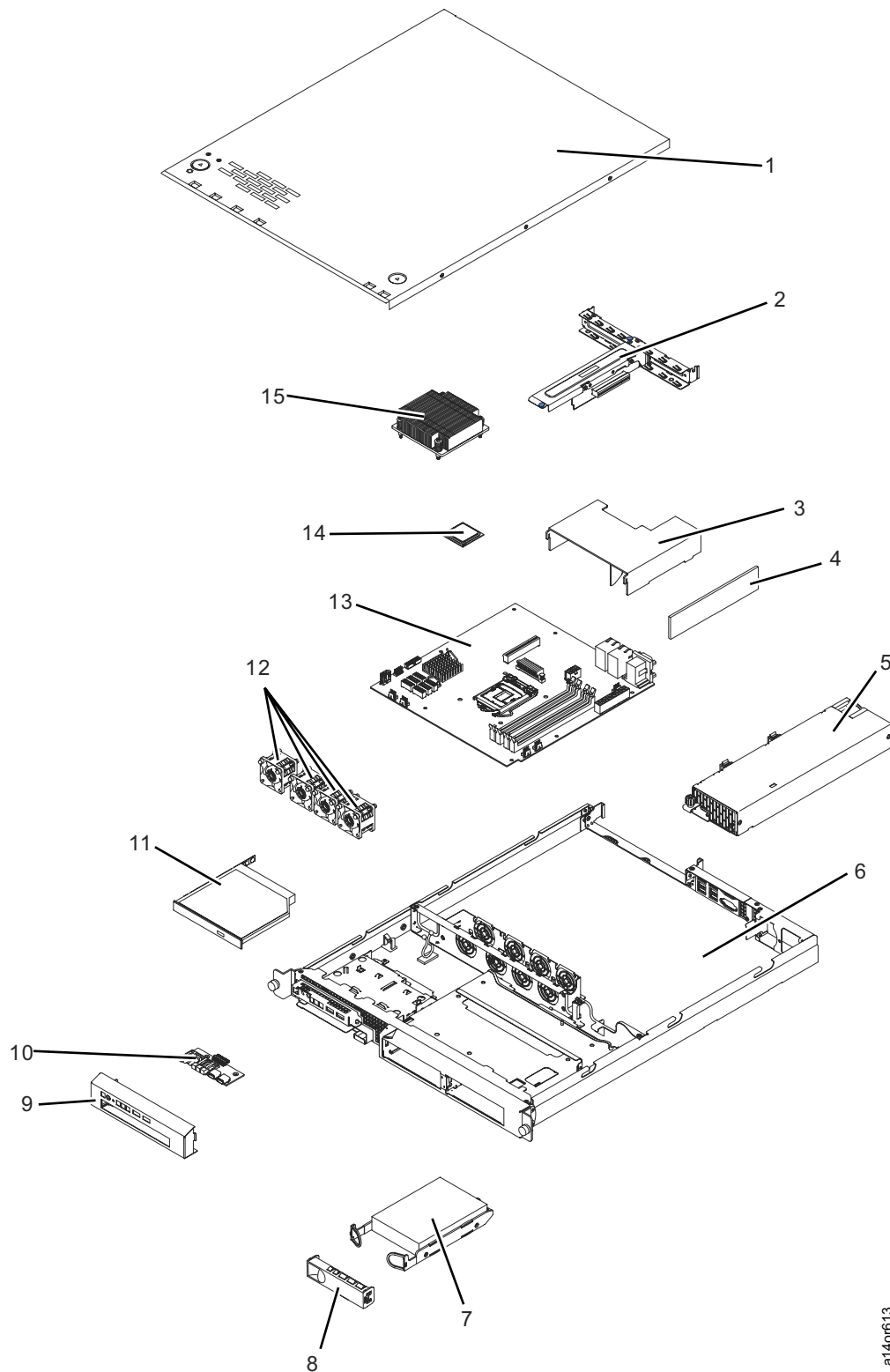


Figure 269. x3250 M4, type 2583 FRUs

## Model x3250 (M3) Type 4252 Model PCJ FRU List

Table 23 lists the part numbers and descriptions of the components of the x3250 (M3) type 4252 model PCJ.

Table 23. Model x3250 M3 FRU list

Ref #	Part Number	Description
<b>1</b>	59Y3223	Top cover (All models)
<b>2</b>	46C6796	PCI-E short riser card (located below sheet metal cover shown in drawing)
	49Y4675	PCI-E long riser card (located below sheet metal cover shown in drawing)
	45D3866	Modem (contained within riser card)
<b>3</b>	46C6798	DIMM air baffle
<b>4</b>	44T1573	Memory, 2 GB dual-rank PC3-10600R-999 DDR3 ECC UDIMM
<b>5</b>	49Y4663	Power supply, 351 Watt, non-redundant
<b>6</b>	59Y3225	Low case assembly
<b>7</b>	39M4511or 39M4529	250 GB Hard Disk Drive <b>Note:</b> Order this part number if your server currently has a 250 GB Hard Disk Drive.
<b>7</b>	39M4517	500 GB Hard Disk Drive <b>Note:</b> Order this part number if your server currently has a 500 GB Hard Disk Drive.
<b>8</b>	39M4343	DASD filler
<b>9</b>	59Y3220	Front bezel
<b>10</b>	44W3256	CD-RW/DVD-RW drive
<b>11</b>	46C6797	Operator information panel assembly
<b>12</b>	59Y3212	System fan
<b>13</b>	81Y6747	System board
<b>14</b>	49Y4645	Microprocessor, Celeron G1101 2.26 GHz, 1066MHz-2MB, 2C (model 22x)
<b>15</b>	59Y3221	Heat sink
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 39M4351</li> <li>• 59Y3229</li> <li>• 59Y3228</li> <li>• 59Y3230</li> <li>• 39M5508</li> <li>• 59Y3226</li> <li>• 59Y3215</li> <li>• 49Y7947</li> <li>• 24P1121</li> <li>• 33F8354</li> <li>• 90Y6074</li> <li>• 39M4374</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rack ear bracket</li> <li>• Cable, SATA optical drive</li> <li>• Cable, front operator panel</li> <li>• Cable, 3.5-inch simple-swap SATA (models 22x, 32x, and C2x)</li> <li>• Power Cord, 2 meter</li> <li>• 3.5" DASD cage</li> <li>• Labels, system service</li> <li>• NetXtreme II 1000 Express Dual Port Ethernet Adapter</li> <li>• 1U tool-less kit</li> <li>• Battery, 3.0 volt</li> <li>• Misc Parts Kit (screws, brackets, and bezels)</li> <li>• Misc Parts Kit (screws, baffle, bezels, spring, key)</li> </ul>

Figure 270 shows the major components of the x3250 (M3) type 4252 model PCJ, which might differ slightly from your hardware.

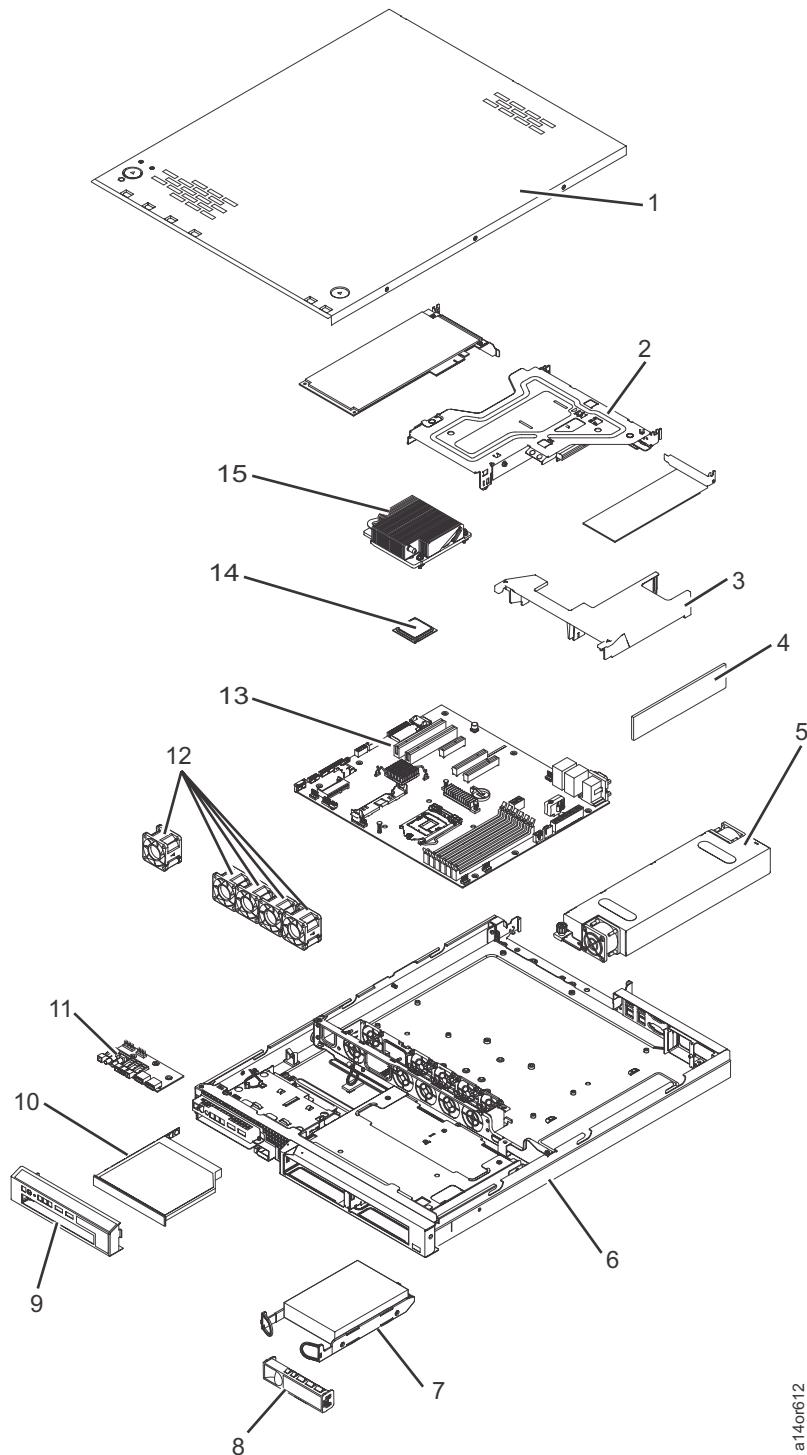


Figure 270. x3250 M3, 4252 Model PCJ FRUs

---

## Model x3550 (M2) Type 7946 FRU List

Table 24 lists the part numbers and descriptions of the components of the x3550 M2 type 7946.

*Table 24. Model x3550 M2 FRU list*

Ref #	Part Number	Description
<b>1</b>	43V7066	PCI Express riser card, x16, assembly
<b>2</b>	49Y1443	Memory, 2 GB DDR3
<b>3</b>	39Y7201	Power supply 675W
<b>4</b>	44W3255	CD-RW/DVD drive
<b>5</b>	44E4372	Operator information panel assembly
<b>6</b>	43W7538	Hard disk drive, 2.5-inch, hot-swap 146GB 10K
<b>7</b>	43V6929	Fan, hot-swap 40 mm
<b>8</b>	69Y4507	System board
<b>11</b>	44E5177	3637 Dual-Core Intel Nehalem-EP Processor 1.86GHz/4MB 80W
	33F8354	Battery, 3.0V
	43V6914	Cable, SATA DVD
	43V6920	Cable, USB/video
	43V6922	Cable, SAS signal, 200 mm
	49Y4850	Cable, SAS signal, 300 mm
	43V6922	Cable, SAS signal, 120 mm
	43V7023	Cable, 70 mm
	43V7023	Cable, hard disk drive configuration
	46C4148	Cable, SAS backplane power
	46C4139	Cable, OP Panel
	39M5508	Power Cord, 2 meter
	45D3866	Modem, Internal (FC 2733)

Table 24. Model x3550 M2 FRU list (continued)

Ref #	Part Number	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 39Y6127</li> <li>• 43V6938</li> <li>• 43V6939</li> <li>• 69Y4509</li> <li>• 43V6931</li> <li>• 43V6933</li> <li>• 43V7067</li> <li>• 43V7071</li> <li>• 69Y4507</li> <li>• 44T2248</li> <li>• 46C6799</li> <li>• 46C6977</li> <li>• 49Y4812</li> <li>• 49Y4813</li> <li>• 69Y4506</li> <li>• 49Y4815</li> <li>• 69Y5085</li> <li>• 49Y4821</li> <li>• 49Y4817</li> <li>• 49Y4818</li> <li>• 49Y4820</li> <li>• 49Y4822</li> <li>• 49Y4823</li> <li>• 49Y4852</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ethernet Adapter, 1 GB dual-ported PCI</li> <li>• Rear I/O Bracket</li> <li>• Bracket, riser card: low profile</li> <li>• Ethernet daughter card, 2 port 1 GB</li> <li>• Air baffle kit</li> <li>• Top cover</li> <li>• SAS riser card</li> <li>• Backplane, SAS HDD</li> <li>• System board</li> <li>• Filler, HS HDD</li> <li>• Label Kit</li> <li>• Labels, system service</li> <li>• Label, chassis</li> <li>• Chassis asm</li> <li>• Miscellaneous parts kit</li> <li>• Rack latch kit</li> <li>• Slide Rail Kit</li> <li>• Power supply bay filler</li> <li>• Cable management arm</li> <li>• Bezel, front</li> <li>• Heatsink</li> <li>• CPU retention module</li> <li>• Cover, Safety 240VA</li> <li>• SAS Card Retention</li> </ul>



Figure 271 shows the major components of the x3550 M2 type 7946, which might differ slightly from your hardware.

**Note:** Additional FRUs and locations are shown on the inside of the top cover.

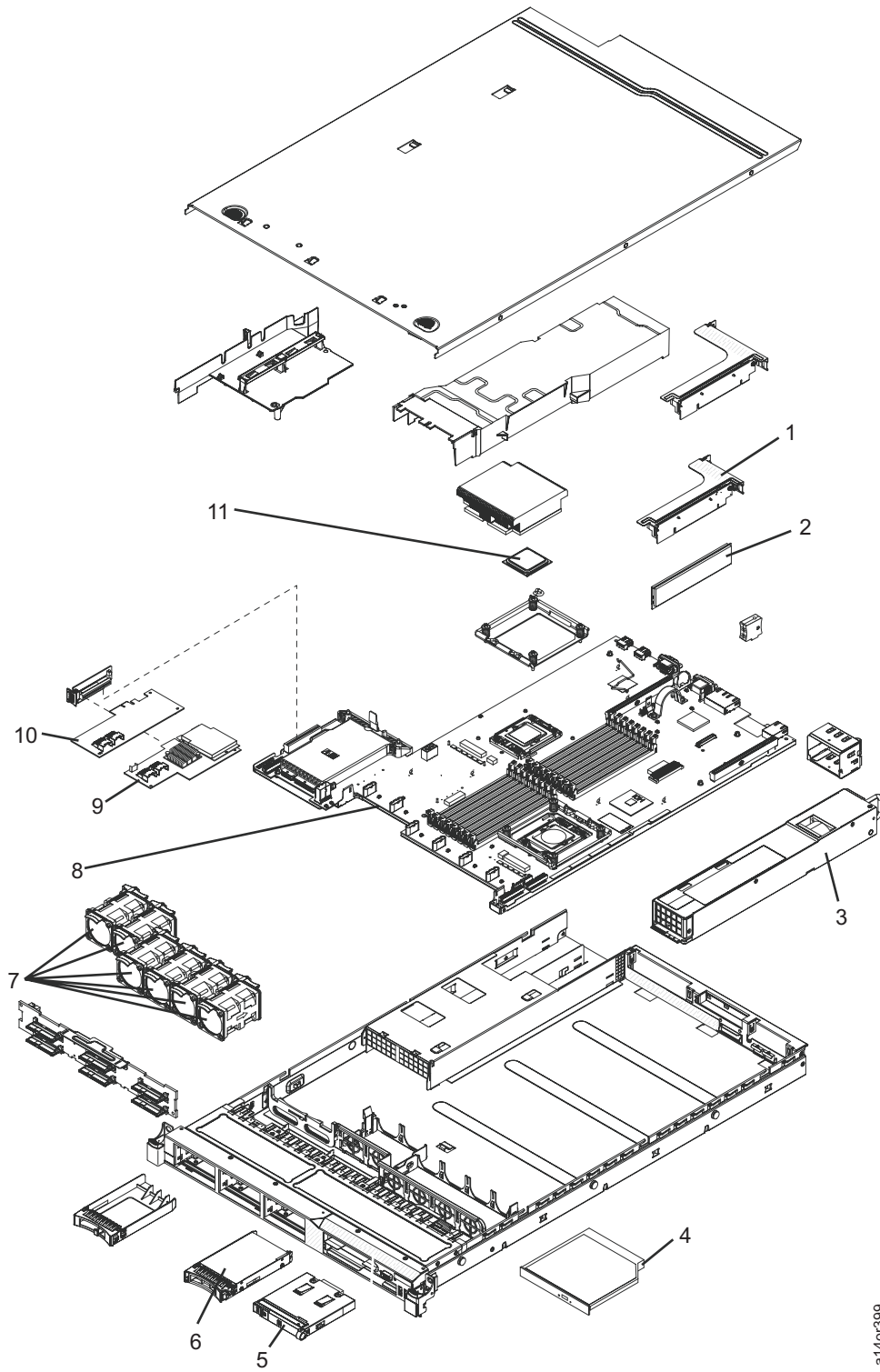


Figure 271. Model x3550 M2 type 7946 FRUs

---

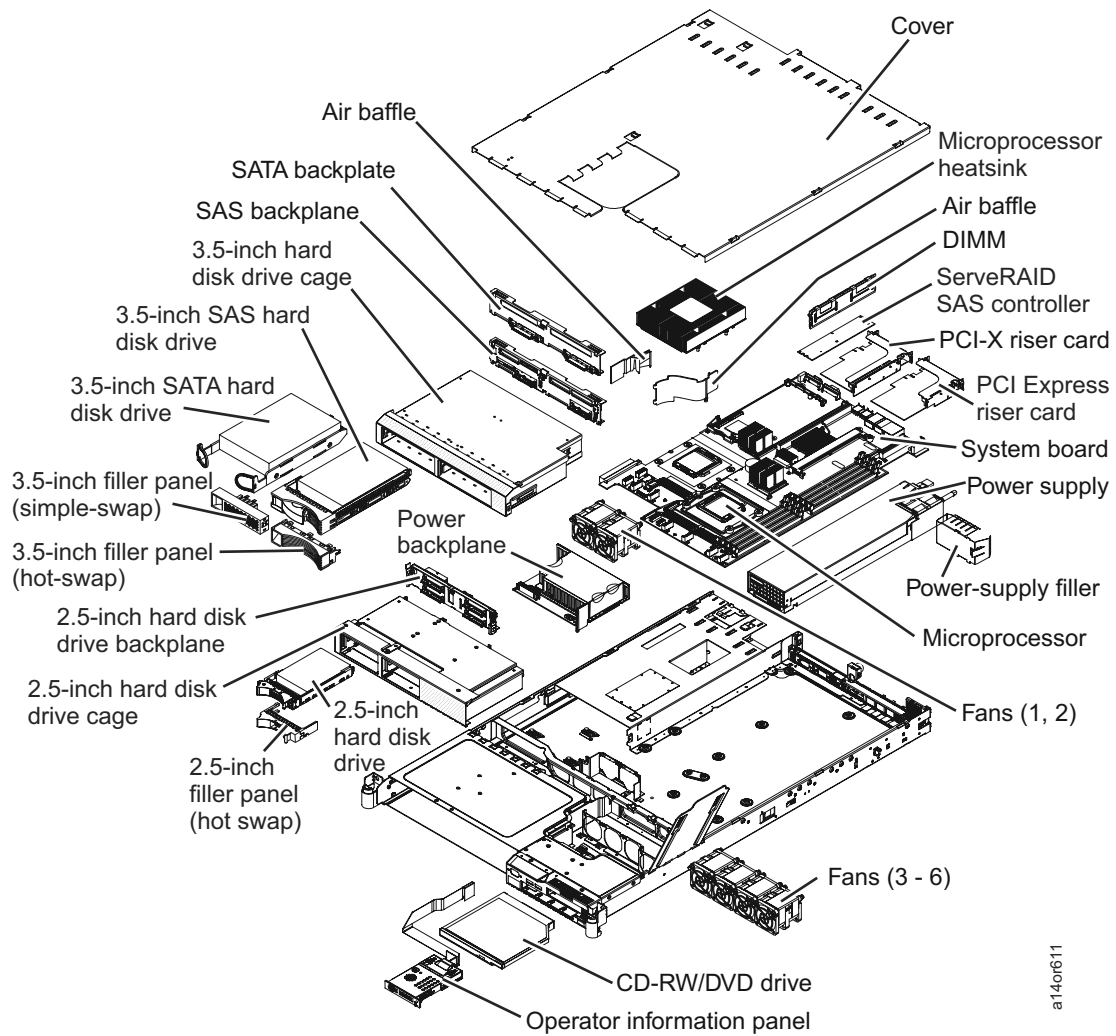
## Model x3550 (type 7978) FRU List

Table 25 lists the part numbers and descriptions of the components of the x3550 type 7978.

*Table 25. Model x3550 (type 7978) FRU list*

Part Number	Description
00Y5627	FC Adapter
10N8499	Internal Modem
25R8864	SATA Tray
26K8058	Cable, front panel USB
26K8060	Power cable, SATA, with backplate (46x, G6x)
26K8080	Miscellaneous parts kit
26K8083	Fan assembly unit (dual-fans)
32R2820	Service label, 3.5-inch SATA (models 46x, G6x)
32R2823	Simple-swap SATA disk drive cage, 3.5-inch
32R2883	PCI Express riser card
33F8354	Battery, 3.0 volt
39M5377	Power cable, rack – 2.8M
39M5781	Memory, 512 MB PC2-5300 ECC
39Y7189	AC Power supply, 670 W
39Y9418	Service label, right fan door
39Y9420	Air baffles
39Y9423	Heat sink assembly
39Y9507	Media bezel assembly, with front video cable
39Y9510	Slide kit
39Y9522	Chassis assembly
39Y9530	Cable management arm assembly, 1U
39Y9545	PCI-X riser card
41Y9292	Thermal grease kit
42C3983	CD-RW/DVD drive interposer card
42C4231	Microprocessor, 1.6 GHz with heat sink
43V4869	Service label, CRU/FRU
43V7057	Power backplane
43W0609	Top cover assembly
43W0625	Operator information panel assembly
43W4585	DVD-ROM Slim Combo
60Y0861	SATA Planar

Figure 272 shows the major components of the x3550 type 7978, which might differ slightly from your hardware.



a14or611

Figure 272. Model x3550 (type 7978) FRUs

## Model x3200 FRU List

Table 26 lists the part numbers and descriptions of the components of the model x3200.

Table 26. Model x3200 FRU list

Part Number	Description
13N2413	Panel mount cable assembly, SATA
13N2450	CD/DVD-ROM bezel kit
13N2466	Cable, IDE signal
13N2985	Feet
13N2993	Retention bracket, PCI
13N2997	EMC shield kit
25R8829	System fan, rear
25R8836	Side cover with lock
25R8842	Hard disk drive backplate
25R8843	EMC I/O shield
25R8859	Access panel
25R8864	Tray
25R8873	Retention module (for fan sink)
26K7340	Front USB connector assembly (cable)
39M4503	Hard disk drive, SATA, 80 GB, fixed/simple-swap, with tray
39R9369	Kit, Retainer (for optical and diskette drives)
39Y7297	401W Power Supply
39Y9773	Miscellaneous hardware kit
39Y9783	C2 switch
39Y9860	Hard disk drive duct assembly (for part number 42C8910)
39Y9875	Mouse, optical, 2-button
41Y2725	Memory, 512 MB 533/667 MHz PC2-4200/5300 ECC
41Y3903	Hot-swap drive label
42C0060	Keyboard, US
42C1053	Cable, serial port 2
42C1279	SAS/SATA controller
42C1458	Microprocessor, 3.4 GHz
42C7507	Hard disk drive duct assembly
42C7509	PSU adapter bracket
42C8910	Hard disk drive cage, 3.5 in. drives
42C8912	Bezel, upper
42C8913	Bezel, lower
42C8916	Chassis assembly
43W0417	System service label
43W4575	Half High COMBO
43W4982	Planer Motherboard
43W4986	System board I/O shield

Table 26. Model x3200 FRU list (continued)

Part Number	Description
46M6608	Fan Heat Sink
73P5109	PRO/1000 Adapter

Figure 273 shows the major components of the model x3200, which might differ slightly from your hardware.

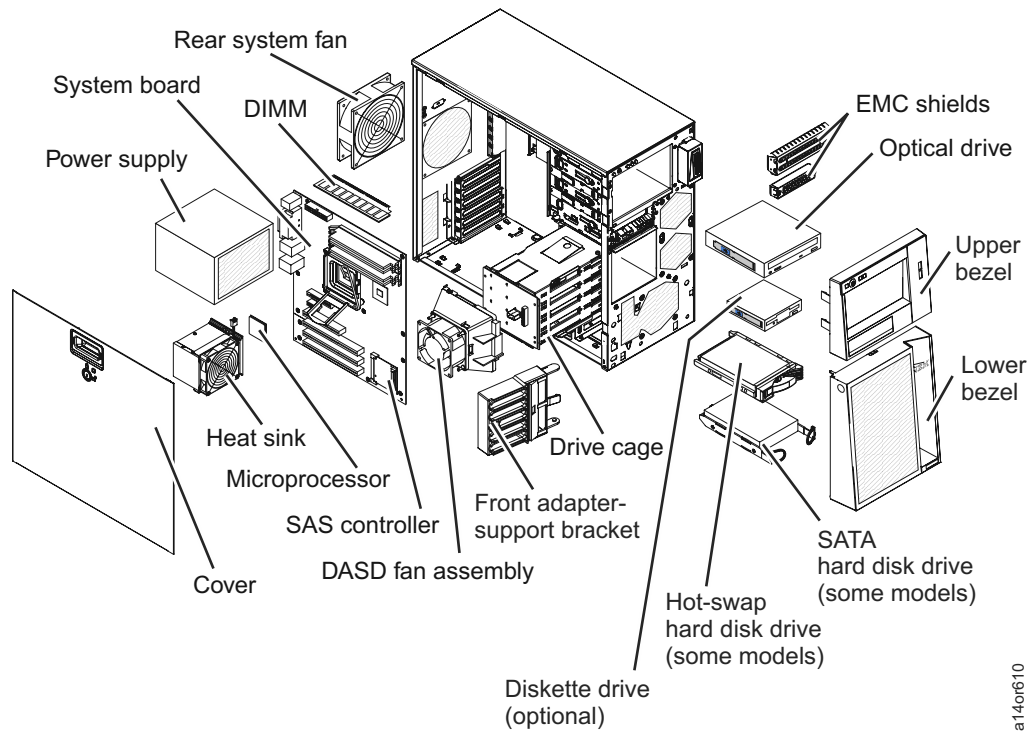


Figure 273. Model x3200 FRUs

---

## Model 306m FRU List

Table 27 lists the part numbers and descriptions of the components of the model 306m.

*Table 27. Model 306m FRU list*

Part Number	Description
10N8499	Internal Modem
24P1121	Kit, 1U, toolless
25R8864	SATA Tray
26K5427	CD/DVD drive, 24X
30R5151	Memory, 512 MB PC4200 ECC
39M3541	CD-RW/DVD drive, 24X
39M4322	Fan (40 mm)
39M4338	PCI-X riser card
39M4343	Simple-swap filler panel (SATA only)
39M4347	SATA simple-swap hard disk drive back panel
39M4348	System service label
39M4350	Operator information panel assembly
39M4354	CD/DVD interposer board
39M4355	Front Bezel
39M4356	Heat-sink assembly
39M4359	Top-Cover
39M4360	Heat-sink assembly
39M4363	Heat-sink assembly
39M4374	Misc Parts Kit
39M4503	Hard disk drive, 80 GB, SS SATA
39M5081	Power Cord 2.8M
39M6266	Cable, operator information panel
39M6267	Cable, IDE, for CD/DVD interposer card
39M6276	Cable, SATA (simple-swap)
39M6289	Microprocessor, 3.2 GHz 2M
39M6296	Air baffle
39M6449	CRU/FRU Label
39Y6081	Card, NetXtreme1Ktxg
39Y6095	Card, NetXtreme1Ktxg
39Y7295	Power Supply, 350W
39Y9888	Label, hard disk drive caution
42C8945	Cable, SATA (hot-swap)
44T2054	Planer Board

Figure 274 shows the major components of the model 306m, which might differ slightly from your hardware.

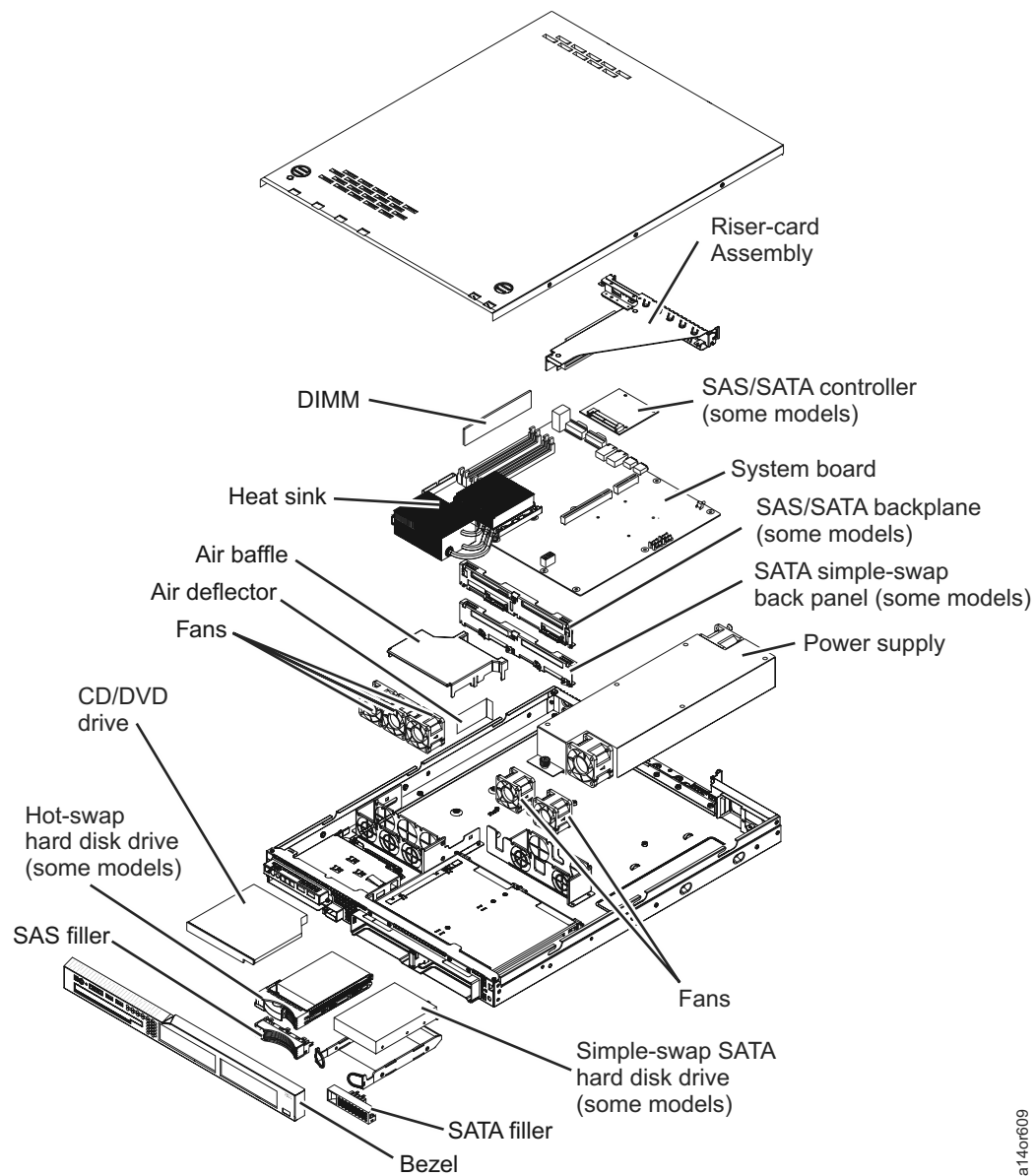


Figure 274. Model 306m FRUs

a14or609

## Model 206m FRU List

Table 28 lists the part numbers and descriptions of the components of the model 206m.

Table 28. Model 206m FRU list

Part Number	Description
13N2413	Cable, panel mount
13N2450	CD/DVD-ROM Bezel kit
13N2466	Cable, IDE signal
13N2985	Foot
13N2993	Front adapter-retention bracket
13N2997	EMC shield kit
25R8822	Bezel, lower
25R8829	System fan, rear
25R8834	Chassis assembly, non-redundant power supply
25R8835	Bezel, upper
25R8836	Cover, side
25R8838	Hard disk drive cage
25R8841	System service label
25R8842	Backplate, simple-swap
25R8843	EMC I/O shield
25R8857	Bezel, diskette drive
25R8859	Panel, access
25R8864	Tray
25R8866	Front-panel assembly
25R8873	Retention module, fan sink
26K6096	Front USB connector assembly
30R5151	Memory, 512 MB 533/667 MHz PC2-4200 ECC
33P3343	Diskette drive
39M4473	Microprocessor, 800/3.2 GHz – 2 MB
39M4503	Hard disk drive, SATA, 80 GB, fixed/simple-swap, with tray
39R9369	Retainer, device
39Y7297	Power Supply 401W
39Y7321	Power Supply 401W
39Y7330	Power Supply 401W
39Y9728	FDD Cable
39Y9773	Mic Hardware
41Y3903	Hot-swap drive label
42C0953	CD-RW drive, 48x
43W4575	DVD Half High COMBO
43X1420	Software Pack
44E7983	Microsoft Windows 2003
44R5488	Jaguar Planar



Table 28. Model 206m FRU list (continued)

Part Number	Description
46M6608	Heat Sink
73P5109	Adapter, PRO/1000 GT DP

Figure 275 shows the major components of the model 206m, which might differ slightly from your hardware.

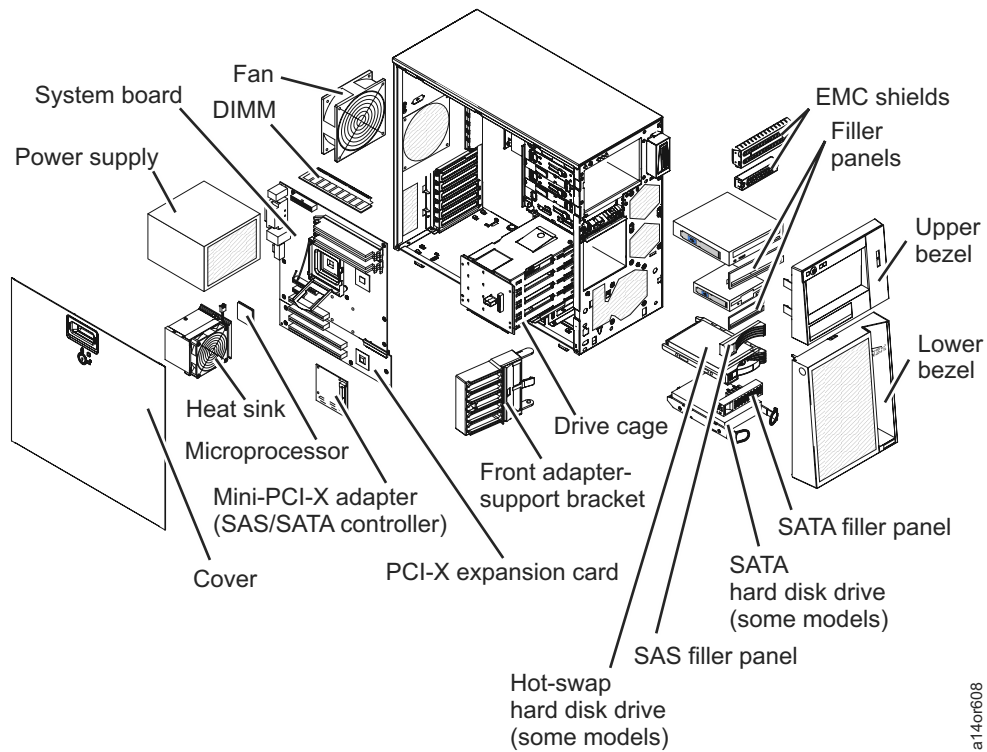


Figure 275. Model 206m FRUs



---

## Accessibility

The publications for this product are in Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF) and should be compliant with accessibility standards. If you experience difficulties when you use the PDF files and want to request a Web-based format for a publication, send a request by email to [starpubs@us.ibm.com](mailto:starpubs@us.ibm.com).

In the request, be sure to include the publication number and title.

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

### **IBM and accessibility**

See the IBM Human Ability and Accessibility Center at <http://www.ibm.com/able> for more information about the commitment that IBM has to accessibility:



---

## Notices

The information provided by this media supports the products and services described with consideration for the conditions described herein.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries to:

*IBM Director of Licensing  
IBM Corporation  
North Castle Drive  
Armonk, NY 10504-1785  
U.S.A.*

For license inquiries regarding double-byte character set (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

*Intellectual Property Licensing  
Legal and Intellectual Property Law  
IBM Japan, Ltd.  
19-21, Nihonbashi-Hakozakicho, Chuo-ku  
Tokyo 103-8510, Japan*

**The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:** INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurement may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

All statements regarding IBM's future direction or intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice, and represent goals and objectives only.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.

---

## Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and [ibm.com](http://www.ibm.com)<sup>®</sup> are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM or other companies. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Copyright and trademark information website([www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml](http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml)).

The following terms are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

- AIX
- Enterprise Storage Server
- ESCON
- FICON
- IBM
- RETAIN
- S/390
- System Storage
- TS3000
- TotalStorage
- TotalStorage Master Console
- Virtual Tape Controller
- Virtual Tape Server
- xSeries

Adobe, the Adobe logo, PostScript, and the PostScript logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States, and/or other countries.

Intel, Intel logo, Intel Inside, Intel Inside logo, Intel Centrino, Intel Centrino logo, Celeron, Intel Xeon, Intel SpeedStep, Itanium, and Pentium are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Linear Tape-Open, LTO, the LTO Logo, Ultrium, and the Ultrium logo are trademarks of HP, IBM Corp. and Quantum in the U.S. and other countries.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

---

## Homologation statement

This product may not be certified in your country for connection by any means whatsoever to interfaces of public telecommunications networks. Further certification may be required by law prior to making any such connection. Contact an IBM representative or reseller for any questions.

---

## Electronic emission notices

This section contains the electronic emission notices or statements for the United States and other countries.

## Federal Communications Commission Statement

This explains the Federal Communications Commission's (FCC's) statement.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, might cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used in order to meet FCC emission limits. IBM is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables and connectors, or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device might not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that might cause undesired operation.

## Industry Canada Compliance Statement

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

## Australia and New Zealand Class A Statement

**Attention:** This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product might cause radio interference in which case the user might be required to take adequate measures.

## European Union Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of European Union (EU) Council Directive 2004/108/EC on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility. IBM cannot accept responsibility for any failure to satisfy the protection requirements resulting from a non-recommended modification of the product, including the fitting of non-IBM option cards.

**Attention:** This is an EN 55022 Class A product. In a domestic environment this product might cause radio interference in which case the user might be required to take adequate measures.

Responsible Manufacturer:

International Business Machines Corp.  
New Orchard Road  
Armonk, New York 10504  
914-499-1900

European community contact:

IBM Deutschland GmbH  
Technical Regulations, Department M372  
IBM-Allee 1, 71139 Ehningen, Germany  
Tele: +49 7032 15-2941  
Email: lugi@de.ibm.com

## Germany Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive

**Deutschsprachiger EU Hinweis: Hinweis für Geräte der Klasse A EU-Richtlinie zur Elektromagnetischen Verträglichkeit**

Dieses Produkt entspricht den Schutzanforderungen der EU-Richtlinie 2004/108/EG zur Angleichung der Rechtsvorschriften über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit in den EU-Mitgliedsstaaten und hält die Grenzwerte der EN 55022 Klasse A ein.

Um dieses sicherzustellen, sind die Geräte wie in den Handbüchern beschrieben zu installieren und zu betreiben. Des Weiteren dürfen auch nur von der IBM empfohlene Kabel angeschlossen werden. IBM übernimmt keine Verantwortung für die Einhaltung der Schutzanforderungen, wenn das Produkt ohne Zustimmung der IBM verändert bzw. wenn Erweiterungskomponenten von Fremdherstellern ohne Empfehlung der IBM gesteckt/eingebaut werden.

EN 55022 Klasse A Geräte müssen mit folgendem Warnhinweis versehen werden:

“Warnung: Dieses ist eine Einrichtung der Klasse A. Diese Einrichtung kann im Wohnbereich Funk-Störungen verursachen; in diesem Fall kann vom Betreiber verlangt werden, angemessene Maßnahmen zu ergreifen und dafür aufzukommen.”

### Deutschland: Einhaltung des Gesetzes über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten

Dieses Produkt entspricht dem “Gesetz über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten (EMVG).” Dies ist die Umsetzung der EU-Richtlinie 2004/108/EG in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland.



**Zulassungsbescheinigung laut dem Deutschen Gesetz über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten (EMVG) (bzw. der EMC EG Richtlinie 2004/108/EG) für Geräte der Klasse A**

Dieses Gerät ist berechtigt, in übereinstimmung mit dem Deutschen EMVG das EG-Konformitätszeichen - CE - zu führen.

Verantwortlich für die Einhaltung der EMV Vorschriften ist der Hersteller:

International Business Machines Corp.  
New Orchard Road  
Armonk, New York 10504  
Tel: 914-499-1900

Der verantwortliche Ansprechpartner des Herstellers in der EU ist:

IBM Deutschland GmbH  
Technical Regulations, Abteilung M372  
IBM-Allee 1, 71139 Ehningen, Germany  
Tele: +49 7032 15-2941  
Email: lugi@de.ibm.com

**Generelle Informationen:**

Das Gerät erfüllt die Schutzanforderungen nach EN 55024 und EN 55022 Klasse A.

**People's Republic of China Class A Statement**

**中华人民共和国“A类”警告声明**

**声 明**

此为A级产品，在生活环境中，该产品可能会造成无线电干扰。在这种情况下，可能需要用户对其干扰采取切实可行的措施。

**Taiwan Class A Statement**

**警告使用者：**  
這是甲類的資訊產品，在  
居住的環境中使用時，可  
能會造成射頻干擾，在這  
種情況下，使用者會被要  
求採取某些適當的對策。

taiemi

**Taiwan Contact Information**

This topic contains the product service contact information for Taiwan.

IBM Taiwan Product Service Contact Information:  
IBM Taiwan Corporation  
3F, No 7, Song Ren Rd., Taipei Taiwan  
Tel: 0800-016-888

台灣IBM 產品服務聯絡方式：  
台灣國際商業機器股份有限公司  
台北市松仁路7號3樓  
電話：0800-016-888

f2c00790

## Japan Voluntary Control Council for Interference Class A Statement

This explains the Japan Voluntary Control Council for Interference (VCCI) statement.

この装置は、クラス A 情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用する  
と電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策  
を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。 VCCI-A

## Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association Statement

This explains the Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association (JEITA) statement for less than or equal to 20 A per phase.

高調波ガイドライン適合品

jeita1

This explains the JEITA statement for greater than 20 A per phase.

高調波ガイドライン準用品

jeita2

## Korean Communications Commission Class A Statement

This explains the Korean Communications Commission (KCC) statement.

이 기기는 업무용(A급)으로 전자파적합기기로서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기  
바라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목  
적으로 합니다.

## Russia Electromagnetic Interference Class A Statement

This statement explains the Russia Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) statement.

**ВНИМАНИЕ!** Настоящее изделие относится к классу А.  
В жилых помещениях оно может создавать  
радиопомехи, для снижения которых необходимы  
дополнительные меры

rusemi



---

## Glossary

This glossary defines the special terms, abbreviations, and acronyms used in this publication and other related publications.

This glossary defines the special terms, abbreviations, and acronyms used in this publication and other related publications. If you do not find the term you are looking for, see the *IBM Glossary of Computing Terms* located at the following website: <http://www.ibm.com/ibm/terminology>.

### A

**AIX, advanced interactive executive**

IBM's implementation of the UNIX operating system. The RS/6000 system, among others, runs the AIX operating system.

**AOTM**

Autonomic Ownership Takeover Manager

**ATL** Automated Tape Library

**attention (notice)**

A word for calling attention to the possibility of danger to a program, device, or system, or to data. Contrast with *caution* and *danger*

**authentication**

The process of recognizing a user through a valid combination of User ID and password.

**local authentication**

Each machine maintains an internal database of User IDs, with corresponding passwords and roles.

**Storage Authentication Service policy authentication**

A Role-Based Access Control method of authentication that uses LDAP to create a central repository for storage and management of User IDs, passwords, and roles.

### B

**baud** A unit of signaling speed equal to the number of discrete conditions or signal events per second. In asynchronous transmission, the unit of modulation rate corresponding to one unit interval per second; that is, if the duration of that unit interval is 20 milliseconds, the modulation rate is 50 baud. Also see *baud rate*.

**baud rate**

In remote communications, the transmission rate that is synonymous with signal events. The baud rate, or signal change rate, is usually expressed in bits per second. Stated another way, the baud rate is a measure of how many times per second a signal changes or could change.

**BIOS, Basic Input/Output System**

The code that controls basic hardware operations, such as interactions with diskette drives, hard disk drives, and the keyboard.

### C

**Call Home**

A communication link established between a product and a service provider. The product can use this link to place a call to IBM or to another service provider when it requires service. With access to the machine, service personnel can perform service tasks, such as viewing error and problem logs or initiating trace and dump retrievals.

**caution (notice)**

A word to call attention to possible personal harm to people. Contrast with *attention* and *danger*

**CD-ROM, compact-disc read-only memory**

High-capacity read-only memory in the form of an optically read compact disc.

**CE, customer engineer**

Synonymous with field engineer and service representative.

**CLI, command line interface**

A type of computer interface in which the input command is a string of text characters.

**cluster**

A group of computers and other resources that operate together as a single system.

**cluster family**

A group of clusters all configured with the same family value in vital product data (VPD).

**concurrent**

Refers to diagnostic, maintenance, or replacement procedures that can be performed on a system without interrupting customer applications

**controller**

A device that coordinates and controls the operation of one or more input/output devices (such as workstations) and synchronizes the operation of such devices with the operation of the system as a whole.

**control unit**

A device that provides the interface between a system and one or more tape drives.

Synonymous with controller

**D**

**danger (notice)**

A word to call attention to possible lethal harm to people. Contrast with *attention* and *caution*.

**data** Any representations such as characters or analog quantities to which meaning is or might be assigned.

**E**

**EBTERM**

Terminal emulator for OS/2

**ELC** Enterprise Library Controller

**error log**

A data set or file in a product or system where error information is stored for later access.

**error log**

A data set or file in a product or system where error information is stored for later access.

**F**

**FBM** Field Bill of Material

**FC, feature code**

A feature code is a method IBM uses to announce that a single use functional update to the microcode of an installed controller is available. New microcode levels might be required when adding new functions.

**FC, Fibre Channel**

A serial data transfer architecture developed by a consortium of computer and mass storage device manufacturers, and standardized by American National Standards Institute (ANSI).

**FCC** Federal Communications Commission

**FE, field engineer**

Synonymous with customer engineer or service representative

**file** A named set of records stored or processed as a unit. Also referred to as a data set.

**file system**

A collection of files and certain attributes associated with those files.

In the hierarchical file system, the underlying system support that manages I/O operations to files and controls the format of information on the storage media. A file system allows applications to create and manage files on storage devices and to perform I/O operations to those files.

The collection of files and file management structures on a physical or logical mass storage device, such as a diskette or minidisc.

**FRU, field replaceable unit**

An assembly that is replaced in its entirety when any one of its components fails.

**FTP** File transfer protocol

**G****GUI, graphical user interface**

A type of computer interface that presents a visual metaphor of a real-world scene, often of a desktop, by combining high-resolution graphics, pointing devices, menu bars and other menus, overlapping windows, icons and the object-action relationship.

**grid** A series of clusters connected to one another by means of TCP/IP to form a disaster recovery solution where logical volume attributes and data are replicated across the clusters to ensure the continuation of production work

**grid network**

The TCP/IP infrastructure connecting a grid

**H**

**Host** A single host from a host group that represents a computer attached to the disk subsystem.

**I**

**ID** Identification

Identifier

**identifier (ID)**

In programming languages, a lexical unit that names a language object; for example, the names of variables, arrays, records, labels, or procedures. An identifier usually consists of a letter optionally followed by letters, digits, or other characters.

One or more characters used to identify or name a data element and possibly to indicate certain properties of that data element

A sequence of bits or characters that identifies a program, device, or system to another program, device, or system

**IMC, integrated management console**

With the TS4500 tape library, a built-in platform for tools that are used to manage the library.

**interface**

A shared boundary. Examples include a hardware component to link two devices or a portion of storage or registers accessed by two or more computer programs.

**intervention required**

Manual action is needed.

**I/O, input/output**

Data provided to the computer or data resulting from computer processing.

**IOA, input/output adapter**

A functional unit or a part of an I/O controller that connects devices to an I/O processor.

For devices, the electrical circuits on a logic card that connect one device to another.

**IOP, input/output processor**

A functional unit or the part of an I/O controller that processes programmed instructions and controls one or more input/output devices or adapters.

**IP, Internet Protocol**

A protocol that routes data through a network or interconnected networks. This protocol acts as an intermediary between the higher protocol layers and the physical network.

**IPL, initial program load**

The process that loads the system programs from the system auxiliary storage, checks the system hardware, and prepares the system for user operations.

**L****LAN, local area network**

A computer network within a limited area.

**LDAP, Lightweight Directory Access Protocol**

A standard protocol for authenticating users and authorizing access to resources, typically used to grant access levels to directories on disk.

**LED** Light emitting diode

**LM** Library manager

**M****MB, megabyte**

For processor storage, real and virtual storage, and channel volume, 2 to the 20th power or 1 048 576 bytes. For disk storage capacity and communications volume, 1 000 000 bytes.

**Mbps** Megabits per second

**MES, miscellaneous equipment specification**

An equipment installation or upgrade that is performed on site by an IBM Service Representative.

**microcode**

One or more microinstructions.

A code, representing the instructions of an instruction set, implemented in a part of storage that is not program-addressable.

To design, write, and test one or more microinstructions.

See also *microprogram*.



**mm, millimeter**

One thousandth of a meter; 0.04 inch.

**MRPD**

machine reportable product data

## N

**N/A** not applicable

**NetTerm**

NetTerm is a configurable terminal emulator designed for Internet and intranet connections.

**NTP, Network Time Protocol**

A protocol that synchronizes the clocks of computers in a network.

**NVRAM, non-volatile random-access memory**

Random access memory (storage) that retains its contents after the electrical power to the machine is shut off. A specific part of NVRAM is set aside for use by the system read-only storage for the boot device list.

**NVS, non-volatile storage**

A storage device whose contents are not lost when power is cut off.

## O

**offline**

Pertaining to the operation of a functional unit that is not attached to a controlling device such as a mainframe or a control unit. Contrast with *online*.

**online** Pertaining to the operation of a functional unit that is attached to a controlling device such as a mainframe or a control unit. Contrast with *offline*.

## P

**PCI, Peripheral Component Interconnect**

A local bus for personal computers that provides a high-speed data path between the processor and attached devices.

**PDF, Portable Document Format**

A standard specified by Adobe Systems, Incorporated, for the electronic distribution of documents. PDF files are compact; can be distributed globally via e-mail, the Web, intranets, or CD-ROM; and can be viewed with the Acrobat Reader.

**PE** Product Engineering

**port** A physical connection for communication between systems or components.

**PMR, problem management record**

A PMR number is assigned by *RETAIN*. This number is returned to the system console when a problem is successfully opened in *RETAIN*. In conjunction with a Branch Office number, this uniquely identifies a problem event for tracking through the *RETAIN* process

## R

**RAM, random access memory**

A memory system to which data is entered and from which data is retrieved in a non-sequential manner.

**RAS, reliability, availability, and serviceability**

A combination of design methodologies, system policies, and intrinsic capabilities that, taken together, balance improved hardware availability with the costs required to achieve it. Reliability is the degree to which the hardware remains free of faults. Availability is the

ability of the system to continue operating despite predicted or experienced faults. Serviceability is how efficiently and nondisruptively broken hardware can be fixed.

#### **RETAIN**

IBM Remote Technical Assistance Information Network

IBM Employees use this online system to help resolve customer problems with IBM products. The system contains records about reported problems and the solutions (or fixes) that are developed for those problems. RETAIN also holds records of the hardware and software owned by each IBM customer.

**RMSS** Removable Media Storage Solutions sector of IBM

#### **RSA, Remote Supervisor Adapter**

An IBM service processor that is built into some System x servers and available as an optional adapter for use with others. When used as a gateway service processor, the RSA can communicate with all service processors on the Advanced System Management (ASM) interconnect.

### **S**

#### **SAS, serial-attached SCSI**

A data-transfer technology that moves data to and from computer storage devices. Serial-attached SCSI uses a point-to-point serial protocol, which replaces the traditional, parallel SCSI bus technology.

#### **SATA, Serial Advanced Technology Attachment.**

A standard for connecting storage devices such as hard drives and CD-ROM drives to computer systems that is based on serial signaling technology.

**SBC** system controller board

#### **SCSI, Small Computer System Interface**

An ANSI-standard electronic interface that allows personal computers to communicate with peripheral hardware, such as disk drives, tape drives, CD-ROM drives, printers, and scanners faster and more flexibly than previous interfaces.

#### **SIM, service information message**

A message, generated by a storage subsystem, that is the result of error event location and analysis. A SIM indicates that some service action is required.

#### **SMIT, System Management Interface Tool**

An interface tool of the AIX operating system for installing, maintaining, configuring, and diagnosing tasks.

#### **SNMP, Simple Network Management Protocol**

SNMP is used to monitor network-attached devices.

#### **SR, service representative**

Synonymous with *field engineer* and *customer engineer*.

#### **subsystem**

A secondary or subordinate system, usually capable of operating independently of, or asynchronously with, a controlling system

### **T**

#### **tape controller**

A device that provides the interface between a system and one or more tape drives. Synonymous with *control unit*

#### **TCP/IP, Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol**

With regard to a tape library, the protocol used for the LAN communication path between the mainframe and the Library Manager

**TSMC, TotalStorage Master Console**

Original name of the TS3000 System Console (TSSC)

**TSSC** TS3000 System Console

**U**

**USB, Universal Serial Bus**

A Plug-and-Play (Intel standard) interface between a computer and add-on devices (such as keyboards and printers). USB allows a user to add a new device to a computer without having to add an adapter card or to turn the computer off.

**UTC** Coordinated Universal Time

**utility** Utility program

**utility program**

A computer program used for general support of the processes of a computer; for instance, a diagnostic program

**V**

**Virtual volume**

Data storage on DDMs that shows the same characteristics to a host application as a physical tape volume and contains data written or read through a virtual tape drive

**VPD, vital product data**

The information contained within a component that requires nonvolatile storage used by functional areas of the component, and information required for manufacturing, RAS, and engineering.

**VTC** Virtual Tape Controller

**VTs** Virtual Tape Server

**W**

**WAN, wide area network**

A network that provides communication services between devices in a geographic area larger than that served by a local area network (LAN) or a metropolitan area network.

**WEEE** European Union's Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment standards directive



---

# Index

## Special characters

(Automated Log Collector), Starting and Stopping 137  
(ECC) Connectivity, Test Electronic Customer 98  
(TSR), Tape System Reporter 195

## Numerics

3494  
    ATL  
        remote data monitoring 105  
        set up (LM) 32  
        test call home notification 100  
        web specialist 35  
3494 publications xiv  
3592-C06 publications xiv  
3592-C07 publications xiv  
3953  
    ATL remote data monitoring 105  
    frame serial number 34  
    modem 15  
    set up 32  
    specialist settings 35  
3953 publications xiv  
3956 CC6  
    creating PE package (also refer to IBM Knowledge Center) 154  
3958  
    enabling SNMP trap forwarding 194  
7133 publications xv

## A

abbreviations 233  
access  
    for customer or CE to specialist 174  
    management interfaces 185  
    remote using NetTerm 124  
    tape drive code for update 174  
    via specialist to  
        system console 174  
        tape drive code update 174  
    via web browser  
        TSSC 178  
accessibility 223  
acronyms 233  
add  
    attached system information 45  
    PE package patch 193  
    PFE exec from web interface 191  
    users to customer group 177  
Adding a 3584 Model SC1 Complex System 49  
Adding a Complex System 47  
administer users 177  
AIX (RS/6000) publications xv  
ALC (Automated Log Collector), Starting and Stopping 137

AOTM  
    setting up 22  
    testing 25  
applying PE package patches 193  
ATL web specialist (3494)  
    tape system setup 32  
    using to change system console settings 35  
authenticate server userid 44  
Authentication Service Users/Groups 77  
autonomic ownership takeover manager  
    setting up 22  
    testing 25

## B

backing up configuration data 90  
battery 201  
baud rate, set for TSSC from  
    remote connection 90  
    TSSC 88  
BIOS  
    enter 202  
    M93p 202  
    reload corrupted 166  
boot sequence  
    set 202  
broadcast  
    drive code from web interface 121  
    remote code from  
        web interface 113

## C

call home  
    configuring 81  
    notification test for  
        3494 ATL or 3953 Enterprise 100  
        VTS, VTC, A60, J70, and C06 99  
    offload contents to database (for remote users) 152  
    queue management 128  
    record types 129  
    setting up 81  
    test notification for  
        3494 ATL or 3953 Enterprise 100  
        VTS, VTC, A60, and J70 99  
    TS7700 set up 19  
    VTS set up 27  
Call Home Event Log 134  
catalog, parts 205  
CD-ROM  
    drive rebuild 166  
    feature code for drive rebuild 11  
    offloading user files to 131, 135  
    product recovery 166  
CD-ROM, Mount/Unmount USB 199  
CD-ROM, Mount/Unmount USB Remotely 199  
change  
    configuration 43  
    language 174  
    password 177  
    system console settings 35  
code  
    broadcast  
        from web interface 121  
        remote from web interface 113  
        TS7700 microcode 170  
    load 166  
    rebuild 166  
    update drive 174  
    update system console 169  
    update TS7700 microcode 170  
code level V3.0.0 and above  
    access for tape drive code  
        update 174  
    adding attached system information 45  
    backing up configuration data 90  
    call home queue management 128  
    call home record types 129  
    configuration 43  
    configure call home settings 81  
    connect to attached tape system 107  
    console configuration sheet  
        sample 15  
        usable 16  
    console date and time, setting 95  
    console settings 66  
    console status 159  
    electronic customer care 81  
    error or defer matrix updates 178  
    feature codes 7  
    installing system console  
        about 5  
    installing TSSC  
        performing 14  
    introduction 5  
    maintenance starting point quick reference table 3  
    offload  
        user files 135  
        user files to call home database (for remote users) 152  
    procedures 107  
    restoring configuration data 93  
    service tools 107  
    set up for 3494 ATL (LM) 32  
    set up for 3953 Enterprise Library Controller 32  
    set up VTS, VTC, tape controllers 27  
    setting console date and time 95  
    setup for remote data  
        monitoring 101  
    system console code load/hard drive rebuild 166  
    system overview 6  
    tape system service information 109  
    user login 43

- code level V3.1.0
  - control unit tape drive service
    - information files 118
    - view all files 121
- code level V5.3.0 and above
  - remote code broadcast from web
    - interface 113
  - schedule configuration backups 92
- code load status
  - from web interface 116
- code load/hard drive rebuild 166
- code update 165
- code upgrade 165
- comments, sending xvi
- components, system console 6
- components, TSSC 6
- configuration
  - adding attached system
    - information 45
  - backing up configuration data 90
  - call home settings 81
  - console date and time 95
  - data, backing up 90
  - electronic customer care 81
  - interface parameters 39
  - login options
    - authenticated 44
    - non-authenticated 43
  - prerequisites 43
  - restoring configuration data 93
  - router 31
  - schedule backups (code level V5.3.0 and above) 92
  - setting baud rate for TSSC serial port
    - from remote connection 90
    - from TSSC 88
  - settings 37
  - sheet
    - sample 15
    - usable 16
  - test call home notification 99
  - test call home notification for 3494
    - ATL 100
  - user login 43
  - web specialist settings 37
- configuring
  - Assist-on Site Session 147
- Configuring Assist On-Site (AOS) 147
- connect
  - to modem 125
  - to RETAIN 96
- connect to attached tape system 107
- console
  - configuration sheet
    - sample 15
    - usable 16
  - logout 99
  - PE package, creating 154
  - setting date and time 95
  - settings 66
  - specialist (system) 174
  - status 159
  - VPD, display 161
- console code upgrade 165
- console screenshots, how to take 165
- create
  - attached subsystems list 112

- create (*continued*)
  - SSH tunnel 190
  - system console user feedback 191
- custom firewall settings 79
- customer
  - access for tape drive code
    - update 174
  - access to system console
    - specialist 174
  - group, add users to or delete users
    - from 177
    - userid 174
- customer access
  - via web browser 178

## D

- date and time, setting console 95
- defer or error matrix updates 178
- definitions 233
- delete
  - infocenter (CD-ROM) 189
- delete users from the customer
  - group 177
- device drivers publications xv
- disable 3958 SNMP trap forwarding 194
- disk rebuild 167
- disk rebuild and configuration
  - restore 167
- diskette
  - offloading user files to 131, 135
- display
  - console VPD 161
  - tape drive service information 117
  - tape system service information 109
- DO NOT USE - USB port on keyboard 1
- drive
  - code broadcast from web
    - interface 121
  - feature code for rebuilding from
    - CD-ROM 11
  - rebuild from CD-ROM 166
  - service information
    - tape drive 117
    - tape system 109
- DS4000
  - recording the IP and RSA forwarding
    - addresses 90
- DS6000
  - creating PE package (also refer to IBM Knowledge Center) 154
- GUI
  - installing 58
  - launching 181
  - resetting password 181

## E

- ECC (electronic customer care) 81
- electronic customer care (ECC) 81
- Electronic Customer Care (ECC)
  - Connectivity, Test 98
- enable
  - 3958 SNMP trap forwarding 194
  - console heartbeat 83
- environmental notices xii

- error or defer matrix updates 178

## F

- Failed Queue Management 131
- feature code 5
- feature codes 7
- feature codes withdrawn 10
- feedback sending, user 191
- feedback, sending xvi
- field replaceable units 205
  - model 206m 220
  - model 306m 218
  - model M93p 206
  - model x3200 216
  - model x3250 (M3) 4252 209
  - model x3250 (M4) 2583 207
  - model x3550 (M2) 7946 211
  - model x3550 (type 7978) 214
- firewall settings, customize 79
- Fix Acquisition 195
- Fix Acquisition Report 198
- Fix Acquisitions General Settings 198
- floppy diskette
  - offloading user files to 131, 135
- forwarding, enabling 3958 SNMP
  - trap 194
- FRUs 205
  - model 206m 220
  - model 306m 218
  - model M93p 206
  - model x3200 216
  - model x3250 (M3) 4252 209
  - model x3250 (M4) 2583 207
  - model x3550 (M2) 7946 211
  - model x3550 (type 7978) 214

## G

- glossary 233
- GUI
  - DS6000
    - installing 58
    - launching 181
    - resetting password 181
  - ProtecTIER Manager
    - installing 62
    - launching 185
    - upgrading 64
  - Storage Manager
    - installing 59
    - launching 183
    - resetting password 183

## H

- hard drive rebuild 166
- heartbeat, set 38
- help
  - system console specialist online 174
- homologation 227

## I

- IMC
  - overview 6
- importing
  - InfoCenter
    - from CD-ROM 188
- infocenter
  - delete 189
  - importing
    - from CD-ROM 188
  - launching (CD-ROM) 188
- install
  - DS6000 GUI 58
  - prerequisites to 14
  - ProtecTIER Manager GUI 62
  - Storage Manager GUI 59
  - system console
    - about 5
  - TSSC
    - performing 14
- Installed VTD\_EXECS 197
- installing PE package patches 193
- interface
  - access management 185
  - test 36
- introduction 5
- IP address
  - HTTP proxy 81
  - HTTP proxy IP address 81
- IP address, setting 39

## K

- keyboard USB port - DO NOT USE 1

## L

- language
  - for online help 174
  - select system console specialist 174
- launch
  - DS6000 GUI 181
  - InfoCenter
    - from web interface 186
  - infocenter (CD-ROM) 188
  - ProtecTIER Manager GUI 185
  - specialists 177
  - Storage Manager GUI 183
- list
  - create attached subsystems 112
- lithium battery 201
- login options
  - authenticated 44
  - non-authenticated 43
- logout 99
- logs, retrieving subsystem 155

## M

- management interfaces, access 185
- managing
  - InfoCenter
    - from web interface 186
- master menu (system console screen) 45
- matrix updates, error or defer 178

- media, offloading user files (for non-remote users) to 131, 135
- menu tree 3
- microcode
  - broadcast
    - remote from web interface 113
  - load 166
  - update
    - drive (via Specialist) 174
    - system console 169
    - TS7700 170
    - TS7700 cache controller 172
- Mksysb Broadcast from the web interface 170
- modem
  - connecting to 125
  - reset 189
- modem reset 189
- Mount/Unmount USB or CD-ROM 199
- Mount/Unmount USB or CD-ROM Remotely 199

## N

- NetTerm
  - configure for accessing modem 124
  - remote access using 124
- network connections 7
- notices
  - environmental xii

## O

- offload
  - PE package 154
  - user files
    - to call home database (for remote users) 152
    - to media (for non-remote users) 131, 135
- online help
  - system console specialist 174
- open SSH tunnel 190
- overview of product 6

## P

- parameters, configure interface 39
- parts list 205
  - model 206m 220
  - model 306m 218
  - model M93p 206
  - model x3200 216
  - model x3250 (M3) 4252 209
  - model x3250 (M4) 2583 207
  - model x3550 (M2) 7946 211
  - model x3550 (type 7978) 214
- password
  - change 177
  - resetting DS6000 GUI 181
  - resetting Storage Manager GUI 183
- PE package patch, apply 193
- PE package, creating console (also refer to IBM Knowledge Center) 154
- PFE exec from web interface, add 191

- port on keyboard (USB) - DO NOT USE 1
- problem report to RETAIN, send 81
- procedures 107
- product
  - overview 6
  - recovery 166
- ProtecTIER Manager GUI
  - installing 62
  - launching 185
  - upgrading 64
- publications
  - 3494 xiv
  - 3592-C06 xiv
  - 3592-C07 xiv
  - 3953 xiv
  - 7133 xv
  - AIX xv
  - AIX (RS/6000) xv
  - device drivers xv
  - ordering xv
  - product xiii
  - related xiii
  - RS/6000 xv
  - tape drives xiv
  - TS3500 xiv
  - TS4500 xiii
  - TS7700 xiii

## Q

- queue
  - flush 38
  - management (call home) 128
- quick reference table, maintenance starting point 3

## R

- RAS menu
  - local access 165
  - remote access 165
- RAS Menu 162
- rebuild disk 167
- rebuild hard drive 166
- remote
  - access using NetTerm 124
  - code broadcast
    - from web interface 113
  - data monitoring (3494 ATL) 105
  - support 5
- remote access
  - for customer 178
- remote data monitoring
  - set up for 3494 ATL or 3953 ELC 105
  - set up for VTS, VTC, A60, J70 101
- repair of system console 201
- report to RETAIN, send problem 81
- reset
  - DS6000 GUI password 181
  - modem 189
  - Storage Manager GUI password 183
- restoring configuration data 93
- RETAIN
  - about 5
  - information sent to 81



- RETAIN (*continued*)
  - send problem report to 81
  - test connection
    - during installation 96
    - during service 161
- retrieving subsystem logs 155
- roles management 76
- router 31
- RSA forwarding addresses 90

## S

- scheduling configuration backups 92
- secure shell tunnel, 190
- sending user feedback about
  - the system console 191
- serial port
  - connecting to
    - x306 6
    - x306m 6
  - initializing for connection to local devices 88
  - setting baud rate
    - from remote connection 90
    - from TSSC 88
- service
  - information
    - tape drive 117
    - tape system 109
  - tools 107
- service guides 201
- service information
  - tape drive 117
  - tape system 109
- set up
  - 3494 ATL LM 32
  - 3953 ELC 32
  - autonomic ownership takeover manager (AOTM) 22
  - remote data monitoring
    - 3494 ATL or 3953 ELC 105
    - VTS, VTC, A60, J70 101
  - TS7700 virtual engine 19
  - VTS, VTC, tape controllers
    - call home 27
    - for remote data monitoring 101
- setting
  - 3958 SNMP trap forwarding 194
  - autonomic ownership takeover manager (AOTM) 22
  - baud rate for TSSC from
    - remote connection 90
    - TSSC 88
  - call home configuration 81
  - configuration 37
  - configure web specialist 37
  - console 66
  - console date and time 95
  - customize firewall 79
  - ECC (electronic customer care) 81
  - electronic customer care (ECC) 81
  - heartbeat 38
  - IP address 39
  - modem 189
  - roles management 76
  - signal speed for TSSC from
    - remote connection 90

- setting (*continued*)
  - signal speed for TSSC from (*continued*)
    - TSSC 88
  - SSH tunneling 190
  - user feedback 191
  - web specialist 35
- settings, configuring
  - call home 81
  - console heartbeat 83
  - disposition 86
  - entry point 37
  - machine 85
  - phone 84
  - site location 83
- sheet, configuration
  - sample 15
  - usable 16
- signal speed - setting from
  - remote connection 90
  - TSSC 88
- specialist
  - about 174
  - access to
    - system console 174
    - tape drive code 174
  - administer users 177
  - configure interface parameters 39
  - configure settings 37
  - flush queue 38
  - launch 177
  - online help 174
  - set heartbeat 38
  - system console 174
  - update tape drive code 174
  - using to
    - change language 174
    - change or configure system console settings (web) 35
  - using web 36
  - welcome page 35
- SSH tunneling 190
- Starting and Stopping ALC (Automated Log Collector) 137
- status, console 159
- Stopping ALC (Automated Log Collector) 137
- Storage Manager GUI
  - installing 59
  - launching 183
  - resetting password 183
- subsystem
  - list, create attached 112
  - logs, retrieving 155
- system console
  - code update 169
  - main menu 45
  - microcode update 169
  - overview 6
  - repair 201
  - service guides 201
  - specialist
    - about 174
    - access to tape drive code 174
    - administer users 177
    - changing language using 174

- system console (*continued*)
  - specialist (*continued*)
    - launch 177
    - using for customer access 174
- system console code load/hard drive rebuild 166
- system console code upgrade 165
- System Reporter (TSR), Tape 195

## T

- tables
  - call home record types 129
  - code load status
    - from web interface 116
  - console configuration sheet
    - actual 16
    - sample 15
  - console status tool function 160
  - control unit error codes 175
  - installation prerequisites 14
  - maintenance starting point 3
  - quick reference for maintenance starting point 3
  - single drive error codes 176
  - system console components 6
  - troubleshooting 202
- taking console screenshots 165
- tape drive
  - service information 117
- tape drive publications xiv
- tape system
  - call home 27
  - service information 109
- Tape System Reporter (TSR) 195
- telephone information for modems 43
- telnet to Grid TSSC 108
- terms 233
- test
  - autonomic ownership takeover manager (AOTM) 25
  - call home notification for
    - 3494 ATL 100
    - VTS, VTC, A60, J70, and C06 99
  - connection to RETAIN
    - during installation 96
    - during service 161
  - interface 36
  - RETAIN connection
    - during installation 96
    - during service 161
- Test Electronic Customer Care (ECC) Connectivity 98
- time and date, setting console 95
- tools, service 107
- trademarks 226
- transmission rate, setting from
  - remote connection 90
  - TSSC 88
- transmission speed - setting from
  - remote connection 90
  - TSSC 88
- trap forwarding, enabling 3958
  - SNMP 194
- tree, menu 3
- troubleshooting 202
- TS3500 publications xiv



TS4500 publications xiii

TS7700

autonomic ownership takeover  
manager (AOTM)

set up 22

test 25

call home 19

virtual engine set up 19

TS7700 microcode 170

TS7700 publications xiii

TSSC

overview 6

tunneling, SSH 190

## U

update

console code 169

error or defer matrix 178

ProtecTIER Manager GUI 64

system console code 169

tape drive code via specialist 174

TS7700 cache controller

microcode 172

USB device

add PFE execs 191

backing up configuration data by  
using 90

DO NOT plug into port on

keyboard 1

offloading user files by using 131,  
135

USB or CD-ROM, Mount/Unmount 199

USB port on keyboard - DO NOT USE 1

user feedback about

system console 191

userid

non-authenticated login 43

server authentication 44

users

add or delete 177

administer 177

login 43

## V

V3.0.0 and above code level

access for tape drive code  
update 174

adding attached system  
information 45

backing up configuration data 90

call home queue management 128

call home record types 129

code load/hard drive rebuild 166

configuration 43

configure call home settings 81

connect to attached tape system 107

console configuration sheet

sample 15

usable 16

console date and time, setting 95

console settings 66

console status 159

electronic customer care 81

error or defer matrix updates 178

V3.0.0 and above code level *(continued)*

feature codes current 7

installing system console  
about 5

installing TSSC

performing 14

introduction 5

maintenance starting point quick

reference table 3

offload

user files 135

user files to call home database  
(for remote users) 152

procedures 107

restoring configuration data 93

service tools 107

set up for 3494 ATL (LM) 32

set up for 3953 Enterprise Library  
Controller 32

set up VTS, VTC, tape controllers 27

setting console date and time 95

setup for remote data

monitoring 101

system overview 6

tape system service information 109

user login 43

V3.1.0 and above code level

control unit tape drive service

information files 118

view all files 121

V5.3.0 and above code level

remote code broadcast from web

interface 113

view all files 121

virtual engine (TS7700) set up 19

VTD Downloads 197

VTS

call home set up 27

set up 27

## W

web browser

remote access 178

web interface

add PFE execs by using 191

broadcast drive code 121

managing InfoCenter 186

from web interface 186

remote code broadcast 113

web interface, Mksysb Broadcast

from 170

web specialist

configure interface parameters 39

configure settings 37

flush queue 38

launch 177

online help 174

set heartbeat 38

system console 174

using 36

using to change system console  
settings 35

welcome page 35

websites xiii

what's new xiii







Part Number: 2727230

(1P) P/N: 2727230

